

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION,

WITH

EXERCISES ON CAESAR, LIVY, AND CICERO

BY

J. FLETCHER, M.A.

Professor of Latin, Queen's University,

AND

J. HENDERSON, M.A.

Principal of St. Catharines Collegiate Institute.

TORONTO:
PUBLISHED BY THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED.

1894.

PA2094

F55

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand
eight hundred and ninety-four, by THE COPP, CLARK CO., LIMITED, Toronto,
Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

PREFACE.

This book contains two parts. Part I. consists of a concise and simple statement of the main principles of Latin syntax, with illustrations and exercises. The rules of Syntax are not intended to be learned by heart ; they are to be studied carefully in connection with the illustrations, many of which should be committed to memory. The exercises have been made longer than is customary, in order to afford a wider scope for selection. A knowledge, on the part of the pupil, of the Latin declensions and conjugations is presupposed. The authorities followed in the treatment of Latin Syntax are mainly Madvig, Roby, Kennedy, Bradley, and Hime. A few sections have been added on Latin Style, for which we are mainly indebted to the works of Bradley, Potts, Postgate, Nixon, Klotz, and Nägelsbach.

Part II. consists of exercises in continuous English based on Caesar (the Bell. Gall., B. I.-VI.), on Livy (B. XXI. and XXII.), and on some of the common orations of Cicero. These exercises are intended to be written, but it is recommended that they be translated orally as well. In no case should an exercise be attempted until after a thorough study of the Latin on which the exercise is based. The exercises do not, of course, exhaust the material of the Latin text, and teachers will find it necessary to give their classes additional exercises of a character similar to those given here, and adapted to the grade of the pupil. Passages taken from English authors and involving a knowledge of vocabulary similar to that of the exercises, may also be given with advantage to advanced pupils.

J. F.
J. H.

June 30th, 1894.



TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART I.—LATIN SYNTAX.

SECTION.	PAGE.
1.—Concord and Apposition.....	1
2.—Accusative with Infinitive.....	4
3.—Accusative with Infinitive (<i>Continued</i>).....	5
4.—Pronoun of Third Person with Infinitive—Verbs of Hoping and Promising	6
5.—The Relative.....	8
6.—The Relative (<i>Continued</i>).....	10
7.—Final Clauses— Ut with Subjunctive.....	12
8.—Consecutive Clauses.....	14
9.— Ut -Clauses with Verbs of Asking.....	16
10.—Verbs of Fearing. Modal Verbs.....	17
11.—Classification of Tenses. Law of Sequence.....	19
12.—Verbs of Doubting and Hindering. Quominus. Quin ...	22
13.—Subjunctive in Simple Sentences. Utinam	24
14.—Imperative.....	26
15.—Interrogative Sentences. Use of ne, nonne, num	28
16.—Indirect Question.....	30
17.—Use of Indirect Question for an English Noun.....	32
18.— <i>May, Can, Must, Ought</i> —how translated	33
19.—Notes on the Tenses. Fore ut for Inf. Fut.....	34
20.—Idiomatic Uses of Latin Verbs	38
21.—Supine, Gerund, Gerundive.....	41
22.—The Gerund and Gerundive (<i>Continued</i>).....	45
23.—The Participle	47
24.—The Participle (<i>Continued</i>). Ablative Absolute.....	51

SECTION.	PAGE.
25.—The Participle (<i>Continued</i>). Active Periphrastic Conjugation	53
26.—The Infinitive. Tenses of Infinitive.....	55
27.—The Genitive. Possessive Genitive, Partitive Genitive.....	59
28.—Genitive of Quality, Subjective and Objective Genitive, Gen. of Price. Gen. of Definition. Gen. with Adjectives.....	62
29.—The Genitive with Verbs. Interest and Refert.....	65
30.—The Dative.....	68
31.—Dative with Verbs.....	70
32.—The Ablative. Cause, Manner, Instrument.....	73
33.—Ablative of Comparison and Ablative of Difference. Ablative of Respect and of Price.	76
34.—Ablative with Verbs and Adjectives of Plenty and Want.....	80
35.—Relation of Place. Locative. <i>To, from, in</i> , with names of places.....	82
36.—Relation of Time. Time When. Time How Long.....	85
37.—Personal and Demonstrative Pronouns.....	87
38.—Reflexive Pronouns. Use of <i>se</i>	91
39.—On the translation of "Any." <i>Quis, quisquam, quivis</i>	94
40.—Classification of Sentences. Noun, Adjectival, and Adverbial Clauses.....	98
41.—Adverbial Clauses. Local and Temporal Clauses. <i>Postquam</i> , <i>Dum, Priusquam</i>	102
42.—Temporal Clauses (<i>Continued</i>). Syntax of <i>Quum</i> . Substitutes for a Perf Part. Act.....	106
43.—Final and Consecutive Clauses. <i>Qui</i> final. <i>Qui</i> consecutive..	109
44.—Causal and Concessive Clauses.....	113
45.—Comparative Clauses. Idiomatic uses of <i>ut</i> (as).....	116
46.—Conditional Sentences.....	119
47.—Classification of Conditional Sentences. Exceptions to the Rules.....	122
48.—Indirect (or Oblique) Narration.....	127
49.—Summary of Rules for Turning Direct into Oblique Narration.	131
50.—Conditional Sentences in Oblique Narration.....	134
51.—Virtual Oblique Narration. Assimilation.....	137

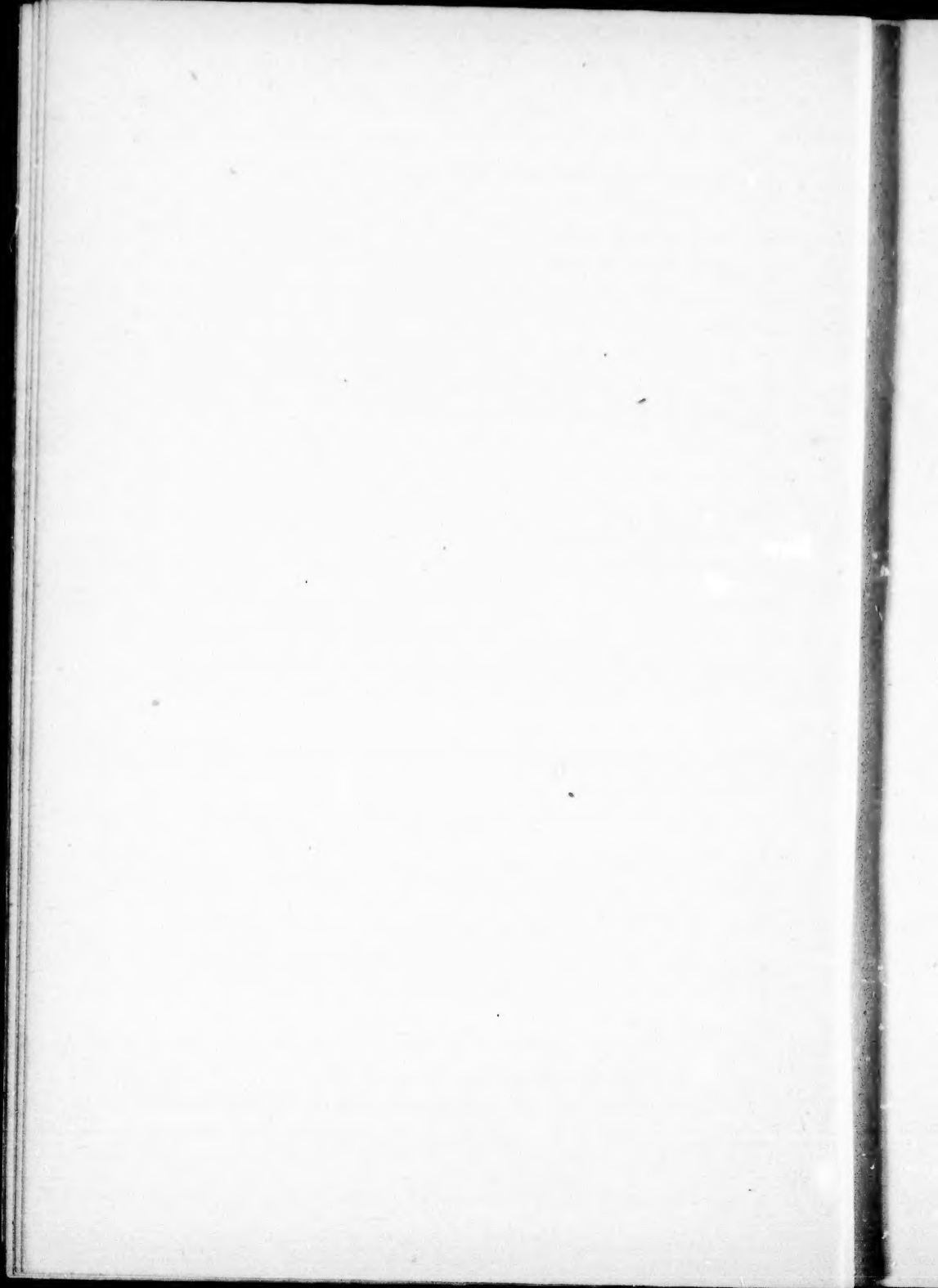
TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ix

PAGE.	SECTION.	PAGE.
53	52.—On Some Special Idioms of Latin Syntax. "Without" and a	
55	Participial Noun.	139
59	53.—Notes on the Numerals.	143
62	54.—The Roman Calendar.	147
65	55.—Roman Currency.	150
68	56.—Weights and Measures. Interest.	153
70	57.—Latin Idiom in the use of words. Abstract Noun.	156
73	58.—Other Substitutes in Latin for the Abstract Noun.	160
76	59.—Abstract Adjectives and Adverbs.	164
80	60.—Difference of Idiom (<i>Continued</i>)	168
82	61.—Equivocal Words, Metaphor, etc.	172
85	62.—Order and Emphasis.	176
87	63.—Connection, Rhythm, etc.	181
91	64.—The Latin Period.	186
94	Appendix.	193
98	Preposition.	193
102	Rules for Gender.	198
106	Verbs followed by <i>ut</i>	201
109	On Certain Conjunctions, etc.	201
113	Vocabulary.	205
116	Index to Part I.	245

PART II.

106	Exercises on Caesar.	255
109	Exercises on Livy.	309
113	Exercises on Cicero.	334



PART I.

LATIN SYNTAX.



LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.

§ 1. CONCORD AND APPPOSITION.

1. If a sentence has two or more subjects, the verb must be plural ; and if the subjects differ in person, the verb will agree with the first person rather than with the second and with the second rather than with the third : as,

Ego et soror mea ambulabāmus. *My sister and I were walking.*

Et tu et frater tuus ridetis. *Both you and your brother are laughing.*

Here in the first example **ambulabāmus** is plural because there are two subjects, and it is in the first person, because it agrees with **ego** rather than with **soror**. Note that in Latin the first person comes before the second.

Note also that the personal pronouns **ego** (*I*), **tu** (*you*, sing.), **nos** (*we*), **vos** (*you*, pl.) are expressed when emphatic.

2. If a sentence has two or more subjects all of the third person, the verb as a rule agrees with the nearest : as,

Cibo potioneque fames et sitis depellitur. *Hunger and thirst are removed by food and drink.*

Mihi principatus et imperium delatum est. *Sovereignty and power have been conferred on me.*

Rex et regia classis profecta est. *The king and the royal fleet set out.*

Neque mores neque fortuna spectari solet. *Neither character nor wealth is wont to be considered.*

Other forms, however, are common. Thus :

Uxor mea et filius mortui sunt. *My wife and son are dead* (verb plural, and participle agreeing with masculine rather than with feminine).

Nox et praeda hostes remorata sunt. *Night and plunder delayed the enemy* (participle neuter, though both subjects are feminine. This is often the case when the subjects are names of things.)

3. A collective noun may have a plural verb, the verb agreeing with the idea of number expressed by the noun : as,

Magna pars interfecti sunt. *A great part were killed.*

The singular would, however, be more usual.

Such a construction is called a **sense construction**.

4. The words "men" and "things" need not be expressed when joined with an adjective, if the meaning is sufficiently shown by the ending of the adjective : as,

Boni, good men ; mala, bad things, evils.

But, if ambiguity arises, the noun is expressed : as,

Futura (neut. pl.), *the future* ; but **rerum futurarum**, *of the future* (**futurorum** might mean *of posterity*, i.e. *men about to be*).

APPOSITION.

5. An appositive noun agrees in case and, where possible, in gender with the noun to which it refers : as,

Ille legis inventor fuit. *He was the inventor of the law.*

Athenas, omnis doctrinae inventricem, omitto. *I omit Athens the inventor of all learning.*

6. The words *when*, *as*, *for*, used before an appositive in English, are omitted in Latin : as,

Hoc consul feci. *This I did when consul.*

7. The Latin for *The city of Rome* is *Urbs Roma*, and for *the island of Cyprus*, *insula Cyprus*—Latin using nouns like *city*, *town*, etc., appositively.

Note.—The verb usually agrees with *urbs* or *oppidum* used thus appositively: as, *Volsinii, Tuscorum oppidum, crematum est. Volsinii, a town of the Tuscans, was burned.*

8. Latin avoids the addition of adjectives to proper nouns or names of persons. It prefers to add the adjective to the generic word *vir*, *homō*, etc., used appositively: as,

Frater tuus, vir fortissimus. Your gallant brother.

Athenae, urbs amoenissima. The lovely Athens, or the lovely city of Athens.

Note.—This idiom will translate the unemphatic English *so* added to an adjective: as, *Nemo hunc regem, virum stultissimum, observat. No one respects so foolish a king.*

EXERCISE I.

N.B.—Put the verb at the end of the sentence.

1. You and he are well and we are well. 2. Both riches and poverty influence the mind. 3. And a large multitude of men cast the corn into the river. 4. Power and honors were decreed you by the people. 5. Both his father and mother were dead. 6. The city of Athens had been besieged for many days (acc.) 7. He was going to the island of Sicily. 8. Philosophy is the knowledge of things human and divine. 9. Even so wise a man as the magistrate does not know everything. 10. He did the same things when a boy. 11. You and all my friends will be killed to-day. 12. The lovely city of Thebes has been stormed. 13. Both you and I will see the games.

§ 2. ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

In English we say either *I know him to be wise* or *I know that he is wise*; but Latin has only the former of the two constructions. Thus :

Scio eum sapere. I know that he is wise.

This is one of the commonest of Latin constructions and is called the **accusative with infinitive**.

RULE.—The rule is as follows : Verbs meaning to *know, think, say* (or the like), and expressions like *it is certain, it is clear, it is true* are followed—not as in English by a noun clause introduced by *that* (*ut*)—but by the accusative with infinitive.

The following examples should be learned by heart :—

Dicit Caesarem advenire. He says that Caesar is approaching.

Puto te errare. I think that you are wrong.

Rem ita esse video. I see that the thing is so.

Sentimus ignem calere. We perceive that fire is hot.

Respondet hostes adesse. He answers that the enemy is near.

Negat se id fecisse. He denies that he has done it (i.e., he says that he has not done it; nego = I say not.)

Certum est te amari. It is certain that you are loved.

Incredibile est sues volare. It is incredible that pigs should fly.

Note 1.—The accusative before the infinitive is called the subject of the infinitive.

Note 2.—The verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*, is usually put at the beginning instead of at the end of a sentence.

Note 3.—A statement depending on a verb of *saying, thinking* or the like, is said to be in *indirect narration* or *oratio obliqua*. Thus in *Dicit Caesarem advenire*, *Caesarem advenire* is in indirect narration as opposed to *Caesar advēnit*, *Caesar is approaching*, which is said to be in *direct narration* or *oratio recta*.

EXERCISE II.

1. I think that he will attack this city. 2. They say that he has gone away. 3. I believe that we shall defeat them. 4. Many think that books are useless. 5. He says that each man loves his own. 6. He says that we shall see the king. 7. He believes that the gods exist. 8. They will answer that you have offended against the laws. 9. We see that snow is white. 10. I think that he calls Rome the nurse of heroes. 11. They say that life is short. 12. It is clear that they are all away. 13. He says that he loves the beautiful city of Athens.

§3. ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE—(Continued).

1. The verb of a *that*-clause depending on a verb of *saying* or *thinking* is changed in English after a past tense. Thus :

He says that Caesar is approaching becomes *He said that Caesar was approaching*.

I think that you are wrong becomes *I thought that you were wrong*.

There is no such change in the tense of the infinitive in Latin. Thus :

Dixit Caesārem advenire. He said that Caesar was approaching (direct narration = *Caesar advēnit, Caesar is approaching*).

Putavi te errare. I thought that you were wrong (direct narration = *tu erras, you are wrong*).

2. In turning English into Latin, the simple and effective rule for determining the tense of the infinitive in such cases as the above is this: Find first the direct narration (see § 2, note 3); the tense of the verb in direct narration is the required tense of the infinitive. Thus :

He said that they were writing. Dixit eos scribere (direct = *scribunt, they are writing*.)

He said that the messenger had come. Dixit nuntium advēnisse (direct=*nuntius advēnit, the messenger has come*).

He said that the man would die. Dixit hominem moriturum esse (direct=*homo morietur, the man will die*).

Note.—The perfect inf. does duty in indirect narration for the imperfect and pluperfect of direct : as,

They said that he used to sleep every day. Dixērunt eum quotidie dormissee (direct=*dormiēbat, he used to sleep*).

He said that they had fled before he arrived. Dixit eos fūgissee priusquam advenisset (direct=*fūgerant, they had fled*).

EXERCISE III.

1. He knew that the wicked were not happy. 2. He told us that the end of life was near for all. 3. He thought that the many were always wrong. 4. He said that a poet was born and not made. 5. It was clear that they would take up arms against their country. 6. They told him that he could not write Latin. 7. They answered that the place pleased them very much. 8. He thought that the multitude of the stars was great. 9. All expected that he would attack the city. 10. He said that he was a Roman citizen. 11. He knew that my brother was brave. 12. He answered that children were always loved by their parents.

§ 4. PRONOUN OF THIRD PERSON WITH INFINITIVE.

Verbs of Hoping and Promising.

1. *Balbus dicit se id facturum esse* and *Balbus dicit eum id facturum esse*, both mean *Balbus says that he will do it*. What is the difference between them? A very important one. *Balbus dicit se id facturum esse* means *B. says that he (B.) will do it*; *Balbus dicit eum id facturum esse* means *B. says that he (some one else than B.) will do it*.

RULE.—The rule, therefore, is this : *He, she, they*, referring to the subject of the main verb are translated by *se*; not referring to the subject of the main verb, by *is*, or, if emphatic, *ille*.

Note.—Similarly *his, her, its, their*, referring to the subject of the main verb are expressed by *suus*; not referring to the subject of the main verb, by the genitive of *is*: as, *Balbus domum suam vendit. Balbus sells his house (= his own house). Balbus domum eius vendit. Balbus sells his house (= the house of some one else).*

2. In the use of the acc. with inf., care should be taken to avoid ambiguity that is apt to arise from joining a personal subject and object together. Thus :

Aio te Romanos vincere posse may mean *I say that you can conquer the Romans*; or, *I say that the Romans can conquer you*.

To avoid ambiguity say :

Aio Romanos a te vinci posse, for *I say that you can conquer the Romans* (i.e., *I say that the Romans can be conquered by you*).

3. Verbs meaning *to hope, promise, swear and undertake*, take a future infinitive and not a present infinitive as in English : as,

Sperat se diu victurum. He hopes to live a long time.

Note.—*Esse* may be omitted from the fut. inf. act.

Iuro me haec facturum. I swear to do it.

Promittit se venturum. He promises to come.

Note.—After such verbs as the above, the acc. of the pronoun must be used before the infinitive.

4. The use of a verb of *saying* or *thinking* parenthetically is not common in Latin. Thus :

You were absent, he thought is *Putavit te abesse*.

Note.—*Inquit, he says*, is the only exception. It is used to introduce the exact words of a speaker : as,

"Dicam tibi," inquit, "omnia." *"I will tell you," says he, "everything."*

EXERCISE IV.

1. You promised to bring everything with you. 2. He undertook to finish the business. 3. I believe that he killed his slave. 4. We knew that they would waste the land. 5. They will storm the city, he thinks. 6. They called out that he had fallen. 7. He hopes to make war upon them. 8. No one denied that the soul was the better part of us. 9. He swore to destroy their cities. 10. They felt that a great danger was at hand. 11. He said that he was their friend. 12. He swore that he would not do it.

§ 5. THE RELATIVE.

1. The case of a relative pronoun is determined by the verb of its own clause ; its gender, number and person by the antecedent : as,

Ego, qui te laudavi, rex sum. I, who praised you, am king.

Ego, quem tu laudavisti, rex sum. I, whom you praised, am king.

Is, cui librum dedisti, adest. He, to whom you gave the book, is here.

2. The relative in the objective or accusative case—so often omitted in English—is never omitted in Latin : as,

Artem, quam novi, exerceo. I practise the art I know.

3. A relative may agree with the predicate of its own clause instead of with the antecedent : as,

Thebae, quod Boeotiae caput est. Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.

4. The relative, like the adjective or participle (§ I., 2), when referring to one or more nouns of different gender, may always agree with the last : as,

Neque homini neque ferae quam conspiciunt parcent. They spare neither man nor beast they see.

Note.—Other forms of agreement are common : as, *Pater et mater qui mortui sunt.* *Father and mother who were dead* (relative plural, and agreeing with masculine rather than feminine).

Inconstantia et temeritas quae digna non sunt deo. *Fickleness and rashness which are not worthy of a god* (relative neut. pl., because the antecedents are the names of things).

5. The antecedent of a relative pronoun is often omitted : as,

Dividēbat agros quibus volebat. *He distributed lands to those to whom he wished.*

6. When the antecedent is emphatic, the relative clause is thrown forward and the main clause introduced by *is* or *idem* (*same*) : as,

Qui id fecit, is abiit. *The man who did it, is gone.*

The antecedent (when a noun) is in that case put in the relative clause : as,

Quos campos viridissimos videram, eosdem vastatos vidi. *I saw the fields desolate, which I had seen very green.*

7. A superlative referring to the antecedent is often put in the relative clause : as,

Urbem, quam habēbant optimam, perdidērunt. *They have lost the best city they had.*

So too emphatic adjectives of number and amount : as,

Duces qui pauci supersunt. *Leaders few of whom survive.*

8. A noun used appositively as an antecedent is attracted into the relative clause : as,

Abiit Romā, quā in urbe a puero habitaverat. *He departed from Rome, a city in which he had lived from boyhood.*

9. A relative referring to a whole sentence is expressed by *id quod* or *quae res* : as,

Invidiam vicisti, id quod difficillimum est (or *quae res difficillima est*). *You have vanquished envy, which is a most difficult thing to do.*

10. *What*, as a relative, is translated by *id quod* or *ea quae* (*that which, the things which*): as,

Ea, quae recta sunt, laudantur. What is right, is praised.

EXERCISE V.

1. A young man hopes to live a long time, a thing which when old he can not hope to do. 2. The horse, which drew him, shook off the yoke. 3. He who easily believes, is easily deceived. 4. We miss Pompey, who was the light of Italy. 5. Govern your temper, which, if it does not obey, commands. 6. They value patriotism by which they have become great. 7. I will send you the best horseman I have. 8. What is crooked, is base. 9. The part of the state, which had made war, was punished (*invert rel.*). 10. Fortune and honor which come to all. 11. He sent away the few ships he had. 12. He used to say (*impf.*) that wisdom was the principal thing.

§6. THE RELATIVE.—(*Continued.*)

1. Many demonstrative pronouns and adjectives are often followed by a corresponding relative pronoun. These are called **correlatives**.

The following correlatives should be learned: *Idem....qui, the same....as*; *talis....qualis, such as*; *tantus....quantus, as great as*; *tot....quot, as many as*; as,

Idem est qui semper fuit. He is the same as he always was.

Res eodem statu quo antea stat. The matter stands in the same position as before.

Talis est qualis semper fuit. He is of the same character as he always was.

Tantum voluptatem habeo quantum tu. I have as much pleasure as you.

Tot erant milites quot fluctus maris. The soldiers were as many as the waves of the sea.

Note.—The adverbs *such, so* (limiting adjectives or adverbs) are expressed by *tam*: as, *Tam bonus homo. Such a good man. As good as you, is Tam bonus quam tu.*

2. The adjectives *primus* (*first*), *ultimus* (*last*), *solus* and *unus* (*alone*), are used adverbially in Latin, where in English they are used as predicates of a relative clause or joined to an infinitive : as,

Primus mala nostra sensit. *He was the first who perceived our evils.*

Primus venit; ultimus abiit. *He was the first to come and the last to go.*

3. The verb of a relative clause in indirect narration (*i.e.* depending on a verb of *saying* or *thinking*) is in the subjunctive mood : as,

Laudat quod honestum est. *He praises what is honorable.* But :

Dicit se, quod honestum sit, laudare. *He says that he praises what is honorable.*

Note.—If, however, the person using the indirect narration (a historian for example) makes a statement on his own authority, the indicative will be used in the relative clause : as, *Gaius dicit se captivos, quos habebat, dimisisse.* *Gaius says that he has dismissed the captives whom he had* (*i.e.* whom the narrator affirms Gaius had ; *haberet* would mean, whom Gaius says he had). Hence, too, in orations the indicative is used in a relative clause depending on a verb of *saying* or *thinking* in the 1st person : as, *Dicam quae dicenda esse arbitror.* *I will say what I think ought to be said.*

4. *Who...not*, or *but*, after a negative is *quin* (*qui+ne, not* : old form of *non*) : as, *Nemo est quin te dementem putet.* *There is no one who does not think you mad* (or *but thinks you mad*). *Qui non* is rarely found.

EXERCISE VI.

1. They were the only ones who did it. 2. He says that they will praise what is expedient. 3. Their love towards us is the same as it always was. 4. No one denies that you are such as your father was. 5. He says that what is right is praised. 6. The ships were as many as they ever were. 7. He thought that the ships were as many as they ever were. 8. He was the first who promised to help us. 9. I think that what is right is praised. 10. There was none who did not think him the same. 11. He says that he admires the animal that is called man. 12. I believe that he was the first to call down philosophy from heaven.

§ 7. FINAL CLAUSES.

Ut with Subjunctive.

1. In the sentence *He sends ambassadors to sue for peace*, the words *to sue for peace* express the *purpose* for which the ambassadors were sent, and the infinitive is called the **infinitive of purpose**. The **infinitive of purpose** is never found in Latin, an adverbial clause introduced by *ut* (*in order that*) being used instead: as,

Legatos mittit ut pacem petant. *He sends ambassadors to sue for peace.*

Note 1.—*Ut*, meaning *that*, requires the subjunctive.

Note 2.—The *ut*-clause of purpose is called a **final** clause because it expresses the purpose or **end** (**finis**) of the action of the main verb.

2. When a *not* is required in the final clause, *ut* becomes *ne*: as,

Hoc dico ne te laedam. *I say this not to offend you (i.e. to avoid offending you).*

Note.—*Ne* in a final clause will often translate the English *to avoid*, *to prevent*: as, *Aves pennis fovēt pullos ne frigore laedantur.* *Birds cherish their young with their feathers to prevent them from being hurt by the cold.*

3. When a comparative is used in the final clause, *quo* is often used for *that* instead of *ut*: as,

Hoc facio quo sis tutior. *I do this that you may be safer.*

4. The verb of a final clause after a past tense in the principal clause becomes imperfect subjunctive: as,

Te laudavit ut a te laudaretur. *He praised you that he might be praised by you.*

Note.—This is due to a special law (known as the **Law of Sequence of Tenses**) which requires that after a past tense the verb of a subordinate clause should be imperfect or pluperfect. It will be illustrated in § 11.

5. In a final clause, *That nobody is ne quis* (and not *ut nemo*) ; *that nothing is ne quid* (and not *ut nihil*) ; *that no* (adj.) *is ne ullus* (not *ut nullus*) ; *that never is ne unquam* (not *ut nunquam*) : as,

Portam claude ne quis excedat. *Shut the gate that no one may go out.*

Abi ne quid vidērem. *I went away that I might see nothing.*

Clamant ne ullum verbum audiat. *They are shouting that no word may be heard.*

Hoc facite ne unquam vitupērent. *Do this that they may never revile.*

6. For *et ne* (following *ut* or a previous *ne*), *nēve* (or *nēu*) is used : as,

Hoc dico ut bono animo sit neve perturbetur. *I say this that he may be of good courage and may not be disturbed.* **Abibo ne eum videam neve audiam.** *I will go away that I may not see or hear him.*

EXERCISE VII.

Use ut for "to" and "in order to" expressing purpose.

1. He went away that he might not see us. 2. They pretend to be mad, that they may not be banished. 3. I think that prizes are given to boys that they may be more zealous. 4. He wrote to warn us. 5. He killed himself that he might not see the country overthrown. 6. We teach our children in order that they may be good citizens. 7. They took him from the plough in order to make him consul. 8. I did it that I might displease no-one. 9. We do not live to eat. 10. He sent us away that we might have no hope of safety. 11. Do this that you may be free. 12. In order to be free we obey the law. 13. In order that no one may lie hid (*lateo*) or escape, he has sent out all the cavalry.

§ 8. CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

1. In the sentence *He lives in such a way that he has nothing*, the clause introduced by *that* expresses the *result* or *consequence* of the action of the main verb. Such a clause is called a *consecutive clause* and must be carefully distinguished from a final clause.

2. A consecutive clause is usually introduced by *ut* (*so that*), and requires the subjunctive : as,

Ita vivit ut nihil habeat. *He lives in such a way that he has nothing.*

3. The rule for the sequence of tenses (laid down in § 7, 4) does not apply to consecutive clauses after a past tense. The perfect subjunctive is used of a single act, the imperfect of a repeated or continuous one : as,

Tantus timor omnes occupavit ut rex ipse fugerit. *Such fear seized all, that the king himself fled* (of a single act).

Tanta tempestas coorta est ut nulla navis cursum tenere posset. *So great a storm arose that no ship could hold its course* (of a continuous act).

Note.—The impf. is used of a *repeated, continuous, or habitual* act.

4. If a negative is required in the consecutive clause, *ut non* is used and not—as in a final clause—*ne* : as,

Tam caecus fuit ut me non vidērit. *He was so blind that he did not see me* (or *as not to see me*). So too : *That no one* is *ut nemo*, *that nothing* is *ut nihil*, *that no* (adj.) is *ut nullus*, and *that never* is *ut nunquam* : as,

Talis erat ut nemo ei crederet. *He was of such a character that no one used to believe him.*

Tam improbus fuit ut nihil eum unquam a scelēre revocaverit. *He was so wicked that nothing ever recalled him from crime.*

Ita insulam vexavit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo potuerit. *He so harried the island that it could in no way be restored to its ancient condition.*

Note.—*So*, limiting a verb, is *ita*, *sic*, or *adeo*; limiting an adjective or adverb it is *tam* (§ 6, 1. Note).

5. *Ut consecutive* is used after the following demonstrative words: *Talis*, *such*; *eiusmodi*, *such* (in a disparaging sense); *tantus*, *so great*, *such*; *tot*, *so many*; *toties*, *so often*; *sic*, *ita*, *tam*, *so*; *adeo*, *to such a degree*.

It is also used after the following impersonal verbs and phrases: *accidit*, *evenit*, *contingit*, *fit*, *it happens*; *restat*, *reliquum est*, *it remains*; *fieri potest*, *it is possible* (literally, *it may happen*); *nullo modo fieri potest*, *it is impossible*; *sequitur*, *it follows*; *tantum abest*, *it is so far from*; *expedit*, *it is expedient*; *accedit*, *it is added*: as,

Qui fit ut nemo contentus vivat? How does it happen that no one lives contentedly?

Accidit ut primus id nuntiaverit. It happened that he was the first to announce it.

Tantum abest ut omnes miremur ut nobis non satisfaciat ipse Demosthenes. So far are we from admiring all, that Demosthenes himself does not satisfy us (lit., *so far off is it that we admire all*, etc.)

EXERCISE VIII.

1. Italy is so covered with trees that it seems an orchard. 2. Their strength was such that we did not dare to take up arms. 3. It was so hard that no one could do it. 4. His ears are so closed to the truth that he will not hear it from a friend. 5. It remains that I should say a few words about good fortune. 6. He was so far from loving, that he even hated her. 7. Such is the power of goodness that we love it even in an enemy. 8. The river was so deep that no one could cross it. 9. I am not so ignorant as not to know that. 10. He was so grieved that he never took anything more deeply to heart. 11. He broke his word so often that no one ever believed him. 12. They took away his sword that he might hurt no one. 13. He said that he had been fighting for (*pro* + *abl.*) the country. 14. It may happen that he is sometimes wrong. 15. To this was added that he was blind.

§9. UT-CLAUSE WITH VERBS OF ASKING.

1. Verbs meaning *to ask, command, or advise*, are followed by an ut-clause, not—as in English—by the infinitive : as,

Rogo te ut id facias. *I ask you to do it.*

Imperat ut clipeos percutiant. *He orders them to strike their shields.*

Moneo te ut aurum reddas. *I warn you to restore the gold.*

Note.—Iubeo (*order*), and vëto (*forbid*), take the inf. and not the ut-clause : as, Eos pedem referre iussit (vetuit). *He ordered (forbade) them to retreat.*

2. After a past tense, the verb of the ut-clause becomes imperfect (§ 7, 4. Note) : as,

Rogavi ut id faceres. *I asked you to do it*

Imperavit ut clipeos percuterent. *He ordered them to strike their shields.*

3. When *not* is required in the ut-clause, ne is used instead of ut non : as,

Monui te ne uxorem duceres. *I warned you not to marry.*
So too : ne quis is used for ut nemo (*that no one*), ne quid for ut nihil (*that nothing*), ne ullus for ut nullus (*that no*), and ne unquam for ut nunquam (*that never*) : as,

Te rogo ne quid facias. *I ask you to do nothing.*

Obsecravit eum ne fidem unquam violaret. *He entreated him never to break his word.*

4. Or, and not, after a verb of asking, is neve : as,

Te rogavi ne eum accusares neve multares. *I asked you not to accuse and not to punish him.*

Neither . . . nor would be neve . . . neve.

5. Verbs meaning *to effect, decide, or strive* are also followed by an ut-clause : as,

Sol efficit ut omnia floreant. The sun makes everything flourish.

Decernit ut consules delectum habeant. He decrees that the consuls shall hold a levy.

Curā ut hoc facias. Take care to do this.

Note.—*Statuo, constituo* and *decerno, resolve*, take the infinitive when they are followed by an infinitive in English: as, *Statuit redire. He decides to return.*

6. Verbs meaning to *warn*, when stating a fact, become verbs of *saying* (§ 2, 1) and require the accusative with infinitive: as,

Nos monet hostes adesse. He warns us that the enemy is at hand. So too: *Hoc tibi persuadēbo te errare. I will persuade you of this, that you are wrong.*

EXERCISE IX.

1. I will persuade him to return. 2. I begged them to help us. 3. He ordered us to supply him with corn. 4. I warned him to set out at once. 5. I warn you that they will set out at once. 6. We implored them not to kill women and children. 7. Take care to understand this. 8. They passed a decree that no one should scourge a Roman citizen. 9. They warned us that as many had been banished as ever. 10. He said that we were asked to assemble in the market-place. 11. I beg of you not to decree anything. 12. I resolved to ask him to go away. 13. Beg them not to come. 14. He was so timid that he was afraid to enter the city. 15. So far were we from reviling, that we even admired them (§ 8, 5).

§ 10. VERBS OF FEARING. MODAL VERBS.

1. Latin verbs meaning to *fear*, take a peculiar construction which seems to admit of no explanation. Thus:

Vereor ne veniat. I am afraid that he will come.

Vereor ut veniat. I am afraid that he will not come.

Note.—The English future after verbs of *fearing*, is expressed by the subjunctive—the present subjunctive, if after a present or future tense, the imperfect if after a past (§7, 4, Note): as, *Timeo ut labōres sustineas*, *I am afraid that you will not endure your labors*; *timēbam ne eā evēnirent*, *I was afraid that those things would happen*.

2. Phrases like *pericūlum est*, *there is danger*, take the construction of verbs of *fearing*: as,

Periculum erat ne te verbis obrueret. *There was danger that he would overwhelm you with words.*

3. Many verbs (called *modal verbs*) take an infinitive after them to complete their meaning: as, *audeo* (*dare*), *cogo* (*compel*), *cōnor* (*endeavor*), *constituo* and *statuo* (*determine*), *cunctor* (*hesitate*), *cupio* (*desire*), *dēbeo* (*ought*), *desīno* (*cease*), *disco* (*learn*), *dubito* (*hesitate*), *incipio* (*begin*), *mālo* (*prefer*), *nescio* (*not know how*), *nōlo* (*be unwilling*), *obliviscor* (*forget*), *pātior* (*allow*), *paro* (*prepare*), *possum* (*be able*), *scio* (*know how*), *soleo* (*be accustomed*), *vereor* (*fear*), *volo* (*be willing*): as,

Mālo mōri. *I prefer to die.*

Debeo id facere. *I ought to do it.*

Dēsine mirari. *Cease to wonder (or cease wondering).*

Note 1.—Of these verbs *volo* and *nōlo* often take the subjunctive with or without *ut*: as,

Hoc (ut) facias velim. *I should like you to do this.*

Note 2.—*Vereor* (*fear*) has the inf. in Latin when it has the inf. in English: as, *Veretur redire.* *He is afraid to return.*

4. A noun or adjective with the modal infinitive is in the nominative and not in the accusative: as,

Vult esse servus. *He wishes to be a slave.*

EXERCISE X.

1. I am afraid that you will not bear it. 2. I do not think that you are afraid to die. 3. There was danger that he would attack the camp. 4. We were afraid that all his soldiers would desert him. 5. I fear I can not grant you that. 6. I am afraid that you do not love me. 7. I begin to think that the man is mad. 8. I wish to speak but I do not dare. 9. He said that he knew how to conquer the country's enemies. 10. They thought that he was afraid lest he should be captured by brigands. 11. Stop talking. 12. He said that they were accustomed to walk every day. 13. I warn you that your ships are lost. 14. No one is so good as never to sin (§ 8, 4). 15. He said that he could not respect so foolish a king (use *nego*, say *not*). 16. They have warned us never to enter the city. 17. Persuade him not to restore the gold. 18. I forgot to say that he has gone to see the king. 19. He seemed to be the first man in the state.

§ 11. CLASSIFICATION OF TENSES.

LAW OF SEQUENCE.

1. The following classification of Latin tenses should be carefully mastered.

Latin tenses are divided into two classes, *Primary* and *Secondary* (or *Historical*). Thus:

Primary.	{ Present,	<i>amat</i> , he loves
	{ Perfect (pres. perf.),	<i>amāvit</i> , he has loved.
	{ Future,	<i>amābit</i> , he will love.
	{ Future-perfect,	<i>amaverit</i> , he will have loved.
Secondary or Historical.	{ Imperfect,	<i>amābat</i> , he was loving.
	{ Perf. (past indef.),	<i>amāvit</i> , he loved.
	{ Pluperfect,	<i>amāverat</i> , he had loved.

Note.—The only difficulty in this classification lies in the perfect, which has a double force. Thus: *amavit* means either *he has loved* or *he loved*. In the former case, it is called the *present perfect* (or perfect with *have*); in the latter the *past indefinite* (or *arist perfect*).

2. This classification is important in view of the fact that the tense of the subjunctive in a subordinate clause is primary when the tense of the verb of the main clause is primary, and secondary when the tense of the verb of the main clause is secondary. This law, known as the *Law of sequence of tenses* has been referred to already. It may be stated thus:

LAW OF SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

A primary tense in the principal clause, is followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause; a secondary tense in the principal clause, is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent clause.
Thus:

Rogat	} te ut venias	He asks	} you to come.
Rogabit		He will ask	
Rogavit		He has asked	
Rogaverit		He will have asked	
Rogabat	} te ut venires	He was asking	} you to come.
Rogavit		He asked	
Rogaverat		He had asked	

EXAMPLES OF PRIMARY AND SECONDARY SEQUENCE.

Laudant ut laudentur: They praise that they may be praised (primary sequence in final clause ; p. 12, 1).

Laudabant ut laudarentur. They praised that they might be praised (secondary sequence in final clause).

Obsecrat eum ne fratrem occidat. He implores him not to kill his brother (primary sequence).

Obsecravit eum ne fratrem occideret. He implored him not to kill his brother (secondary sequence).

Timeo ne peccaveris. *I am afraid that you have done wrong* (primary sequence).

Timēbam ne pecavisses. *I was afraid that you had done wrong* (secondary sequence).

Video causas esse multas quae eum impellant. *I see that there are many causes which urge him on* (primary sequence).

Vidi causas esse multas quae eum impellerent. *I saw that the causes were many which urged him on* (secondary sequence).

Eum monui ne hoc faciat. *I have warned him not to do this* (primary sequence).

Eum monui ne hoc faceret. *I warned him not to do this* (secondary sequence).

Note.—Occasionally the secondary sequence is found even with the present-perfect (perfect with *have*): as, **Haec non ut vos excitarem locutus sum.** *I have not said this to rouse you.*

EXERCISE XI.

1. He will easily persuade you not to come. 2. They have asked him to stand for the consulship. 3. We asked him to help us. 4. I was afraid that he would not return. 5. A law is short in order that it may be more easily understood (*teneo*). 6. I will ask him not to do anything against his will. 7. I was afraid that he would ruin the country. 8. He strove to teach them wisdom in war. 9. He said that he would obey all the laws that were passed. 10. There was danger that he would not do it (§ 10, 2). 11. I was afraid that he would die. 12. He was so timid that he did not dare to enter the camp. 13. He used to say that the life, which had been given us, was short. 14. He said that he hoped to finish the business shortly (p. 7, 3). 15. He was the last of all to promise to obey. 16. He wrote us to tell him what we had heard (p. 9, 9). 17. He broke his word so often that no one believed him. 18. They said that they had come to learn. 19. He was so angry that he answered nothing. 20. He used to say that many lived to eat.

§ 12. VERBS OF DOUBTING AND HINDERING.

1. Verbs meaning *to doubt*, when used with a negative, are followed in Latin by the subjunctive with **quin** (= *qui*, *how*, and *ne*, *not*, old form of *non*): as,

Non dubito quin me mirēre. *I do not doubt that you wonder at me.*

Nemo dubitat quin hoc turpe sit. *No one doubts that this is base.*

2. Verbs meaning *to hinder, prevent*, and the like, are followed in Latin by the subjunctive with **quominus** (= *by which the less* = *in order that not*): as,

Senectus non impedit quominus literis utamur. *Old age does not prevent us from enjoying literature.*

Per me stetit quominus ad te scriberet. *It was owing to me that he did not write to you* (impf. of secondary sequence: § 11, 2).

Note.—Of verbs of *preventing*, **prohibeo** is more usually followed by the infinitive: as, **Prohibent eum exire.** *They prevent him from going out.*

3. Verbs of *hindering* when used with a negative, or with a virtual negative (like **vix**, *hardly*), may be followed by the subjunctive with **quin**: as,

Vix inhiberi potuit quin saxa iaceret. *He could hardly be prevented from throwing stones.*

4. The following verbs and phrases, of much the same nature as the above, are also followed by **quin** (*but that*) with the subjunctive:

Nemo est (quin). *There is none but* (p. 11, 4).

Quid causae est (quin)? *What reason is there against?*

Fieri non potest (quin). *It can not be but that.*

Temperare mihi non possum (quin). *I can not refrain from.*

Minimum (haud multum) abesse (quin). *Be very near.*

Facere non possum (quin). *I can not help. Thus:*

Facere non potuit quin bellum inferret. *He could not help making war.*

Nihil praetermisit quin nobis persuaderet. He left nothing undone to persuade us.

Minimum abfuit quin omnes interficerentur. All were within a little of being killed.

Quid causae est quin id velit? What reason is there against his wishing it? (lit., what of cause is there).

Fieri non potest quin exclaimem. It is impossible for me not to cry out.

Note.—**Quin** is used with the indicative in the sense of (a) *why not*, (b) *nay*: as, *Quin conscendimus equos? Why don't we mount our horses?* (*Quin=qui ne, how not?*) *Quin, uno verbo dic. Nay, say it in one word.*

EXERCISE XII.

1. Nothing prevented us from building a city. 2. Nothing shall deter me from speaking the truth. 3. No one can doubt that he has returned. 4. He could hardly be prevented from laughing. 5. No one doubted that he had killed his friend. 6. They never saw him but (quin) they called him thief. 7. The storm will prevent them from coming. 8. We can not object to others dissenting (use quin). 9. No one is so wise that he can not learn. 10. He has left nothing undone to finish this business. 11. It was owing to you that the wedding did not take place. 12. Nothing ever deterred him from praising what deserved praise. 13. I was afraid that they could not be prevented from making war. 14. I do not hesitate to say that he has gone away to see the king. 15. No one was so powerful that he could do everything. 16. He could not help sending a letter every day.

§ 13. SUBJUNCTIVE IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

1. The Subjunctive is used in simple sentences:

(a) In *Wishes*: as,

Moriar. *May I die!* **Felix sis.** *May you be fortunate!*

The negative is **ne**: as,

Ne vivam si scio. *May I not live if I know!*

(b) In *Commands* or *Exhortations*: as,

Abeat. *Let him go away.* **Hoc faciamus.** *Let us do this.*

The negative is **ne**: as,

Ne abeat. *Let him not go away.* **Hoc ne faciamus.** *Let us not do this.*

Note.—Of commands in the second person, the imperative is used when the command is affirmative; **ne** with the perfect subjunctive, when the command is negative: as, **Ad me vēni.** *Come to me.* **Ne id fēcēris.** *Do not do it.*

(c) To soften an assertion: as,

[*me.*

Velim mihi ignoscas (ut omitted). *I should like you to pardon*

Mallēm te videre. *I should prefer to see you.*

Crederes. *You would have believed.*

Hoc dixerim. *This I would have said.*

(d) In questions that imply *deliberation*: as,

Quid faciam? *What am I to say? (What shall I say?)*

Quid facerem? *What was I to have said?*

This is called the *deliberative* subjunctive.

It is often introduced by **an**: as,

An ego non vēnīrem? *Ought I not to have come?*

(e) To express *duty* or *possibility* (see § 18): as,

Hoc non fecissēs. *You ought not to have done it.*

Aurum reddidissēs. *You should have restored the gold.*

This is called the *potential* subjunctive. It is of rare occurrence.

SYNTAX OF UTINAM.

2. When the subjunctive is used in *wishes*, *utinam* (*O! that, would that!*) is usually added. It is used as follows:—

When the fulfilment of the wish is possible, *utinam* is joined with the present or perfect subjunctive: as,

Utinam adsit. *O! that he may be there* (in the future).

Utinam adfuerit. *O! that he may have been there* (just now).

When the wish can no longer be realised, the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is used, the imperfect when the wish is referred to the present, the pluperfect when it is referred to the past: as,

Utinam adesset. *O! that he were here* (now).

Utinam adfuisset. *O! that he had been here* (in the past).

The negative is *ne* (rarely *non*): as,

Utinam ne hoc in mentem incidisset. *Would that it had not occurred to my mind!*

EXERCISE XIII.

1. Let us not lose this opportunity. 2. I should be unwilling to do it. 3. Let us remember that we owe this to our parents. 4. Do not think that we shall often have such a fleet. 5. Do not ask him to remain. 6. *O!* that you had never been born. 7. Would he were alive! 8. Would that they had sent me the bravest men they had! 9. May all traitors perish! 10. *O!* that I could find him. 11. I was afraid that he would not be safe. 12. Let us remember that life is short. 13. I should like you to come to this city. 14. *O!* that he may listen to you. 15. Let us always be the same. 16. *O!* that we had been living then. 17. What should I have said? 18. I should advise you to be silent. 19. You would suppose she was a goddess. 20. Why should I enumerate the multitude of their ships?

§ 14. THE IMPERATIVE.

1. The second person of the imperative is used (in both singular and plural) when the command is affirmative: as,

Vive valeque. *Live and farewell.* **Audite hoc.** *Hear this.*

2. A command in the third person is usually expressed by the present subjunctive: as,

Aut bibat aut abeat. *Let him either drink or go away.*

3. When the command is negative, **ne** is used with the perfect subjunctive for the 2nd person of the imperative, and with the present subjunctive for the 3rd person of the imperative: as,

Ne transieris flumen. *Do not cross the river.*

Ne cantet. *Let him not sing.*

4. The present subjunctive may be used for the 2nd person of the negative imperative when the prohibition is of a general character: as,

Ne multa discas sed multum. *Do not learn many things but much.*

5. In prohibitions, instead of **ne** and the perfect subjunctive, **noli** (pl. **nolite**) with the infinitive, or **cave** (pl. **cavete**) with **ne** and the subjunctive, is frequently found: as,

Noli abire. *Do not go away.* **Cavete ne illud faciatis.** *Take care not to do that, Do not do that.*

Note.—The **ne** is often omitted after **cave**, **cavete**.

6. *Or*, or *and not*, in negative imperative sentences is **neve** or **neu**: as,

Illud ne feceris neve dixeris. *Do not do or say that.*

Sequere neve retrospexeris. *Follow and do not look back.*

7. The imperative of **facio** (*do*) is used also as a paraphrase for a mild command: as,

Fac ut sciam. *Take care that I know (let me know).*

Fac ut sciat. *Let him know.*

8. The imperative in-to (-*tote*)—often called the future imperative—is usually found in wills and laws, though it is sometimes used merely for emphasis: as,

Mortuum in urbe ne sepelito. *Thou shalt not bury a dead man in the city.*

Servus meus liber esto. *Let my slave be free.*

EXERCISE XIV.

1. Go away; depart from this city. 2. Let him not lose such opportunity. 3. Do not believe that I am afraid that you will desert. 4. Preserve this town, Jupiter, and the citizens who dwell in it. 5. Thou shalt not kill (use *ne*). 6. Do not be moved by pity. 7. Do not be troublesome. 8. Do not praise the wicked. 9. Let them not believe that they will live long. 10. Take care that you write me soon. 11. Do not think that this will prevent him from coming. 12. Let no one deter you from praising what deserves praise. 13. Let us advance that we may hear more easily. 14. Let us start now in order to arrive earlier. 15. Let him leave Athens, a city in which no one is safe. 16. I believe that he was buried in the same tomb in which his distinguished father lies. 17. He has ordered them to attack the camp. 18. It often happened that the best men were rejected. 19. So far was he from wishing to have the province, that they could not persuade him to leave the city. 20. He was so ill that he could not write.

§ 15. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

NE, NONNE, NUM.

1. Interrogative sentences in Latin (when not headed by an interrogative pronoun or adverb) are usually distinguished by one of the interrogative particles, **-ne**, **nonne**, **num**. The order of words does not, as in English, mark an interrogative sentence.

2. The particle **-ne** (which is written after the first word in the sentence), asks for information: as, **Amatne?** *Does he love?* The answer will be either, **amat**, *he loves* (i.e., *Yes*), or **non amat**, *he does not love* (i.e., *No*). The particle **-ne** is generally appended to the emphatic word (which is then put first): as, **Filiusne amat?** *Does the son love?* (i.e. = *Is it the son that loves?*)

Note.—*Yes* or *No*, in answer to questions, has no single equivalent in common use. They are usually expressed by repeating the verb, as seen above.

3. **Nonne** expects the answer *Yes*: as, **Nonne puer amat?** *Does not the boy love?* The answer expected is, **amat**, *he loves* (i.e., *Yes*) **Nonne** is generally the first word in the sentence.

4. **Num** expects the answer *No*: as, **Num puer amat?** *Does the boy love?* or *the boy does not love, does he?* The answer expected is, **non amat**, *he does not love*, (i.e., *No*). **Num** is generally the first word in the sentence.

5. The following are the more common interrogative pronouns and adverbs:

Quis or **quisnam**, *who?*

Uter, *which of the two?*

Quantus, *how great?*

Quotus, *which in the series?*

Quot, *how many?*

Qualis, *what kind?*

Ubi, *where?*

Unde, *whence?*

Cur,

Quare,

Quamobrem,

} *why?*

Quo, *whither?*

Quando, *when?* (quum is never interrogative.)

Qui, *how?*

Quam, (with adjs., or adverbs)
how?

Quemadmodum, } *in what way?*
or **quomodo**,

Quoties, *how often?*

Quamdiu, *how long?*

Quousque, *how far?*

Thus:

Quis es? Who are you? Quota hora est? What o'clock is it?

Cur id rogas? Why do you ask that?

Quae tandem causa te impellit? What motive, pray, impells you?

Note.—Tandem, in an interrogative sentence, means *pray*.

Quisnam hoc fecit? Who in the world has done this?

Note.—Nam joined to quis, adds the idea of *impatience*.

Quod facinus admisit? What crime has he committed?

Note.—Quod is the adjectival form of quid, *what*? If quid were used, it would take the genitive: as, *Quid facinoris admisit?*

6. *Whether....or* in a double question, is *utrum....an*; *whether....or not*, *utrum....an non*: as,

Utrum Pallas hoc fecit an Iuno? Whether has Pallas done this or Juno?

Utrum haec vera sunt an non? Whether is this true or not?

Note.—Utrum is sometimes omitted, sometimes replaced by the appended *non*: as, *Hoc an illud fecisti? Whether did you do this or that? Nostine me an ignoras? Do you know me or don't you know me?*

7. A rhetorical question is often introduced by *an*; as,

An servi esse vultis? Can it be that you want to be slaves?

EXERCISE XV.

1. Do you think that he will come? 2. Who said that he refused to obey? 3. Whether is it water or wine? 4. Is there one world only, or more? 5. Are those your words or not? 6. Is the number of the stars odd or even? 7. Do you think that death is an eternal sleep or the beginning of another life? 8. Does he know the glory of virtue? Yes. 9. Why do you not ask him to follow justice? 10. Has he not sent an ambassador to persuade us? 11. How do you know all this? (plur.) 12. Where are you coming from? 13. Whither are you going? 14. Are you asking

him to betray his country? 15. You don't hear me, do you? 16. Can it be that they are taking up arms against their country? 17. Why does he pretend that he is teaching his brother? 18. Don't you hope that he will find what you have lost? 19. How did it happen that there was no one present? 20. When did you hear the orator? 21. Why do you give nothing to the poor? 22. How could he pretend that he was unwilling?

§ 16. INDIRECT QUESTION.

1. A question dependent upon a verb of *asking, knowing, telling,* or the like, has its verb in the subjunctive: as,

Unde venis? Where are you coming from. But:

Scio unde venias. I know where you are coming from.

Here *unde venias* is called an *indirect (or dependent) question*

2. *Whether, or if,* in an indirect question, is *num*: as,

Dic mihi num venerit. Tell me whether (if) he has come.

Whether . . . or is *utrum . . . an*; but *or not* is *necne* and not *annon* (as in the direct question): as,

Quaeritur utrum interfectus sit necne. The question is whether he has been put to death or not.

3. The law of sequence of tenses (§ 11, 2) is to be strictly observed in the indirect question. Thus:

Primary.

Rogo	} quid	agas.
Rogabo		ēgeris.
Rogavi		acturus sis.

<i>I ask</i>	} what	<i>you are doing.</i>
<i>I shall ask</i>		<i>you have done</i> <i>(or did).</i>
<i>I have asked</i>		<i>you are going</i> <i>to do.</i>

Secondary.

Rogabam	} quid	ageres.
Rogavi		egisses.
Rogaveram		acturus esses

<i>I was asking</i>	} what	<i>you were doing.</i>
<i>I asked</i>		<i>you had done.</i>
<i>I had asked</i>		<i>you were going</i> <i>to do.</i>

Note 1.—The future subjunctive active is formed from the future participle with *sim*, which becomes *essem* after a secondary tense: as, *Rogo quid acturus sis. I ask what you will do. Rogavi quid acturus esses. I asked what you would do.*

Note 2.—From reluctance to join an impf. subjun. with a primary tense, Latin says *Rogo quid tum egēris* (not *ageres*) for *I ask you what you were doing then.*

4. After *nescio* or *haud scio* (*I don't know*), *dubito* (*I doubt*), *incertum est* (*It is uncertain*)—implying an affirmative—*whether* is an: as,

Constantiam dico? Nescio an melius patientiam possim dicere. Consistency, do I say? I don't know whether I can not better say long-suffering.

Note 1.—In cases like the above, *nescio an* has the force of *I almost think* (i.e., is used affirmatively).

Note 2.—*Nescio quis hoc dixit* is *Some one or other has said it. Nescio quis hoc dixerit* is *I don't know who has said it.* In the former *nescio quis* is an indefinite pronoun, *Some one or other, I don't know who.*

5. In sentences like *You know the skill with which he speaks*, Latin prefers the indirect question and puts the noun in the dependent clause: as,

Scis quanta arte loquatur. You know the skill with which he speaks.

EXERCISE XVI.

1. Don't you know whether you have conquered or not? 2. I should like to know whether these are your words or not. 3. Ask him what he thinks about the matter. 4. Tell me if your friend has returned. 5. We all know how daring you are. 6. You will never believe how often I have advised them. 7. Take care to inform me when you will set out. 8. Why don't you ask him where he has been? 9. I almost think that he is not happy. 10. I did not know whether he was a wise man or a fool. 11. I saw what you would do. 12. I asked them where they had laid my book. 13. Did you know by whom the city was founded? 14. Tell me how many letters you wrote yesterday. 15. Have you heard how many they are? 16. I will ask the road by which he will return.

§ 17. USE OF THE INDIRECT QUESTION FOR AN ENGLISH NOUN.

1. Latin often uses the indirect question where English uses an abstract or verbal noun : as,

Rogavit quot hostes essent. *He asked the number of the enemy.*

Scio cur redieris. *I know the reason of your return.*

Dicam tibi quo eamus. *I will tell you our destination.*

Quid de ea re sentiat exponet. *He will explain his view of the matter.*

Vides quale periculum sit. *You see the nature of the danger.*

2. The indirect question must be distinguished from the relative clause. Thus :

Scio quid quaeras. *I know your question.* But, Scio quod quaeris. *I know the answer to your question.*

Dico quae sentiam. *I state my opinion.* But, Dico quae sentio. *I say what I mean.*

EXERCISE XVII.

Use the indirect question for italicised nouns.

1. I see the *suddenness* of the danger (use *quam*). 2. Can you tell the *source* of that rumor. 3. I have heard the *origin* of the custom. 4. You see the *character* of the man. 5. Let us ask him the *date* of his departure. 6. Shall we ever know the *manner* of his death? 7. I did not know the *size* of the city. 8. Let us wait that we may see the *issue* of the matter (use *evado*, *turn out*). 9. No one foresaw the *extent* of the danger. 10. They knew the *reason* for his action. 11. The *motive* of his act was plain to all. 12. Tell me his *opinion* of the whole affair. 13. You know now the *manner* of his life from boyhood. 14. Have they discovered the enemy's *position*? 15. You know the *agents* in this crime. 16. What prevented them from attacking us? 17. The plan was such that I could not praise it. 18. How does it happen that you did not allow them to return? 19. Why were you afraid that I would not speak the truth? 20. It happened that no one opened the gate of the city.

§18. MAY, CAN, MUST, OUGHT.

1. *May*, in a principal sentence, is expressed by *licet* with the infinitive: as, *Mihi ire licet. I may go.*

2. *Can* is *possum*: as, *Id facere possum. I can do it.*

Note.—*Licet* expresses *permission*, *possum* *power*; but *Fieri potest* ut is, *It may happen that (it is possible that)*: as, *Fieri potest ut opus confectum sit. It is possible that the work has been finished.*

3. *Ought* or *should*, expressing *duty*, is *debeo* or *oportet*: as, *Venire debes. You ought to come.*

Hoc me facere oportet. I ought to do it.

Note.—*Ought* or *should* is usually expressed, however, by the gerundive in *-dus* with the verb *to be*: as, *Id faciendum est. This ought to be done* (p. 45, 2).

4. *Must* is expressed by *necesse est* and the infinitive, or (or persons) the subjunctive, with or without *ut*: as,

Tibi mori necesse est (or *Tibi moriari necesse est*). *You must die.*

Note 1.—*Must*, implying *obligation*, is usually expressed by the gerundive in *-dus* and the verb *to be*: as, *Hi audiendi sunt. These men must be listened to.*

Note 2.—*Must*, expressing strong probability, is *haud* (or *non*) *feri potuit quin*, *it could not have been but that*: as, *Haud (or non) fieri potuit quin eam vidēret. He must have seen her.*

5. The English perfect infinitive used after *might*, *could*, *ought*, is expressed in Latin by the present infinitive: as,

Hoc mihi facere licuit. I might have done it.

Hoc facere potui. I could have done it.

Hoc facere debuisti. You ought to have done it.

6. An adjective joined to an infinitive with *licet* or *necesse est*, is in the dative, if the pronoun is expressed; if not, in the accusative: as,

Licet vobis esse ignāvis. You may be cowards. But,

Licet esse ignavos. We may be cowards (lit., *it is allowable to be cowards*).

EXERCISE XVIII.

1. You should have warned him to consult the judge. 2. They should tell us their names. 3. It may be that he advised them to surrender. 4. They could not have killed women and children. 5. Do not ask them whether they could have done it or not. 6. Will you ask how many prisoners have been taken? 7. You might have left the city immediately. 8. O! that he would not do it. 9. She was so blind as not to see him. 10. He must have forgotten his friend (*gen.*). 11. You can allow none to go away. 12. I ought to have asked him to set out at once. 13. I should like to know how many cities were taken. 14. O! that we had warned him not to come. 15. She was the first to ask when we would do it. 16. Were you afraid that I would not speak the truth? 17. Who can hope to persuade him? 18. He said that he did not speak Latin. 19. They began to write at once in order that they might go out. 20. He promised that he would remain there. 21. May I go into the garden to pluck a flower?

§ 19. NOTES ON THE TENSES.

1. Latin has only one form for the three forms of the English present. Thus: *Scribo* is *I write* (indefinite), *I am writing* (progressive) and *I do write* (emphatic).

2. The present is used, for vividness, of past time: as,

Continuo milites in castra mittit. Forthwith he sends the soldiers into the camp. This is called *the historic present*.

3. The present is used with adverbs of past time, for the English perfect: as,

Hoc iamdudum (or iampridem) facio. I have been doing this for a long time.

So too: *Tertium iam annum hic sumus. We have been here now three years.* *Tres iam menses te videre cupio. I have been longing to see you for three months.*

Note.—The imperfect will of course be used for the English pluperfect: as, *Illud iamdudum faciebam. I had been doing that for a long time.*

4. The imperfect represents an action in past time as *incomplete, repeated, continuous, or habitual*: as,

Saxa in eos devolvebant. They were rolling down stones on them.

Hunc saepe audiebant. They often heard of him.

Hic ara vetus stabat. Here an old altar used to stand.

Consilium mutavit; vidēbat enim nihil confici posse. He changed his plan; for he saw that nothing could be done (imperfect of continuous action.)

Note.—The impf. will often translate the English *began, tried, attempted, etc.*: as, *Ad proellum sese expediebant. They began to prepare themselves for battle. Urbem servabam. I was trying to save the city.*

5. The Latin perfect represents both the English present perfect (perfect with *have*) and the English past indefinite (or aorist perfect): as,

Scripti. I wrote, or I have written.

6. The Latin perfect indicative with *postquam, quum primum, ut primum, ut, simul ac* (or, before a vowel, *atque*) is used for the English pluperfect with *when, after (that), as soon as*: as,

Postquam haec audivit, abiit. After he had heard this, he went away.

7. The pluperfect represents an action as finished in past time: as, *Scripteram, I had written.*

After *qui* or *quum* it is used idiomatically, in a frequentative sense (*i.e.* to express frequency or repetition), for the English perfect: as,

Qui id dixerat, poenam dabat. Whoever said that, was punished.

Quum rosam viderat, tum ver esse arbitrabatur. *Whenever he saw the rose, then he judged that it was spring.*

8. The future represents an action as going on, and the future-perfect an action as complete, in future time: as,

Scribam, I shall write; scripsero, I shall have written.

After *when, if*, etc., English often uses the present tense referring to the future: as, *I will send him, when he comes.* In such a case Latin requires the future, or—if the action of one verb is represented as over before that of the other begins—the future-perfect: as, **Eum mittam quum redibit** (or **redierit**). *I will send him, when he comes.*

Note.—In fact when there is a future in the main clause, there is usually a future or a future-perfect in the subordinate clause: as, **Haec civitas, dum erit, eum laudabit.** *This country, while it exists, will praise him.*

FÖRE UT FOR FUTURE INFINITIVE.

9. Many verbs have no supine and, therefore, no future infinitive (active or passive), which is formed from the supine. Such verbs form their future infinitive by means of **före** or **futurum esse** (*to be about to be*), and **ut** with the subjunctive: as,

Dicit fore ut haec poscant. *He says that they will demand these things* (lit., *he says it to be about to be that they demand these things*).

Dixit fore ut ea poscerentur. *He said that these things would be demanded* (imperfect, in accordance with the law of sequence: § 11, 2).

Note.—This construction is often used (as more convenient) even with the verbs that have a supine: as, **Dixit fore ut rex mitteretur.** *He said that the king would be sent.*

FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

10. It has been shown (p. 31, 3. Note 1.) that the future subjunctive active (which is wanting) is supplied in Latin by the future participle and the verb **sum**. Thus:

Scio quid acturus sis. *I know what you will do.*

Sciebam quid acturus esses. I knew what you would do (imperfect, after a secondary tense).

The future subjunctive passive, and the future subjunctive active of verbs that have no supine, are formed by means of the impersonal *futurum sit* (or *esset*) with an *ut*-clause. Thus :

Future Subjunctive Active.

Rogo num futurum sit ut puer discat. I ask whether the boy will learn.

Rogavi num futurum esset ut puer disceret. I asked whether the boy would learn.

Future Subjunctive Passive.

Non dubito quin futurum sit ut puer doceatur. I do not doubt that the boy will be taught.

Non dubitavi quin futurum esset ut puer doceretur. I did not doubt that the boy would be taught.

EXERCISE XIX.

1. You will do it when you please (*volo*).
2. When it is ordered, it will be done.
3. After he had left the city, he fled to his father.
4. Philosophy flourished in Greece.
5. Whenever he came to a town, he shut himself in his litter.
6. He used to say that the boy would learn.
7. I doubt whether the gate will be open.
8. I have long known that he was a fool.
9. He began to tell me where he was coming from.
10. I did not doubt that the king would be killed.
11. Let those come who are (will be) able.
12. I had long thought that it could never happen.
13. I never doubted that he would tremble.
14. It was uncertain whether the boy would learn.
15. No one doubted that he would be put-at-the-head-of the army.
16. They knew what we would ask.
17. Tell me who you are and what you wish.
18. You now see how hard it is.

§ 20. IDIOMATIC USES OF LATIN VERBS.

1. Some verbs like **dicor** (*I am said*), **videor** (*I seem*), **putor** (*I am thought*), and **feror** (*I am said*), prefer the personal to the impersonal use : as,

Dicitur rex fulase. *It is said that he was king.*

Videtur esse sapiens. *It seems that he is wise.*

2. Many verbs (especially verbs of motion) prefer an impersonal passive use to the personal use in the active : as,

Ad aedem ventum est. *They came to the temple (literally, it was come.)* So too : **Itur,** *people go* (lit., *it is gone*).

The agent is expressed by **a** (or **ab**) with the ablative : as,

Ab omnibus ambulatum est. *Everybody walked.*

Note.—Such verbs are often best translated by substituting an appropriate noun as subject : as, **Clamatum est,** *a shout was raised.*

3. A verb that governs a dative must, when used in the passive, be used impersonally, the nominative in English becoming the dative of the indirect object in Latin : as,

Tibi credo. *I believe you.* But : **Tibi creditur.** *You are believed.*

Gloriae tuae invidetur. *Your glory is envied.*

4. Some verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred form or meaning : as,

Somnium somnare. *To dream a dream.*

This is called the **cognate accusative**. Such verbs are generally used only in the passive.

5. Latin often uses a neuter pronoun or adjective with a verb, where English has a noun : as,

Id rogo. *I make this request.*

Idem promitto. *I make the same promise.*

Nihil respondet. *He gives no answer.*

Hoc gloriatur. *He makes this boast,*

Eadem peccat. *He commits the same sins.*

Nihil succenset. *He is not at all angry.*

Illud tibi assentior. *In that I agree with you.*

Note.—Such idioms as the above, are very characteristic of Latin style, which loves brevity, simplicity, and point.

6. Verbs meaning *to ask, teach, or conceal*, govern two accusatives, one of the person, another of the thing : as,

Me primum sententiam rogavit. *He asked me my opinion first.*

Quis te musicam docuit? *Who taught you music?*

Nihil nos celat. *He conceals nothing from us.*

In the passive, the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained : as,

Filius musicam a patre doctus est. *The son was taught music by his father.*

7. Many intransitive verbs become transitive in Latin when compounded with a preposition : as,

Convenire aliquem. *Have an interview with a person.*

So too : **Circumvenire** (*cheat*), **aggrēdi** (*attack*), **oppugnare** (*attack a place*), **obsidēre** (*besiege*), **inire consilium** (*form a plan*), **coīre societatem** (*form a partnership*), **obire mortem** (*die*).

Note.—**Pōto**, *I ask*, and **postūlo**, *I demand*, take the accusative of the thing and the ablative of the person with **a** (or **ab**), *from* : as, **Pacem ab Romanis petiverunt**, *they asked the Romans for peace* (= *they asked peace from the Romans*) ; **librum ab amico postulavit**, *he demanded a book from his friend*. **Quaero**, *to ask, seek*, takes the accusative of the thing and the ablative of the person with **a** (or **ab**), **e** (or **ex**), or **de** : as, **Causam e viro quaesivit**, *he asked a reason from the man* (or, *he asked the man for a reason*).

8. Many intransitive verbs (especially those expressing motion) when compounded with the preposition **ad** (*to*), **circum** (*around*), **per** (*through*), **praeter** (*past*), **trans** (*across*), or **super** (*above*), take an accusative after them governed by the preposition : as,

Cato rostra advolat. *Cato flies to the hustings.*

Equites Romani senatum circumstant. *Roman knights surround the senate.*

Murmur contionem pervasit. *A murmur went through the assembly.*

Here the accusative depends on the preposition. The sentences might have been expressed thus : **Ad rostra Cato volat ; equites Romani circum senatum stant ; murmur per contionem vasit .**

So too, the transitive verbs, **transduco** (or **traduco**), *I lead across*, and **transporto**, *I bear across*, may take two accusatives in the active, one depending on the verb and the other on the preposition : as,

Hannibal copias Ibêrum traduxit. *Hannibal led the forces across the Ebro.*

Caesar milites navibus flumen transportat. *Caesar conveys his soldiers across the river in ships.*

9. Verbs of *making, choosing, calling, naming, regarding* and *showing*, take two accusatives in the active : as,

Populus Romanus Ciceronem consulem creavit. *The Roman people elected Cîcero consul.*

Here **Ciceronem** is the direct object, and **consulem** is a part of the predicate and is called the **predicate accusative**.

In the passive, these verbs take two nominatives ; the direct object of the active becomes the subject nominative, and the predicate accusative of the active becomes the predicate nominative of the passive : as,

Cicero consul a populo Romano creatus est. *Cicero was elected consul by the Roman people.*

Such verbs are called **factitives**.

EXERCISE XX.

1. Tell them not to ask you the same question again. 2. Did you think that I would ask peace from you? 3. Were you afraid

that he had formed the same plan as before? 4. Who doubted that (*quin*) he would be made consul? 5. He ought not to have concealed these plans from you. 6. Do not suppose that he can lead this army across the river. 7. I believe that he will ask nothing from you. 8. He tried to persuade (*impl.*) us that only fools were fortunate. 9. He thought that his fault had been pardoned. 10. He wishes to be thought wise. 11. I warn you that they can not be trusted. 12. It is said that the gallant Crassus has been killed. 13. He was so silent that he seemed to be wise. 14. It was said that he was the father of his country. 15. Did you bring him here to teach us this? 16. It seemed that all the tribes had conspired against them. 17. You have been long envied. 18. You will be answered that this can not be done. 19. Did they not make the same answer as before? 20. I was afraid that he would wish to have an interview with me.

§21. SUPINE, GERUND, GERUNDIVE.

1. Latin verbs have two **supines**, one in **-tum** and one in **-tu** : as, *Amatum*, *to love*; *amatu*, *to be loved*.

Note.—These forms are really the accusative and ablative respectively of a verbal noun in **-tus** (*Gen.*, **-tūs**).

2. The supine in **-tum** denotes *purpose*, and is used only after verbs of motion : as,

Legatos mittunt pacem petitum. *They send ambassadors to sue for peace.*

Note.—The supine in **-tum** governs the same case as the verb from which it is formed.

3. The supine in **-tum** is used with *iri* (*pres. inf. pass. of ire, to go*), to form the future infinitive passive : as,

Dicit urbem captum iri. *He says that the city will be taken, or,*

literally, *He says that people are gone* (i.e., *it is gone*; p. 38, 2) *to take the city.* *Urbem* is the acc. after the supine *captum*.

4. The supine in *-tu* is used after adjectives expressing *difficulty, ease, credibility, pleasure, worth* or the reverse, and after a few substantives, like *fas* (*right*), *nefas* (*wrong*), *scelus* (*wickedness*): as,

Difficile est dictu. *It is difficult to be said, or it is difficult to say* (literally, *in the saying*).

Scelus est relatu. *Horrible to relate!*

GERUND.

5. The gerund is a neuter verbal noun in *-dum*, corresponding to the English participial noun in *-ing*. It is inflected as follows:

FIRST CONJUGATION.

GEN. *amandi*, of loving.
DAT. *amando*, to or for loving.
ACC. *amandum*, loving.
ABL. *amando*, with, by, from or
in loving.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

GEN. *regendi*, of ruling.
DAT. *regendo*, to or for ruling.
ACC. *regendum*, ruling.
ABL. *regendo*, with, by, from or
in ruling.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

monendi, of advising.
monendo, to or for advising.
monendum, advising.
monendo, with, by, from or
in advising.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

audiendi, of hearing.
audiendo, to or for hearing.
audiendum, hearing.
audiendo, with, by, from or
in hearing.

6. The gerund has partly the nature of a noun and partly that of a verb. As a noun, it may be governed by another noun, or by an adjective, or by a preposition. It resembles a verb in governing a case and in being limited by an adverb: as,

Ius vocandi senatum. *The right of summoning the senate.*

(Here the gerund is governed in the genitive by *ius*, and governs *senatum* in the accusative, because *vocāre* governs that case.)

Docendo discimus. *We learn by teaching.* *Natus ad regendum.*
Born for ruling.

Parcendo inimicis gloriam paravit. *He won distinction by sparing his enemies.*

Note 1.—The gerund has often the force of a passive: as, **Res difficilis ad tolerandum.** *A matter hard to be borne.* **Dedit eos ad trucidandum.** *He gives them up to be butchered.*

Note 2.—The nominative and (except after a preposition) the accusative of the gerund is supplied by the infinitive: as, **Ambulare iucundum est,** *walking is delightful*; **odit servire,** *he hates being a slave.*

GERUNDIVE.

7. Instead of the gerund with an accusative, Latin idiom uses a peculiar construction of its own. Thus: *Born for ruling men* is not often expressed by **Natus ad viros regendum**, but by **Natus ad viros regendos**, where **regendos** agrees with **viros** in gender, number, and case, and is called the *gerundive*. So too: **In epistolis scribendis** (*in writing letters*) is used for **In scribendo epistolas** and **Consilium urbis capiendae** (*the plan for taking the city*) for **Consilium capiendi urbem**.

Note.—The gerundive seems to have a passive meaning. Thus: **In epistolis scribendis** = *In letters to be written* = *in writing letters*. **Consilium urbis capiendae** = *The plan of the city to be taken* = *of taking the city*.

8. The rule for turning the gerund into the gerundive is easily deduced from the above examples. *The direct object of the gerund is attracted into the case of the gerund, and the gerund (then called the gerundive) made to agree with the object in gender, number and case.*

9. The genitive of the gerund, and of the gerundive, is often used, to express *purpose*, with **causā**, *on account of*, *for the sake of*, which is written after its case: as,

Huc quærendi causā venērunt. *They have come here for the purpose of complaining.*

Vestis est frigoris depellendi causā. *Dress is intended for keeping off cold (lit., is for the sake of, etc.).*

Note.—It has been seen that the English infinitive of purpose may be turned into Latin in several ways. Thus:

They send ambassadors to sue for peace.

- (a) *Legatos mittunt ut pacem petant* (Final clause; p. 12, 1. Note 2).
- (b) *Legatos mittunt pacem petitum* (Supine; p. 41, 2).
- (c) *Legatos mittunt ad pacem petendam* (Gerundive).
- (d) *Legatos mittunt pacis petendae causā.*

EXERCISE XXI.

1. He sent his boys to hear the orator Cicero. 2. We are now ready for reading a book. 3. They have formed the plan of crossing the river to attack the enemy. 4. There is no doubt that he is the most suitable man for carrying on the war. 5. Have they come here for the sake of refitting their ship? 6. Tell me when they will have an opportunity of finishing the work. 7. He used to say that we learned by seeing and hearing. 8. What prevented him from becoming skilful in conducting the government? 9. He has gone to ask them when they will sail. 10. He used to say that a short life was long enough for living well. 11. I went to walk; he, to sleep. 12. I told him how much gold was given for restoring the temple. 13. They said that they would not go there to be slaves. 14. He gained great glory by burning their villages. 15. Horrible to say, they butchered both women and children. 16. I believe that they came to the camp to complain of their wrongs. 17. He was the only one who ever saved the country by delaying. 18. He used to say that ruling a state was easier than resisting pleasure. 19. They thought that seeing was not always believing. 20. Spring is the time for sowing seed. 21. Can you tell whence this comes?

§ 22. THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.—(*Continued.*)

1. The gerund—and *not the gerundive*—is to be used :—

(a) In the case of verbs that do not govern an accusative : as,
Parcendo inimicis. *By sparing enemies* (not **parcendis inimicis**).

(b) Where euphony would be violated : as,

Amicos videndi causā. *For the sake of seeing friends* (not **amicorum videndorum causā**).

(c) Where ambiguity results : as,

Aliquid docendi causā. *For the sake of teaching something* (not **alicuius**, which would mean *some one*).

PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

2. The gerundive is often used to express *obligation* : as,

Hostis timendus. *An enemy that ought to be (or must be) feared.*

From this use of the gerundive, a whole conjugation—called the **Passive Periphrastic Conjugation**—is formed from the gerundive and the verb **sum**, *I am*. Thus :—

Present,	{ amandus sum , <i>I am to be loved.</i> amandus es , <i>thou art to be loved</i> , etc.
Imperfect,	{ amandus eram , <i>I was to be loved.</i> amandus eras , <i>thou wast to be loved</i> , etc.
Future,	{ amandus ero , <i>I shall have to be loved.</i> amandus eris , <i>thou wilt have to be loved</i> , etc.

And so on.

3. The agent is expressed in the passive periphrastic conjugation by the dative : as,

Parentes nobis amandi sunt. *Our parents should be loved by us.*

4. The passive periphrastic conjugation is generally used to translate the English *should, ought, must* (expressing obligation) ; as,

Ex civitate pellendi sunt. *They must be banished.*

When the verb in English is active, the object becomes the subject in Latin, and the subject becomes the dative of the agent : as,

Aqua mihi bibenda est. *I must drink water (=water must be drunk by me).*

5. Intransitive verbs and verbs that govern the genitive, the dative, or the ablative, must be used *impersonally* in the passive periphrastic conjugation : as,

Nobis eundum¹ est. *We must go (=it must be gone by us).*

Omnibus moriendum est. *All must die.*

Civibus a te consulendum est. *You should consult the interests of the citizens.*

Inimicis a nobis parcendum est. *We must spare our enemies.*

Utendum est iudicio a te. *You must use your judgment.*

Dixit tibi credendum esse. *He said that you should be believed (lit., that it must be believed to you).*

Note.—When a verb does not govern the accusative, the agent (to avoid ambiguity) is expressed in the passive periphrastic conjugation by **a** (or **ab**) with the ablative. This appears from the above examples.

6. With **do** (*give*), **trado** (*hand over*), **curo** (*take care of*), **loco** (*let out a contract*), **conduco** (*take a contract*), the gerundive is used for the English infinitive : as,

Terram habitandam dat. *He gives them the land to dwell in.*

Pontem faciendum curat. *He has (or gets) a bridge built.*

EXERCISE XXII.

Translate "should," "ought" and "must" by the Gerundive.

1. You ought to have advanced your friends to offices. 2. He did not know what ought to be done. 3. Do you think that he should sell his house? 4. We must spare those who resist us. 5. He has come in order to help his friends. 6. He has promised to

¹ This idiom is also explained as the nominative of the gerund. Thus: **Eundum nobis est**=*Going is to us=we must go*.

hand over this bridge to us to guard. 7. You should consult the interests of the state. 8. The citizen must obey the magistrate. 9. He said that it was both hard to do and hard to tell. 10. The army marched to the river for the purpose of fighting the Gauls. 11. Am I to answer them or not? 12. He said that he must find the book that he had lost. 13. Tell us when you formed the plan of selling the house. 14. They say that the baggage ought to be left in the camp. 15. They have come here for the sake of learning something about the city. 16. He won glory by aiding the poor and sparing the vanquished. 17. He ought to have been loved on account of his goodness. 18. We must go to the harbor to see the ships. 19. Don't you think we ought to obey the law? 20. He used to say that the art of conducting the government was a difficult (one).

§ 23. THE PARTICIPLE.

1. The participle has partly the nature of a verb and partly that of an adjective. Hence the name (*pars* and *capio*). Like a verb, it has voice, tense, and number, and governs the same case as the verb from which it is formed; like an adjective it has declension and gender, and agrees with nouns.

2. Apart from the *gerundive* (explained p. 43), transitive verbs have in Latin *three* participles:

- (a) A *present participle active*: as, *amans*, *loving*.
- (b) A *future participle active*: as, *amaturus*, *about to love*.
- (c) A *perfect participle passive*: as, *amatus*, *loved*, *having been loved*.

3. The Latin participle is used to express an English clause introduced by *who*, *when*, *while*, *as*, *if*, *though*, *because*: as,

Non parcimus resistentibus. We do not spare those who resist us.

Epistola ad me scribentem vēnit. The letter came to me when (while, as) I was writing.

Eis vel morientibus non ignoscet. *He will not forgive them, even though (if) they are dying.*

Caesar, haec veritus, suos eduxit. *Caesar, because he was afraid of this, led out his men.*

Note.—The above principle, which is one of the most important in Latin syntax, may be stated as follows :—The Latin participle, apart from its adjectival force, is used to express the adverbial relations of *time, condition, cause, concession, or attendant circumstance.*

4. Of two co-ordinate verbs in English connected by *and*, one is usually to be turned by the participle : as,

Eum arreptum Romam trahebant. *They seized him and began to drag him to Rome.*

Ingressus consedit. *He entered and sat down.*

Note.—This is also a most important principle and, taken in connection with the principle of 3, largely accounts for the compactness of the Latin sentence.

5. The present participle is strictly used to denote time contemporaneous with that of the main verb : as,

Hoc dixit moriens. *This he said while dying.*

It is often, however,—especially in the oblique cases—used in a more general sense : as,

Pugnantium clamor. *The shouting of combatants.*

6. The present participle is often used in Latin to express an English abstract noun : as,

Mihi interroganti respondit. *He replied to my question.*

Lugentium lacrimae. *Tears of mourning (i. e., of persons mourning.)*

Gratulantium clamores. *Shouts of congratulation.*

Note.—This is quite in accordance with the genius of Latin which avoids personification and the use of abstract terms.

7. The *case absolute* in Latin is the *ablative*—not, as in English, the *nominative*. It is often found with the participle : as,

Haec facta sunt, Tullio regnante. *This was done in the reign of Tullius (i.e., Tullius reigning).*

8. Of all Latin verbs, deponents alone have a perfect participle active. Thus: *locutus* is *having spoken*, and *secutus*, *having followed*; but *victus* is not *having conquered*, but *having been conquered*; *auditus* is not *having heard*, but *having been heard*: as,

Hac re auditā, abiit. *This fact having been heard, he departed.*
The use of the perfect participle passive as a perfect participle active is a common elementary mistake.

SUBSTITUTE FOR PERFECT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE.

9. How then shall we translate *Having taken the city*? By the perfect participle *passive* in the ablative absolute¹: as,

Urbe captā, rediit. *Having taken the city, he returned.*

Note.—The absence of a perfect participle active accounts for the frequent use in Latin of the ablative absolute.

10. The present participle active, when used—as it is so commonly in English—for the past participle, must be translated by the perf. part. of a deponent or by one of the substitutes for the perf. part. act. Thus:

Leaving home, he came to Athens. **Domo profectus, Athēnas venit.**

Having heard this, he departed. **Quo audito, abiit.**

Proficiscens would mean *while leaving*; **audiens**, *while hearing*. In fact it is a good rule never to use a present participle in the nominative in Latin, unless you can put *while* before the participle in English.

11. A demonstrative pronoun can not be joined, as in English, to the participle. Thus: *Those doing this, will be punished*, is **Qui hoc facient, poenas dabunt** (not **ii facientes**). See paragraph 5 above.

¹ Other substitutes will be mentioned further on. Thus: **Quum urbem cepisset**, and **postquam urbem cepit**, are both common forms for *having taken the city*.

12. The agent with the perf. part. pass. is frequently expressed by the dative instead of by *a* (or *ab*) with an ablative: as,

Omnia haec mihi perspecta sunt. All these points have been studied by me.

13. Instead of the perfect indicative active, the perf. part. pass. with *habeo* *I have*, is used (chiefly with verbs meaning *to know* or *find out*) to denote a *continuous effect*: as,

Fidem quam habent diu notam. Faith which they have long known.

14. The perfect participle passive (in agreement with a noun) is often used in Latin for an English abstract or verbal noun: as,

Nuntiata clades eos permovit. The announcement of the disaster moved them.

So too: *Ab urbe condita. From the foundation of the city.*

Post regem interfectum. After the murder of the king.

EXERCISE XXIII.

*The asterisk * shows where a participle should be used.*

1. Seize * the man and slay him. 2. I spoke these words to those * standing by. 3. When * departing, he handed over the army to me. 4. Mounting * his horse, he rode past the whole line. 5. It is said that he was killed by a pirate while * crossing to Africa. 6. Forming * this design, he left the camp. 7. This city, though * it desired to do so, could not detain him. 8. I believe that he will give up * his province and return immediately. 9. Having heard their words, he ordered them to be arrested * and thrown into prison. 10. We are all desirous of hearing many things. 11. Let us ask if he will attack them while * crossing the river. 12. Receiving * the letters, he dismissed the messenger. 13. He defeated * and pursued them. 14. I think that I hear shouts of joy *. 15. Seizing * a spear, he prepared to defend himself. 16. To my complaint * that he had broken his word, he made no answer. 17. The weather was such that no ship could set out. 18. We will attack them as * they are starting from the camp. 19. He determined to

return at once, because * he had delayed there so long. 20. Do you think (that) they have been ordered to go? 21. I doubted whether the gate of the city was open (*use pateo*). 22. We do not believe a liar, even if he * speaks the truth. 23. After the expulsion * of the son, the father came to Italy. 24. The reading * of the letter caused loud clamor.

§ 24. PARTICIPLE.—(Continued).

The Ablative Absolute.

1. The *case absolute* in Latin—as has been said—is the ablative; and the *ablative absolute* with a participle is one of the commonest of Latin idioms.

The ablative absolute is used—as we have seen—as a substitute for the perfect participle active (which is wanting) and also for translating the English *present* participle active when used—as it frequently is—for the *perfect* participle active. Thus:

Having heard this, he suddenly returned to the camp. Hoc audito, ad castra subito rediit (abl. abs. used for perf. part. act. of audio).

Taking the citadel, Caesar entered the city. Caesar, arce capta, urbem intravit (abl. abs. for the English present part. act. used as a perf. part. act.).

2. The ablative absolute is also constantly used to express an English main clause or a clause (or phrase) of *time, cause, condition, concession, or attendant circumstance*: as,

They charged and defeated them. Impetu facto, eos vicērunt (abl. abs. for main clause).

Caesar, when he had learned this, returned to the senate-house. Caesar, hoc cognito, ad curiam rediit (time).

Though everything is lost, courage remains. Perdītis omnibus rebus, virtus manet (concession).

As the general had been killed, they fled. Imperatore interfecto, diffugerunt (cause).

Note.—The ablative absolute is always placed at or near the beginning of the sentence. It should not include more than a noun and participle, or a noun, participle and object : as, *Me haec verba dicente, ablit.* *As (while) I was saying these words, he went away.*

3. The ablative absolute must introduce a new subject. Thus :

The enemy, as they were retreating, laid waste the land. Hostes, se recipientes, agros vastabant (not hostibus se recipientibus).

Manlius, having killed a Gaul, spoiled him. Manlius Gallum caesum spoliavit (not caeso Gallo, eum spoliavit).

The abl. abs. would here be wrong because the nouns (hostes and Gallum), which would naturally be in the abl. abs., are required in the sentence, one in the nom. and the other in the acc.

4. As the verb sum has no present participle, a noun in the ablative absolute is often joined predicatively to an adjective or another noun : as,

Vivis fratribus. *In his brothers' life-time* (i.e., *his brothers being alive*).

Salvis legibus. *Without violation of the laws* (i.e., *the laws safe*).

Te duce. *Under your command* (you being leader).

Te invito. *Against your will* (you being unwilling).

Re infecta. *Without success* (the thing being undone).

Duce non exspectato. *Without waiting for a guide.*

5. The following uses of the ablative absolute should be noticed :

Bruto consule. *In the consulship of Brutus.*

Suadente Gaio. *By the advice of Gaius.*

Adiuvantibus Gallis. *With the assistance of the Gauls.*

Te non adiuvante. *Without your assistance.*

Caesare necato. *After the killing of Caesar.*

Te repugnante. *In spite of your opposition.*

6. It will be seen, then, that the Latin ablative absolute represents in English (a) a principal verb, (b) a perfect participle active,

(c) a present participle active when used for the perfect participle active, (d) a clause beginning with *when, while, though, if, etc.*, (e) adverbial phrases of manner or attendant circumstance.

Care should be taken in translating Latin, to turn the ablative absolute idiomatically (i.e., *into the proper English equivalent*); this will soon make the student familiar with its main uses.

EXERCISE XXIV.

*The asterisk * shows where the ablative absolute should be used.*

1. After * wasting the land, they returned. 2. On * the receipt of the letter, he left the city. 3. The money was paid in * my presence. 4. They came to Italy, I believe, during * the reign of Romulus. 5. Will he go away without * consulting any one? 6. The enemy were * disturbed by our arrival and we immediately attacked the camp. 7. On * the defeat of their army, the city surrendered. 8. When * he had spoken thus, the ambassadors withdrew. 9. He promised not to fight against * my will. 10. When * the war is ended, we shall restore our prisoners. 11. He was unwilling, in the absence of * the first legion, to join battle. 12. This victory he gained with * very few wounded. 13. He called * his friends together and killed himself. 14. A gate * was opened and they sallied forth. 15. He called the merchants together and consulted them. 16. They set out when * the winter was not yet ended. 17. On * the approach of summer they begin to sail the sea. 18. He ought to have told us when he would return. 19. I should have restored you the money. 20. I am afraid that many have been persuaded.

§ 25. PARTICIPLE—(Continued).

Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

1. The *future participle active* is used to express *futurity or intention*: as,

Plura locuturos dimisit. *When they were about to say more, he dismissed them.*

Venio agros visurus *I come to see the fields.*

2. From the fut. part. act. and the verb *sum*, is formed a whole conjugation called the **active periphrastic conjugation**. Thus :

Amaturus sum. I am about to love (or I intend to love).

Amaturus eram (ful). I was about to love (or I intended to love).

And so on.

Note.—This conjugation—as has been seen—supplies the place of the future subjunctive active, which is wanting : as, *Rogo quid facturus sis. I ask what you will do.* (Primary sequence).

Rogavi quid facturus esses. I asked what you would do. (Secondary sequence ; § 11, 2).

EXERCISE XXV.

1. They will tell you when they intend to come. 2. They asked him why he was going to betray the country. 3. He said that it was easy to do. 4. Ask them what they are going to do about it. 5. I intended to ask him what kind of people they were. 6. I doubted whether he would ever drink it. 7. Shall we ask them what o'clock it is? 8. He said he would come with me to find the rest. 9. Do not forget why you have come here. 10. He used to say that the ox had been given us for the sake of ploughing the fields. 11. I believe that they took the city and set it on fire (use *part.*). 12. Shall we ask him whether he is ready or not? 13. He used to say that judges should favor nobody. 14. When you have done your work (*abl. abs.*), you must help me. 15. Do not forget that I warned you not to come. 16. He said that, in his judgment, it was not suitable weather for sailing. 17. The river was so deep that no one could cross. 18. To my question whether his father had returned, he answered No. 19. You should have delayed there so long against the will of your father. 20. After the capture of the city, he put all the magistrates to the sword.

§ 26. THE INFINITIVE.

1. The infinitive is properly a neuter noun and is often therefore used as the subject or object of a verb : as,

Humanum est errare. *To err is human.*

Multis displicet totum hoc philosophari. *All this philosophising displeases many.*

Meum est parere. *It is mine to obey.*

Invidere morbum appellat. *He calls envying a disease.*

2. The subject of the infinitive, if indefinite, is omitted : as,

Incolumem redire licet. *One may return unhurt.*

3. Many verbs take an infinitive after them to complete their meaning : as,

Vincere scis; victoriā ūti nescis. *You know how to win a victory; you do not know how to use one.*

Such verbs are called **modal verbs**. For a list of modal verbs, see p. 18, 3.

4. In the historians, the present (or, rather, imperfect) infinitive is often used instead of the imperfect indicative, *especially when a series of actions is described*; as,

Omnes clamare. *All kept crying out.*

Caesar quotidie eos frumentum flagitare. *Caesar kept importuning them daily for corn.*

Pars cedere, alii insequi; neque signa neque ordines observare; nihil consilio agi; fors omnia regere. *Some retired, others advanced; they observed neither standards nor ranks; nothing was done of design; chance guided everything.*

This is called the *historic infinitive*.

5. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative : as,

Te hoc facere mirum est. *That you should do this, is strange.*

Note — But the subject of an infinitive depending on *dicor* (*I am said*), *videor* (*I seem*), and the like (see p. 38, 1), is in the nominative : as, **Homērus dicitur caecus fuisse.** *It is said that Homer was blind.*

6. After verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, the *accusative with infinitive* is used, as explained in § 2.

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

The tense of the infinitive after verbs of *saying* and *thinking* must be carefully noticed. Thus :

The *pres. inf.* represents the *pres. ind.* of direct narration (p. 4, note 3).

The *fut. inf.* represents the *fut. ind.*

The *perf. inf.* represents both the *imperf. ind.*, the *perf.* (both present and indefinite ; § 11, 1), and the *pluperfect*. Thus :

He says that they	{	are afraid. used to sleep every day. will die. have arrived. arrived yesterday. had fled before he came.
-------------------	---	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Dicit eos	{	timere (for <i>timent</i> : actual words used). quotidie dormiisse (for <i>dormiebant</i>). morituros esse (or <i>fōre</i>) (for <i>morientur</i> , <i>they will die</i>). advenisse (for <i>advenērunt</i> , <i>they have come</i>). heri advenisse (for <i>heri advenerunt</i> , <i>they came yesterday</i>). fugisse priusquam venerit (for <i>fugerant</i> , <i>they had fled</i>).
-----------	---	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

7. The tense of the infinitive after a verb of *saying* or *thinking* in the *past tense*, causes more difficulty (see § 3); but the rule is the same as the above :

The tense of the infinitive is *present*, *past*, or *future*, according as the tense used in the actual words is *present*, *past*, or *future*. Thus :

He said that snow was white. Dixit nivem esse albam (actual words : *nix alba est*.)

He said that he was a young man once. Dixit se olim adolescentem fuisse (actual words : *olim adolescens eram*, *I was a young man once*).

He said that they would not forgive. Dixit eos non ignoturos
(actual words : non ignoscent, they will not forgive.)

They said that he bequeathed the kingdom to his son. Dixērunt
eum filio regnum légavisse (actual words : filio regnum legavit.)

He knew that the city had been fortified. Scivit urbem munitam
esse (actual words : urbs munita est, the city has been fortified.)

He said that they had fled before the Romans arrived. Dixit eos
fugisse priusquam Romani advenissent (actual words : fugerant
priusquam Romani advenerunt, they had fled before the Romans
arrived.)

8. An infinitive to correspond to the *future-perfect active* is
formed from *futurum esse* (or *fōre*) and *ut* with the perfect sub-
junctive : as,

Dicit fore ut ceciderit. He says that he shall have fallen (actual
word : *cecidero*).

Dixit fore ut cecidisset. He said that he should have fallen
(§ 11, 2.)

9. An infinitive corresponding to the *pluperfect indicative pas-*
sive is formed from the perfect participle passive and *fuisse* : as,
He says that the city had been attacked before the king arrived. Dicit
urbem oppugnatam fuisse priusquam rex advenerit (actual words :
urbs oppugnata erat, the city had been attacked).

10. An infinitive corresponding to the *future-perfect of de-*
ponent or passive verbs is formed from the perfect participle and
fore : as,

He said that the war would soon be finished. Dixit debellatum
mox fore (actual words : *debellatum mox erit, the war will*
soon be finished.)

11. When a verb has no supine, *fōre* (or *futurum esse*) *ut* with
the subjunctive is used as the infinitive for the future, active or
passive (see p. 36, 9) : as,

I hope that it will happen to us. Spero fore ut contingat id nobis.

I hoped that it would happen to us. Speravi fore ut contingeret
id nobis.

He says that this will be demanded. Dicit fore ut hoc poscatur.

He said that that would be demanded. Dixit fore ut illud posceretur.

12. *Memini*, *I remember*, is used with the present infinitive (and not the perfect) of a past event within the knowledge of the person referred to: as,

Memini te hoc dicere. I remember that you said this (direct: dicebas).

Meministi Tiberim corporibus compleri. You remember that Tiber was filled with bodies.

13. For verbs followed by an infinitive in English and an *ut*-clause in Latin, see § 9.

14. For the *infinitive of purpose*, see p. 43, 9, note.

15. The accusative with infinitive is used to express indignation or surprise. It is called the *infinitive of exclamation*. The interrogative *-ne* is frequently added to the first word, as if the sentence were interrogative in form: as,

Mene abis, nullo salutato. To think that I should have gone away, without saying farewell to anyone!

Note.—The accusative alone is often used in the same way. It is called the *accusative of exclamation*: as, *Me miserum. Wretch that I am! O contumeliosum honorem. What an insulting honor!*

EXERCISE XXVI.

1. He believes that the city will have been captured. 2. He said that in this way I would have gained the crown. 3. To think that I should have been so unlucky! 4. He determined to compel us to fight. 5. He used to say that it was base to deceive. 6. He thought that it was sweet to die for one's country. 7. When he had encouraged the soldiers (p. 47, 3), he ordered them to advance. 8. To live honorably is to live happily. 9. Ought I not to send a messenger to warn the consul? 10. To think that I should be here and you in Italy! 11. I was not so foolish as to tell him everything (p. 14, 4). 12. I believe that he will gladly learn it. 13. I remember hearing that he died in his own house. 14. I hoped that he would recover (*convalesco*). 15. He used to say that it was

better to give than to receive. 16. It is said that he was the wisest of all who lived at that time. 17. He had long been anxious to know the truth. 18. I should like to know your reason for doing this. 19. He asked me to get the field ploughed (p. 46, 6). 20. He thought (that) the city had been taken before that time.

Note.—*That*, after an English verb of *saying* or *thinking*, is sometimes omitted.

§ 27. THE GENITIVE.

1. One noun in the genitive is added to another to express possession or cause: as,

Romanorum naves. *The ships of the Romans.*

Iniuriæ Gallorum. *The wrongs done by the Gauls.*

Note 1.—This genitive usually stands before the noun it governs and, if there is an adjective with the noun, the genitive stands between the two, in order to give compactness to the phrase: as, *Pulchra regis filia.* *The beautiful daughter of the king.*

Note 2.—The genitive of possession may often be used for an English adjective: as, *Corpōris robur,* *bodily strength*; *regis exercitus,* *the royal army.*

Note 3.—In phrases like *ad Vestæ* (*to the temple of Vesta*); *ad Apollinis* (*to the temple of Apollo*), the possessive genitive is used with the governing noun *templum* or *aedem* understood.

2. The possessive genitive is used with *sum*, *I am*, in the sense of *to belong to*: as,

Hic versus Plauti non est. *This verse is not Plautus's.*

Summæ est dementiae. *It is the height of madness.*

This genitive may often be translated by a noun like *part*, *mark*, *characteristic*, *duty*, etc.: as,

Stulti est in errore perseverare. *It is the mark of a fool to persist in error.*

Imperare Caesaris est. *It is Caesar's business to command.*

Note.—The possessive pronoun is used, however, instead of the genitive of the personal : as, *Tuum est parère. It is your business to obey (not tui est).*

PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

3. The genitive, as in English, denotes the *whole* of which a part is taken : as,

Magna exercitūs pars. A great part of the army.

Gallorum fortissimi sunt Belgae. The Belgae are the bravest of the Gauls.

This is called the **partitive genitive**.

The governing word usually expresses *number* or *amount* : as,

Multi vestrum. Many of you. Quid nōvi? What news? (lit., what of new?)

This genitive is common after *satis* (*enough*), *nīmis* (*too much*), *pārum* (*too little*), *nīhil* (*none*), *aliquid* (*some*), *tantum* (*so much*), *quantum* (*how much*) : as,

Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum. Enough eloquence, too little wisdom.

It is also found after adverbs of place : as,

Ubi gentium? Where in the world?

Eo stultitiae vēnit. He has reached such a pitch of folly (lit., come thither of folly).

Note.—*Nostrum* and *vestrum* (not *nostri* and *vestri*) are used with partitives for *of us* and *of you* : as, *Uterque nostrum. Each of us two. But Memor nostri fuit, he was mindful of us.*

4. The partitive genitive must not be used in the following cases :

(a) To express the English *of*, where there is no partition implied : as, *Nos omnes, all of us ; tota Asia, the whole of Asia ; nos trecenti vēnimus, three hundred of us have come.*

(b) With an adjective of the 3rd decl. : as, *Nihil turpe, nothing base (not turpis).*

(c) After a preposition: as, *Ad multam noctem, to a late hour of the night* (not *ad multum*).

(d) If the governing word is in any case but the nominative or accusative: as, *Tantā pecuniā, at so much money* (not *tanto pecuniae*.)

(e) After words like *top, bottom, middle*, etc., which are expressed by adjectives in agreement: as, *E summo monte, from the top of the hill*; *medio in foro, in the middle of the forum*: *ad imam quercum, to the foot of the oak*; *reliquae copiae, the rest of the forces*; *primum ver, the beginning of spring*; *in extremo libro, at the end of the book*.

EXERCISE XXVII.

1. He was the only one who escaped of all the Greeks. 2. They said that you could see stars from the bottom of a well. 3. Let us ask him whether he got this much (*tantum*) profit out of it. 4. I know which of you two is favored. 5. Don't you see how much glory you have lost? 6. He used to say that no one ever thought that he had too much money. 7. He used to say that everybody thought he had wisdom enough. 8. Don't you think that it is the part of a judge to obey the laws? 9. Ask him if this house belonged to his excellent father. 10. They said that all of the cities belonged to their empire. 11. Is it not the duty of children to obey their parents? 12. To love riches is the mark of a small mind. 13. They have gone away to receive the beautiful gifts of the queen. 14. I believe that there is much good and nothing mean in the man. 15. You do not know how much pleasure you will receive. 16. I believe that his friends—of whom he has very many—saved him. 17. They were so grateful that they built an altar in the middle of the city. 18. Let us come to the living, two of whom are left. 19. Tell me which of you two came first. 20. May we never reach such a pitch of misery!

§ 28. GENITIVE OF QUALITY.

1. A noun in the genitive is added to another to express a quality: as, *Vir summi ingenti*, a man of the highest ability.

The ablative is used to express a quality in much the same way, except perhaps that the genitive denotes rather *permanent* qualities, the ablative *external* and *accidental* ones: as, *Vir longie cruribus*, a man with long legs (or a long-legged man).

Note.—*Quantity* and *amount* are expressed by this genitive: as, *Agger viginti pedum*, a mound of twenty feet high; *puer decem annorum*, a boy of ten years.

2. Neither the genitive nor the ablative of quality can be used without an adjective. Thus: *A man of courage*, *vir fortis* (or *vir summae fortitudinis*; not *vir fortitudinis*.)

Note.—When the corresponding adjective is wanting, *praeditus* (*endowed with*) is used with the simple ablative: as, *Vir virtute praeditus*. *A man of valor*.

SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

3. A genitive is used, with nouns derived from verbs, to denote the *subject* of the verb implied in the governing noun: as

Morsus canis. *The bite of a dog*. Here *canis* represents the subject of the verb *mordeo* (*bite*) implied in *morsus*. (See p. 59, 1).

A genitive is also used, with nouns derived from verbs, to denote the *object* of a verb implied in a governing noun: as,

Timor mortis. *The fear of death*.

Here *mortis* represents the object of *timeo* (*I fear*), implied in *timor*. Thus, *propter mortis timorem*=*quod timeo mortem* (*because I fear death*).

This is called the **objective genitive**.

The objective genitive may represent even a dative case or the object of a preposition: as,

Literarum studium. Zeal for literature—(where the gen. represents the object of *studeo, am zealous for*).

Aditus laudis, an avenue to honor (from *adire ad laudem*).

So too : *Fiducia virium, confidence in strength. Consensio omnium rerum, agreement in everything. Dissensio reipublicae, disagreement on politics. Contentio honorum, a struggle for office.*

GENITIVE OF PRICE.

4. The price at which a thing is bought or sold is expressed by the genitive, when the price is stated indefinitely : as

Magni, at a great price.

Parvi, at a small price.

Tanti, at so great a price.

Quantum, at how great a price.

Pluris, at a greater price.

Minoris, at a less price.

Maximi or plurimi, at the greatest price.

Minimi, at the least price.

Quantum id vendit? At what price does he sell it?

Minoris decumae venierunt. The tithes sold at a lower figure [*vēneo, to be sold, from venum, to sale (adverbial acc.) + eo, to go*].

Note.—When the price is definitely stated, it is expressed by the ablative : as, *Emit domum duobus talentis et pluris, he bought a house at two talents and more.*

GENITIVE OF DEFINITION.

5. A genitive is often added to a noun, to limit or define it : as,

Virtus iustitiae. The virtue of justice.

Haec vox voluptatis. This word "pleasure."

Nomen insaniae. The word "madness."

This is called the **genitive of definition**.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

6. Adjectives are followed by a genitive when they express *plenty* and *want* or contain a *verbal notion* : as,

Plenus avium. *Full of birds.*
Rationis expers. *Destitute of reason.*
Patiens laboris. *Capable of (enduring) labor.*
Conscius recti. *Conscious of rectitude.*
Impotens sui. *Powerless over one's self.*
Tenax propositi. *Tenacious of purpose.*
Cupidus contentionis. *Longing for contention.*
Iuris peritus. *Skilled in law.*
Spei egēnus. *Destitute of hope.*
Imperii capax. *Capable of command.*

Note 1.—A present participle, when it loses all idea of time and simply expresses a fixed quality, governs the genitive : as, **Amans patriæ**, *devoted to his country*; **appetens gloriæ**, *desirous of glory*; **patiens laboris**, *capable of enduring labor* (as opposed to **patiens laborem**, *while enduring labor*). It is, in that case, compared like an ordinary adjective.

Note 2.—**Similis** (*like*), **dissimilis** (*unlike*), and **proprius** (*peculiar to*), are followed by the genitive and (more rarely) the dative : as, **Similis sui**, *like one's self*; **virorum proprium**, *peculiar to men*.

Similis and **dissimilis** seem to be used with the genitive of internal likeness (character etc.); with the dative, of external likeness (form etc.)

EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. I am afraid he thinks that life is full of care. 2. He used to say that this city was eager for revolution. 3. Tell me whether this fault is peculiar to old men. 4. Do you think that we shall have gained an escape from labor? 5. I believe that this hunger for gold has been the cause of many evils. 6. Do not ask them to sell at a lower price. 7. He should have had some gratitude for kindness. 8. I do not forget that he has the strongest love for his friends. 9. I was afraid that he valued the safety of the country less (say *at less*) than his own. 10. O ! that he had been more like you. 11. I have never known a man of such ability as he is. 12. Where shall we find a man of greater sense? 13. Nothing prevented him from becoming a leader of experience. 14. He used to say that men of authority were rare. 15. So great was the rejoicing that a

thanksgiving of fifteen days was decreed. 16. I believe that snakes of vast size are found in the island of Cyprus. 17. Cato used to say that a useless thing was dear at a penny. 18. Do not buy at so high a price a useless thing. 19. I forgot to say that he sold the house for five talents. 20. Tell us at how great a price this ship will be sold.

§ 29. THE GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

1. Verbs meaning to *accuse*, *condemn*, and *acquit*, take the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing : as,

Accūsāt me furti. He accuses me of theft.

Repetundarum damnatus est. He was condemned for extortion (lit., *things that should be recovered*; supply *rerum*).

Sacrilegii absoluta est. She was acquitted of sacrilege.

Note.—The *punishment*, after such verbs as the above, is expressed in the *genitive* or (more commonly) the *ablative*: as, *Morte damnatus est. He was condemned to death. Capitis* (or *capite*) *damnatus est. He was capitally condemned* (*caput*, a man's *political rights*.)

2. Verbs meaning to *remind*, *remember*, *forget*, or *pity*, take the genitive : as,

Me beneficii sui admonēbat. He reminded me of his kindness.

Note.—*Admoneo* may also take the acc. of a neuter pronoun : as, *Hoc nos admonet. He reminds us of this.*

Huius diēi semper meminero. I shall always remember this day. Officii ne obliviscaris. Do not forget your duty. Miserere nostri. Pity us.

Note 1.—Instead of *memini*, *I remember*, the phrase *Mihi in mentem vēnit* (*it comes into my mind*), may be used with the genitive : as, *Mihi in mentem vēnit eius diēi, I recollect that day.*

Note 2.—*Miser-eor, -ēri, -tus* (or *-itus*) *sum* is *I pity*; but *miseror, -ari, -atus sum*, *I deplore, bewail*: as, *Casum nostrum miseratur, he bewails our misfortune.*

3. The five following impersonal verbs, expressing emotions, take the accusative of the person feeling, and the genitive of the source of the emotion: *Miseret, piget, poenitet, pudet, taedet*: as,

Miseret me tui. I pity you (lit., *it fills me with pity for you*).

Me non solum poenitet stultitiae sed etiam pudet. I am not only sorry for my folly but even ashamed of it.

Notice the phrase *Non solum—sed etiam*, *not only—but also*.

Me fratris et piget et taedet. I am annoyed at and disgusted with my brother.

Credo eos huius belli poenitere. I believe that they are sorry for this war (lit., *that it repents them for*).

Note.—These five verbs respectively express to *fill* with *pity, annoyance, sorrow, shame, or disgust*. They are all transitive. Thus: *Eum facti nec poenitet nec pudet, he feels neither remorse nor shame for his act.*

INTEREST AND REFERT.

4. Interest and *refert*, *it is of importance* (or *consequence*) *to, it concerns*, take a peculiar construction. If the person *to whom* it is of importance is expressed by a noun, the *genitive* of the noun is used; if by a personal pronoun, the *ablative sing. feminine* of the corresponding possessive adjective: as,

Regis interest. It is of importance to the king. But

Meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā, interest. It concerns me, you (sing.), *him, us, you* (pl.) [*eius*=*him her*, not referring to the subject of a sentence; p. 7, 1].

The *degree* of importance is expressed by a neuter adjective, an adverb, or a genitive of price: as,

Multum (or *magni*) *eius interest. It is of great importance, it makes a great difference, to him.*

Nihil eorum interest. It is of no importance to them. Plus interest. It is of more importance.

5. Interest and *refert* may have as a subject an infinitive, an ut-clause, a pronoun, or an indirect question: as,

Omnium interest bene vivere. It is for the interest of all to live well.

Multum interest ut copiae nostrae convenient. It is of much importance that our forces should assemble.

Non possum dicere quantum intersit. I can not say how important it is.

Nihil interest quot sitis. It makes no difference how many you are.

EXERCISE XXIX.

1. Do not forget the poor. 2. Is it not the proof of a good man to remember the poor? 3. He was within a little of being condemned to exile. 4. Everybody accuses the general of rashness and is tired of this war. 5. It makes a great difference to us whether they are innocent or not. 6. O! that they had not accused him of impiety. 7. They are sorry for their fault. 8. Others feel neither shame nor sorrow for their folly. 9. He is said to have pitied his brother. 10. It is the mark of a mean mind to love wealth. 11. I am ashamed that you should say that it is not your part to obey. 12. It is of the utmost importance to a country that the men of the highest ability should take part in politics. 13. I forgot to say that they are sorry for their conduct. 14. Do not say that it makes no difference whether you learn or not. 15. I will ask him whether he thinks that it concerns our safety. 16. Is it a mark of folly to be sorry for one's sins? 17. Let us ask him when the captives will be pardoned. 18. It is for both your interest and mine that they should do this. 19. When the war was ended, all the soldiers were dismissed. 20. He said that it was of great importance not only to us but to you. 21. And so it happened that I was not present. 22. I remember allowing him to do it. 23. I am afraid this will remind them of death.

§ 30. THE DATIVE.

1. The dative is derived from *dare* (*give*), because it often follows verbs of *giving*: as,

Da mihi aliquid. *Give me something.* (*Me* here is for *to me*, and is called the indirect object).

So: *Suadere alicui*, *give advice to some one*, and *auxiliari alicui* *give aid to some one*.

2. The dative, as a rule, may be used for the English *to* or *for*: as,

Modum pone irae. *Set a limit to anger.*

Non mihi sed meis. *Not for myself but for my friends.*

3. The dative is used with *sum*, *I am*, in the sense of *to belong to*, *to have*: as,

Est tibi liber. *You have a book.*

Est tibi nomen Marcus. *Your name is Marcus.*

Note.—Instead of the nominative, in the last example, the dative (*Marco*) or the genitive (*Marci*) may be used.

4. The dative is used for the English *from*, after verbs meaning *to take away*: as,

Eam morti eripuit. *He snatched her from death.*

5. The dative of a personal pronoun is used idiomatically of a person remotely interested in a statement: as,

At tibi subito Racilius venit. *But, I tell you, suddenly came Racilius.*

An ille mihi liber, cui mulier imperat? *Shall I call him free whom a woman commands?* (lit., *to me, in my opinion*).

This is called the *ethic dative*.

6. The dative is also used idiomatically where we should expect and use a genitive: as,

Pompeio ad pedes se prolacere. *They threw themselves at Pompey's feet.*

7. Instead of the usual **a** (or **ab**) with the ablative, the dative is used of the *agent* after a passive verb, in the following cases :

(a) With the *gerundive* (p. 45, 3).

(b) With the *perfect participle passive* (p. 50, 12).

8. A dative is added to certain verbs (especially **sum**, **do**, **habeo**, **venio**, **mitto**) to express the *purpose* or design of the action of the verb : as,

Cui bono est? *To whom is it useful?* (lit., *for a good*).

Hoc mihi culpae dedit. *He set this down to me as a fault.*

Nobis auxilio venient. *They will come to our aid* (lit., *for an aid to us*).

This is called the *dative of purpose*.

9. Adjectives and adverbs expressing *usefulness*, *ease*, *nearness*, *likeness* or the opposite (usually followed by *to* or *for* in English), are usually followed by the dative in Latin : as,

Utile rei publicae. *Useful to the country.*

Tibi facilis, nobis difficilis. *Easy for you, difficult for us.*

Patri similis. *Like his father* (i.e., in appearance).

Note.—**Similis** takes the genitive when it expresses likeness of character (p. 64, note 2).

Locus urbi propinquus. *A place near the city.*

Convenienter naturae vivit. *He lives agreeably to nature.*

Note 1.—**Propior** (*nearer*), and **proximus** (*nearest*), often take the acc.; **prope**, **propius**, **proxime**, always: as, **Prope te sedet**, *he is sitting near you*.

Note 2.—Adjectives expressing *fitness* are followed by **ad** (with acc.) rather than by a dative: as, **Ad bellum gerendum aptus**, *fit for carrying on war*. So too, **natus** (*born*), **paratus** (*ready*) and **rudis** (*inexperienced*).

Note 3.—Many adjectives are followed by **in**, **erga**, or **adversus**, *towards*, *to*: as, **Acer in hostem**, **benignus erga amicos**, *fierce to the enemy, kind to friends*.

Correct usage in this, as in other respects, can only be learned from a study of the Latin writers.

EXERCISE XXX.

1. He shall pay me the penalty. 2. I will tell him that all should have done it. 3. I must make provision for the safety of the country. 4. I was afraid that they would become unfriendly to us. 5. Don't you think that he is unlike himself? 6. Ask him why he is so disagreeable to us. 7. I am ashamed that he is not better fitted for the work. 8. O! that they had a cottage near the sea. 9. Nothing can prevent him from being hostile to the multitude. 10. They were so savage (acer) at him that he dared not visit the city. 11. Let us ask him whether he will show us the way or not. 12. It is of the utmost importance to our safety that you should be friendly to the country. 13. He used to say that it was the lot of all to err (p. 59, 2). 14. Did they not think that he was a mean-minded man? (p. 62, 1). 15. O! that this had never occurred to his mind. 16. I believe that he used to be very kind to us. 17. He used to say that the sea was destruction (p. 69, 8) to sailors. 18. Ask them to stay in order to be a protection to the city. 19. He said that their ship was now a hindrance to them. 20. A man of honor will never be persuaded to betray the country.

§ 31. DATIVE WITH VERBS.

1. Sum, *I am*, and its compounds (except possum, *I am able*) are followed by the dative : as,

Est mihi liber. *I have a book.*

Amici non tibi desunt. *Friends are not lacking to you.*

Proelio interfuit. *He took part in the battle.*

2. Most *impersonal* verbs are followed by the dative : as,

Mihi licet et expedit. *It is allowed me and expedient for me.*

So too : libet (*it pleases*), accidit and contingit (*it happens*), liquet (*it is clear*), convēnit (*it is agreed upon*).

3. Verbs compounded with **bene**, **male**, **satis**, are followed by a dative : as,

Optimo viro maledixit. *He reviled a most excellent man.*

Mihi nunquam satisfecit. *He never satisfied me.*

4. Transitive verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad**, **ante**, **con** (for **cum**), **in**, **inter**, **ob** (*on, against*), **post**, **prae** (*before*), **sub** (*under*), or **sūper** (*above*), often govern an accusative of the direct and a dative of the indirect object : as,

Populus Romanus bellum Gallis intūlit. *The Roman people made war on the Gauls.*

Note.—In the passive the direct object of the active becomes the subject, while the indirect object is still retained : as, **Bellum Gallis a populo Romano illātum est.** *War was made on the Gauls by the Roman people.*

5. Intransitive verbs compounded with the above-mentioned prepositions, often govern the dative : as,

Caesar exercitui praefuit. *Caesar commanded the army.*

Consiliis consulis obstat. *He opposes the plans of the consul.*

6. The following is a useful list of verbs (other than those mentioned) that govern a dative :

crēdo, *believe.*

fido,
confido, } *trust (of a person).*

fāveo, *favor.*

pāreo, *obey.*

nubo, *wed (of a woman).*

stūdeo, *am zealous.*

vāco, *have leisure.*

obsto, *stand in the way.*

impero, *command.*

suadeo, *recommend.*

persuadeo, *persuade.*

irascor, *am angry.*

tempero, *set bounds to, refrain.*

subvenio, *aid.*

ignosco, *pardon.*

servio, *serve.*

invidéo, *envy.*

indulgeo, *indulge.*

plāceo, *please.*

displīceo, *displease.*

repugno, *oppose.*

minūneo, *threaten.*

occurro, *meet.*

resisto, *resist.*

nōceo, *hurt.*

medeor, *heal.*

7. The following verbs differ in meaning according as they govern the dative or accusative :

- Consulere aliquem. *Consult a person.*
 Consulere alicui. *Consult a person's interest.*
 Prospicere aliquid. *Foresee something.*
 Prospicere alicui. *Provide for some one.*
 Cāvère (aliquem). *Be on one's guard against.*
 Cāvère (alicui). *Consult interest of.*
 Moderari (aliquem). *Govern (some one).*
 Moderari (alicui rei). *Set limits to (some thing).*

8. The verbs *dono* (*give*) and *circumdo* (*surround*) have a double construction. Thus :

He surrounds the city with a wall. Urbem muro (abl.) circumdat, or Urbi murum circumdat.

They give him a crown. Eum coronā (abl.) donant, or Ei (dat.) coronam donant.

9. The following idiomatic uses of the dative with verbs should be noticed :

- Mortem alicui minari. *To threaten a person with death.*
 Pecuniam alicui imperare. *To demand money from a person.*
 Aliquid alicui probare. *Justify a thing to a person.*
 Aliquid alicui suppetitare. *To supply one with something.*
 Hunc tibi antepono. *I prefer this man to you.*
 Hunc tibi posthabeo. *I prefer you to this man (lit., I reckon this man after you).*

10. Verbs that govern a dative can not be used personally in the passive ; they are still joined with a dative, but must be used impersonally : as,

- Nemini a te invidetur. *No one is envied by you.*
 Dicit divitibus invideri. *He says that the rich are envied (lit., that it is envied to the rich.)*
 Ne illi quidem nocetur. *Not even he is injured.*

Note.—Observe the Latin for *not even* and that the emphatic word is placed between *ne* and *quidem*.

EXERCISE XXXI.

1. You do what pleases you. 2. It was agreed upon between (dat.) Balbus and me. 3. He said that what pleased me, pleased him. 4. He could not persuade me that he helped the poor. 5. Will they not set so excellent a general as this at the head of the army? (p. 3, 8). 6. Ask them how it happened that no one was spared. 7. It is not the part of a good man to consult his own interest. 8. Do not be angry with those you love. 9. It is not a mark of wisdom for a man to revile men (use inf.). 10. Are you advising him not to feel sorrow for his conduct? 11. Do you think he fears for the safety of the country? 12. I was afraid that the peace would satisfy no one. 13. It is of the utmost importance to all that the laws should be obeyed. 14. So just was he that he favored no one. 15. Have not the gods made provision for the life of man? 16. Will he prevent this city from being wrested from us? 17. He wishes to know how he can please everybody. 18. I believe that money has been demanded from almost all the states. 19. I should recommend him to get Caesar's approval for the act (use *probo*). 20. Let us advise him to provide for his own safety. 21. Does he prefer the country's safety to everything? 22. He used to say that everything threatened us with death. 23. He said that his consulship did not please Antonius. 24. The idle will one day repent of his idleness.

§ 32. THE ABLATIVE.

1. The ablative gets its name from *auferre* (*take away*), because it expresses *separation* or *motion from*: as,

Urbe excedes. *You will depart from the city.*

Fugit Corintho. *He fled from Corinth.*

2. The ablative without a preposition expresses motion from with names of towns and small islands and with *domus* and *rus*: as,

Rhodo, Romā profecti sunt. *They set out from Rhodes, from Rome.*

Domo, rure, exiit. *He departed from home, from the country.*

From, with the name of a country, is expressed by the prepositions *a* or *ab*, *e* or *ex*, or *de*, with the ablative: as,

Aut ex Asia aut ex Graecia vēnit. *He came either from Asia or from Greece.*

3. The ablative without a preposition is used with any noun for the English *from*, after the following verbs: *abstinēre* (*abstain from*), *abire* (*depart from, abdicate*), *desistere* (*desist from*), *cedere* (*retire from*), *pellere* (*drive from*), *liberare* or *solvere* (*free from*), *levare* (*lighten from*), *prohibere* (*keep away from*): as,

Bello abstinuit. *He abstained from war.*

Nos tecto prohibet. *He keeps us from the house.*

Oppugnatione desistunt. *They desist from the attack.*

Italiā cedit. *He retires from Italy.*

Civitatem dominatu liberavit. *He freed the country from despotism.*

4. The ablative is used, without a preposition, for the English *from* or *of*, after adjectives expressing *want*, *freedom from*, *sprung from*: as,

Liber (or vacuus) curā. *Free from care.*

Orbus parentibus. *Bereft of parents.*

Extorris regno. *Banished from the kingdom.*

Consulari familiā ortus. *Sprung from a consular family.*

CAUSE, MANNER, INSTRUMENT.

5. The ablative is used to express the *cause*, *manner*, or *instrument*: as,

Gaudio exsultat. *He leaps with joy.*

Deum purā mente veneramur. *We worship God with pure minds.*

Hastam manu tenet. *He holds the spear in his hand.*

Eum gladio interfecit. *He killed him with a sword.*

Note 1.—The agent after a passive verb, is usually expressed by *a* (or *ab*) with the ablative—*ab* before vowels and consonants, *a*

before consonants only : as, *Ab illis deserti sumus*, *we have been deserted by them* ; *a* (or *ab*) *Caesare interfectus*, *killed by Caesar*. A *secondary agent* (one through whose instrumentality a thing is done) is expressed by *per* (with acc.) : as, *Omnia haec per te facta sunt*. *All this was done through your instrumentality*.

Note 2.—Unless to express a mental state, the ablative of *cause* is not common ; cause is usually expressed by *ob* or *propter* (with acc.), *on account of* ; by *causā* or *gratiā* (with gen.), *for the sake of* ; and, of a negative cause, by *prae* (with abl.) : as, *Beatiores sunt propter illam scientiam*, *they are happier by reason of that knowledge* ; *hoc reipublicae causā facit*, *he does it for the public interest* ; *prae lacrimis loqui non potuit*, *he could not speak for tears*.

Note 3. The ablative of *manner* is not used unless there is an adjective with the noun ; in other cases the preposition *cum* (with abl.) is to be used : as, *Hoc summā diligentia feci*, *I did it with the greatest care*. But *hoc cum diligentia feci*, *I did it with care*.

In the following phrases of manner, *cum* may be omitted : *consilio* (*from design*), *casu* (*by chance*), *iure* (*rightly*), *iniuriā* (*wrongly*), *iussu* (*at the command of*), *iniussu* (*without the command of*).

6. *With*, when it means *in company with*, is *cum* : as,

Cum fratre vēni. *I came with my brother*.

So too : *Cum febri*, *with a fever* ; *cum telo*, *with a weapon*.

Note.—*Cum* when used with a personal or relative pronoun, is written after its case : *Pax vobiscum*, *peace be with you*. But *Quicum* is often written for *quocum*.

EXERCISE XXXII.

1. I have heard that he behaved with the greatest kindness. 2. He could not hear you by reason of the clamor. 3. Tell me why he was banished from Thebes. 4. O ! that he had set out from home immediately. 5. Though born of the noblest parents, he did

not abstain from crime. 6. Do not imagine that he will desist from his attempt. 7. He set out from Rome to free his friend from debt. 8. Freed from this fear, he will depart from Italy. 9. It makes no difference whether you perish by pestilence or the sword. 10. No one can doubt that he won the good-will of all by his character. 11. They will be sorry for this some day. 12. Are not the walls without defenders? 13. It is of importance to the country that commerce should be exempt from taxation. 14. The Latins obtained the citizenship by the Julian law. 15. Was he killed by his own soldiers? 16. I regret that he could depart from Athens with resignation. 17. I believe that they are disgusted with their fortune. 18. I will say, with your permission, that he acted with honesty. 19. He said that he always satisfied others, never himself. 20. You, whom I preferred to all others, have shown yourselves unworthy of confidence.

§33. ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON AND ABLATIVE OF DIFFERENCE.

1. The word *than* after a comparative is usually expressed by the conjunction *quam*: as,

Tu callidior es quam ego. You are more cunning than I.

Note.—The second member of the comparison is in the same case as the first, when each is joined with the same verb: as, *Nemini plura tribuit quam mihi, on none has he bestowed more than on me; malus est specie quam re, it is greater in appearance than in reality.* But when the first member of the comparison is in the acc., the second is also in the acc., whether the verb can be repeated with it or not: as, *Putat victoriam meliorem esse quam cladem, he thinks that victory is better than defeat (=quam clades sit).*

2. Instead of *quam* after a comparative, the ablative may be used when the first member of the comparison is in the nominative or accusative: as,

Ille patre mellor est. *He is better than his father.*

Putat Eurōpam minorem Asiā esse. *He thinks that Europe is less than Asia.*

Note.—The ablative *must* be used, in this construction, with a *relative*: as, Punicum bellum quo nullum maius gessere, *the Punic war, than which they did not wage any greater.*

3. Unless in short phrases (like those given in paragraph 5 below), an adverb in the comparative is usually followed by *quam*, and not by the ablative: as,

Nihil dulcius quam lusciniā cantat. *Nothing sings more sweetly than the nightingale.*

4. Plus and *amplius* (*more*) and minus (*less*), when joined with numerals, are indeclinable and do not affect the case of the word to which they are joined: as,

Plus quingenti capti sunt. *More than five hundred were taken.*

Minus septingentos occiderunt. *They killed less than seven hundred.*

Plus tertiā parte interfectā, se recēperunt. *More than a third part being slain, they retreated.*

Plus annum tecum vixit. *He lived with you more than a year.*

Here the case following the comparative is the same as if no comparison were instituted.

5. Comparatives are often joined with *spe*, *opinione*, *expectatione*, *iusto* or *aequo* (*right*), *solito* (*usual*): as,

Serius spe omnium. *Later than all hoped.*

Celerius opinione venit. *He came sooner than was expected.*

Plus aequo. *More than right.*

6. An ablative is added to comparatives and superlatives to define the degree of difference: as,

Multo me senior. *Much older than I (lit., by much).*

Paulo acrius. *A little more sharply.*

So too: paulo ante, *a little before*; paulo post, *a little later*.

Note.—The English *the . . . the* with two comparatives (Anglo Saxon instrumental case=*by that . . . by that*) is expressed by *quanto . . . tanto* (*by how much . . . by so much*) or *quo . . . eo* (*by what . . . by that*), with two comparatives: as, *Quo quis melior est, eo beatior, the better one is, the happier he is.*

7. To express phrases like *With more courage than success*, Latin uses two comparatives: as,

Bellum fortius quam felicius gerit. He carries on war with more courage than success.

Magis eloquens quam sapiens est. He has more eloquence than wisdom.

Note.—Plus and *amplius* express *amount*, are used with a verb, and correspond to the comparative of *much*; *magis* expresses *degree*, is used with an adjective or adverb, and corresponds to the comparative of *truly, highly*: as, *Hoc magis idoneum est quam illud, this is more suitable than that*; *illum plus amo quam te, I love him more than I do you.*

8. *Quam pro*, with a comparative, is used to express *disproportion*: as,

Proelium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium. A battle more severe than might have been expected from the number of combatants.

9. The Latin comparative has often the force of *too, rather*; the superlative, the force of *very*: as,

Liberius vivit. He lives too freely.

Maximas copias armat. He equips very large forces.

Note.—*Quam* is often added in this latter case to the superlative with or without *possum*, to express the highest possible degree: as, *Exercitum quam proxime hostem (possum) habeo, I have the army very near the enemy*; *quam maximam vastitatem efficit, he spreads the widest possible devastation.*

10. Phrases like *Too great for* may be expressed by the comparative and the ablative; phrases like *Too great to* by the comparative and *quam ut* with the subjunctive: as,

Ampliores humano genere honores consecutus est. He obtained honors too great for the human race.

Maiores fuit quam ut servus esset. He was too great to be a slave.

ABLATIVE OF RESPECT.

11. An ablative is used to express *that in respect to which* a statement is true of the subject : as,

Ennius arte rudis erat. In respect to art, Ennius was rude.

Non tu tota re sed temporibus errasti. You were not wrong with respect to the whole matter, but in the dates.

ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

12. The *price* at which a thing is bought or sold is, when stated definitely, expressed by the ablative : as,

Unam orationem viginti talentis vendidit. He sold one oration for twenty talents.

So too : Religionem pecuniā mutavit. He changed his religion for money.

For the genitive of price, see p. 63, 4.

13. For the *ablative absolute*, see p. 51, 1.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. He is more spirited than you. 2. That speech was fitter for a public meeting than for a court. 3. The more one has, the better. 4. He helped no one more than me. 5. He has a larger house than I (have). 6. They say that he has been long lame in one arm. 7. I believe that in appearance the city is free. 8. Don't you think that a shameful flight is worse than death? 9. Do you think that he is wiser than we? 10. Do not grieve more than is just. 11. He used to say that nothing was sweeter than the light of truth. 12. Is not necessity more powerful than art? 13. He is an old man in body; he will never be an old man in mind. 14. Do you think that life contains more joy (gen.) than sorrow. 15. I believe that he might have been much happier than he was. 16. Shall we sell our native land for gold? 17. That victory cost them much blood. 18. On what terms does he teach? At a very small

fee. 19. Shall we give him less than them? 20. Is he not more like you than me? 21. I am afraid that he has become very unlike himself. 22. I heard that our men, after attacking the place in vain, retreated to their ships. 23. It is so easy to do, that even I could have done it. 24. Advancing to the river as quickly as possible (*quam+superl.*), they attacked us there. 25. In the absence of the general, very many of the men deserted. 26. I believe that more than a thousand men fell. 27. He had more kindness than wisdom. 28. He spoke with more spirit than sense. 29. The enemy are so many that we do not dare to go forth from the camp. 30. Where are the friends I had in the consulship of Plancus? 31. Who can tell us at what price the slave was sold? 32. It is of great consequence to all that the house should be sold at the highest possible price (use *quam*). 33. I believe that they excel all other tribes in courage. 34. He was too good to be put to death. 35. The figure was too large to be human.

§ 34. ABLATIVE WITH VERBS AND ADJECTIVES.

1. The verbs *utor* (*use*), *fruor* (*enjoy*), *fungor* (*perform*), *potior* (*gain*), *vescor* (*feed on*), *dignor* (*deem worthy*), and their compounds, are followed by the ablative: as,

Fungar vice cotis. *I will perform the office of a whetstone.*

Viribus male utuntur. *They make a bad use of their strength.*

Note.—This ablative is really instrumental: thus *utor*=*I busy myself with*; *fruor*=*I enjoy myself with*, etc.

2. Verbs meaning *to fill with* (*compleo*) or *abound in* (*abundo* *affluo*), are followed by an ablative without a preposition: as,

Mundum hominibus complēvit. *He has filled the world with men.*

Affluit divitiis. *He abounds in wealth.*

3. Verbs meaning *to be without*, or *to need*, govern an ablative: as,

Sensu caret. He is devoid of feeling.

Pane eget. He is in need of bread.

Note.—Egeo and indigeo (*need*), govern also a genitive: as *Pecuniae indiget, he is in need of money.*

4. *Opus est* and *usus est* (*there is need*), take a dative of the person to whom and the ablative of the thing: as,

Quid tibi opus est verbis? What need have you of words?

So: *Opus est consulto, properato. There is need of deliberation, haste.*

Note.—*Opus* may, however, take the accusative of a neuter pronoun: as, *Quod non opus est, asse carum est, what you do not need, is dear at a penny.*

5. The following verbs are also followed by an ablative: *fido* and *confido* (*rely on*), of a thing, (see p. 71, 6); *glorior* (*boast of*), *doleo* (*feel grief at*), *gaudeo* (*delight in*): as,

Naturā loci confidit. He relies on the nature of the ground.

Casu meo dolent. They feel pain at my disaster.

Note 1.—These verbs may also take a neuter pronoun in the accusative: as, *Hoc gloriatur, he makes this boast; id doleo, I feel this pain* (see p. 38, 5).

Note 2.—*Fido* and *confido* take the dat. of the person, but the ablative of the thing: as, *non tibi sed exercitu meo confido, I do not trust in you but in my army.*

6. The ablative is used after the adjectives *dignus* (*worthy of*), *indignus* (*unworthy of*), *frētus* (*relying on*), *praeditus* (*endowed with*), *contentus* (*content with*) and *plēnus* (*full of*): as,

Poenā dignus. Worthy of punishment.

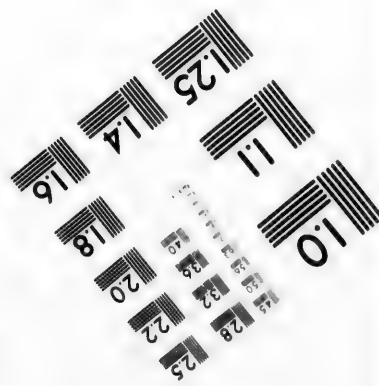
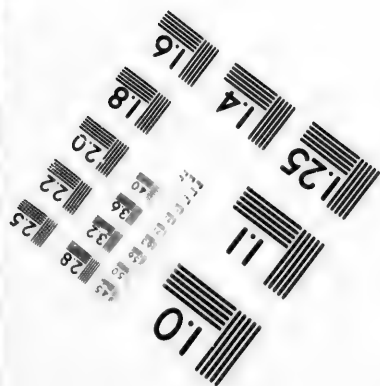
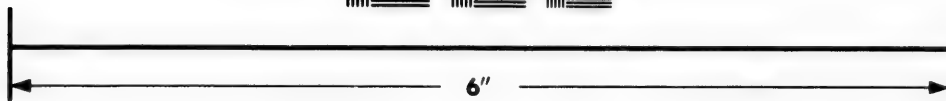
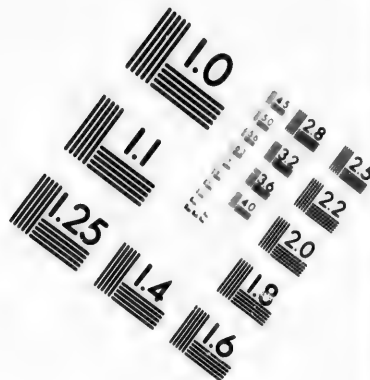
Fretus praesidio tuo. Relying on your protection.

Virtute praeditus. Endowed with courage.

Plenus irā (or irae). Full of anger (see p. 74, 4).

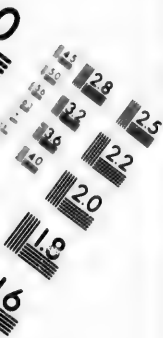
EXERCISE XXXIV.

1. Tell me why you performed this idle office. 2. Have you need of my protection? 3. I saw that the hill was destitute of men. 4.



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**



This does not need skill so much as labor. 5. Do not put too much reliance (use verb) in your general. 6. I believe that he performed the duties of his office with fidelity and courage. 7. What could have been more fortunate than this? 8. A man endowed with the highest ability, he was considered (*habeo*) unworthy by his countrymen of even the lowest office. 9. He used to boast that he had a mind that was without care. 10. Departing from Rome, he enjoyed his good fortune as a private person in Africa. 11. He made a good use of victory, a very difficult thing to do. 12. He wished to know on what herbs they fed. 13. He said that he would be content with the smaller part. 14. I was considered more like him than you are. 15. Tell me at what price he bought the horse. 16. He said that you could not procure (*paro*) friends with gold. 17. I believe that we shall get possession of the town. 18. We must ask them to come and help us (p. 69, 8). 19. In their father's life-time they abounded in gold; now they are in need of bread. 20. I begged them to show themselves worthy of the liberty they enjoyed (use *have*). 21. We must order the rest of the forces to start before the beginning of spring. 22. I have heard that they fortified a camp on the top of the hill with the utmost speed (use *quam + superl.*). 23. Nothing is more uncertain than life. 24. He was so in need of money that he sold a house for two talents. 25. These facts he ascertained through the instrumentality of scouts. 26. How vain the hope! 27. That done, I had no fear that the city would be taken. 28. What is more excellent than virtue? 29. Do not tell me that a merchant will sell for less than he buys at. 30. I believe that they buy at the lowest price and sell at the highest. 31. I prefer writing to speaking.

§ 35. RELATION OF PLACE. LOCATIVE.

1. *At a place* (place where) was originally expressed by a separate case in -i (pl., -is). This case is called the *locative*; it is seen in *domi* (*at home*), *ruri* (*in the country*), *humī* (*on the ground*).

2. To express *at* or *in a place*, when the noun is the *name of a town or small island*, the locative takes the following forms: If the

noun is of the 1st or 2nd decl. sing., the genitive is used ; if not, the ablative : as,

Romæ (*at Rome*), **Rhōdi** (*at Rhodes*), **Tibūre** (*at Tibur*), **Athēnis** (*at Athens*).

3. To express *at* or *in a place*, when the noun is not the name of a town or small island, *in* with the ablative is used : as,

In urbe. *In the city.* **In Italia.** *In Italy.*

But if there is an adjective with the noun, the preposition may be omitted : as,

Mediā urbe. *In the middle of the city.*

Totā Italiā. *In the whole of Italy.*

4. *Motion to a place*, when the noun is the name of a town or small island, is expressed by the *accusative* without a preposition ; *motion from a place*, by the *ablative* without a preposition : as,

Romam rediit. *He returned to Rome.* **Corintho fugit.** *He fled from Corinth.*

Note.—**Ad Romam** would mean *in the neighborhood*, or *in the direction*, of Rome.

With other nouns a preposition is required : as, **Abiit ad forum.** *He went off to the forum.* **In Africam vēnit.** *He came to Africa.* **Ex Asia decēdens.** *While departing from Asia.*

5. In expressing the relation of place, **rus** (*country*) and **dōmus** (*home*) take the same construction as the names of towns and small islands : as, **ruri**, *in the country* ; **domi**, *at home* ; **rus**, *to the country* ; **domum**, *home* ; **domo**, *from home*.

6. For phrases like *To his father at Rhodes*, Latin says *To his father to Rhodes* : as,

Rhodum ad patrem vēnit. *He came to his father at Rhodes.*

So too : **Ab Italia domo iit.** *He came from his home in Italy.*

For phrases like *In the city of Rome*, *to the city of Rome* (p. 3, 7), the preposition is required : as,

Ad urbem Romam legati missi sunt. *Ambassadors were sent to the city of Rome.*

In urbe Athenis diu **domicilium habēbat**. *He lived long in the city of Athens.*

Note.—The preposition is retained here even if an adjective is added; but the proper noun is then placed first in the case required by paragraph 2 or 4 above: as, **Antiochiæ, in urbe opulentissimā, moratus est**, *he delayed in the wealthy city of Antioch.*

7. An adjective can not be joined to a noun in the locative case. Thus:

In the whole of Corinth is **totā Corintho**, not **totius Corinthi**.

The possessive adjective may however be added to **domi**: as,

Domi meae. *In my house.* But, **Vetēri domo**, *in the old house.*

So too: **Domum meam vēnit**. *He came to my home.* But, **Ad veterem domum**, *to the old home.*

8. *Motion along* is expressed by the ablative: as,

Ibam forte Viā Sacrā. *I chanced to be going along the Via Sacra.*

9. *Extent of space* is expressed by the accusative: as,

Aggerem, pedes trecentos latum, exstruxērunt. *They built a mound three hundred feet broad*

Note.—*Distance* is sometimes expressed by the ablative: as, **Duobus millibus passuum aberat**. *He was two miles off.*

EXERCISE XXXV.

1. Do you know when they will bring the corn from Rhodes to Karthage? 2. I believe that their camp was pitched in a suitable place. 3. He was considered the most eloquent speaker in the whole of Greece. 4. Nothing prevented him from sailing from Corinth to Athens. 5. What place in the whole sea was safe? 6. It was said that he came to Italy in the reign of Tarquinius. 7. He says that he has studied in the learned city of Athens. 8. Ask him how long he stayed at Utica. 9. He said that he intended to cross to Brundisium in Italy. 10. They went to see the king at Capua. 11. Tell me when the army will set out for its winter quarters in Gaul. 12. Has he not come here from the camp at Aricia? 13. He must go to my house at Tibur. 14. I believe that they have come here

from a very populous (*celeber*) city. 15. He has collected a very large fleet from Tyre and Sidon to intercept their ships. 16. I had an interview at Baiæ with men fresh from Rome. 17. They were defeated by the Romans both by sea and land. 18. It was said that an ox had fallen from heaven. 19. They seldom come from the country into the city. 20. They escaped from the city by the Colline Gate. 21. He came, a little before, from Ephesus to Italy. 22. Their camp was about thirteen miles from the sea. 23. He was the only one who ever reached the top of the mountain. 24. Many men in ancient Rome did not know how to read. 25. They must send an army to Scipio in Spain. 26. Have you ever stayed in the populous city of London? 27. I believe that they enjoy their leisure better than we. 28. The beautiful city of Antioch was only a few miles from the sea. 29. I could not sell my house in Capua at the price I bought it at. 30. To our enquiry whether the Gauls had conquered, he answered Yes. 31. Do not forget that you are sprung from an honorable family.

§ 36. RELATION OF TIME. TIME WHEN. TIME HOW LONG.

1. *Time at which* (time when), and *time within which*, are expressed by the ablative without a preposition: as,

Horâ sextâ. At the sixth hour.

Vere et aestate. In spring and summer.

Paucis diebus. Within a few days (*inter* or *intra paucos dies*, is also used).

Note 1.—The preposition *in* (with the abl.) is used of time to express emphasis: as, *In tempore, at the right moment*; *in aetate provecta, in spite of advanced age*.

Note 2.—Words that do not strictly denote time, when used to mark a period of time, require a preposition: as, *In bello, in the war*. But when an adjective is added, the preposition is omitted: as, *Bello Punico, in the Punic war*.

2. *Duration of time* (time how long) is expressed by the accusative without a preposition : as,

Ager multos annos quævit. *The field lay fallow many years.*

Note.—**Per** is used to express duration when greater precision is required.

3. *Ago* is **abhinc**, followed by the words expressing time, in the accusative or ablative : as,

Abhinc decem dies (or diebus) Romam profectus est. *He set out for Rome ten days ago.*

Note.—**Abhinc** precedes the expression of time.

4. The following phrases will be useful:

Decem annos post. *Ten years after* (**post** is an adverb).

Decem annos ante. *Ten years before.*

Nonaginta annos natus. *Ninety years old.*

Minor decem annos natus. *Less than ten years old.*

Maiores decem annos natus. *More than ten years old.*

Priore anno quam e vita excessit. *The year before he died.*

Pridie quam pervenit. *The day before he arrived.*

Postridie quam.... *The day after....*

In posterum diem. *For the following day.*

Solvat ad Kalendas. *He will pay by the first of the month.*

EXERCISE XXXVI.

1. I asked him why the nights were so long in winter. 2. Do not tell me that you knew this four years ago. 3. There is nothing to prevent him from doing it within three hours. 4. It is said that he died at Tarentum when scarcely thirty years of age. 5. It was to the interest of the country that he should be shut up in prison during (*per*) the rest of his life. 6. At dawn he will move his camp to the foot of the hill. 7. Six months ago, he might have acted otherwise. 8. He knew better than you that we could not cross a ditch twenty feet deep. 9. Are not the swallows absent in the winter months? 10. O ! that I had seen him the day before he

died. 11. Ask them to do it within the next ten days. 12. Tell me how many months you intend to be away. 13. I believe that they will stay in the beautiful city of London for a few years. 14. Will they remain in this city the whole summer? 15. On the fourth day they will sail to the island of Rhodes. 16. On the same day the Romans had a bridge built across the stream. 17. Tell me at what o'clock they intend to be here. 18. We should have sent them flowers in summer. 19. In three months these two legions will be sent into camp. 20. Are not our harbors closed all winter by ice? 21. I set out from home in the morning and returned home in the evening. 22. After delaying in Rhodes for three months, they were unwilling to return. 23. He ordered the fleet to follow within ten days. 24. I regret that I should have been deceived by this man for three whole months. 25. Wretch that I am! I promised to pay him to-morrow. 26. The same day I asked him how much the ship had cost. 27. They attacked the place with more daring than discretion. 28. Don't you think that he is more than thirty years of age? 29. I believe that in this battle more than five hundred men fell. 30. The art of writing was invented many years ago.

§ 37. PERSONAL AND DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The pronouns of the first and second persons are rarely expressed, except for emphasis or contrast : as,

Ego laudo sed tu vitupēras. *I praise, but you blame* (pronouns expressed because in antithesis, *i.e.*, opposed to each other).

Ego illud dicam. *For my part I will say this* (pronoun expressed because emphatic).

Note.—The genitives **nostrum** and **vestrum** are always used partitively : as, **Unus nostrum**, *one of us*. Otherwise **nostri** and **vestri** are used : as, **Mēmor nostri**, *mindful of us*.

2. The personal pronouns of the third person are wanting, but are supplied by the demonstratives **is**, **hic**, or **ille**, *this*, *that*.

The common words for *he, she, it*, when they are expressed in Latin, are *is, ea, id*. *Is* is used to refer to some person or thing already mentioned : as,

Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix : is coniurationem nobilitatis fecit. *Among the Helvetians, Orgetorix was by far the noblest and most wealthy ; he formed a conspiracy among the nobility.* (Here *is* refers to *Orgetorix*.)

Note. — *Is* expresses the article *a* or *the*, used emphatically before a relative : as, *Redde eum librum quem abstulisti, restore the book which you took away.*

3. *Hic, this*, is the demonstrative of the 1st person. It refers to the person or thing near me (the speaker) : as,

Hic liber, this book. So too : *Haec patria, this land of ours ; haec vita, this present life ; his sex diebus, within the last six days.*

4. *Iste, that of yours*, is the demonstrative of the 2nd person. It refers to the person addressed : as,

Iste liber, that book near you ; ista opinio, that opinion you hold ; iste amicus, that friend of yours. It often has the idea of contempt, and is therefore often found in the sense of an opponent in a lawsuit, just as *hic* means *my friend here, my client here* (i.e., the one near me).

5. *Ille, that yonder*, is the demonstrative of the 3rd person. It refers to a person or thing other than those present. It may express, therefore :—

(a) The remote in time, as opposed to the present (which is expressed by *hic*) : as, *Illa antiquitas, that far-off past ; illis diebus in those by-gone days.*

(b) *That well known, the celebrated* : as, *Illa Medæa, the far-famed Medæa ; ille Caesar, the renowned Caesar.*

6. *Hic* and *ille* are often contrasted. They are then used :—

(a) Of two persons already mentioned. In this case *hic* relates to the nearer, *the latter* ; *ille*, to the more remote, *the former* : as, *Romulum Numa excēpit ; hic pace, ille bello melior fuit.* *To Romulus Numa succeeded ; the latter excelled in peace, the former in war.*

(b) For *the one* and *the other*: as, *Neque hoc neque illud, neither the one nor the other; et hic et ille, both the one and the other* (et...et=both...and).

(c) For *some* and *others*: as, *Hi pacem, illi bellum cupiunt, some wish peace, others war.*

7. *Ille* is joined to *quidem* (*indeed*), with a *concessive* force: as, *Non multum ille quidem nec saepe dicēbat, sed Latine loquendo culvis erat par. He did not speak much or often, but in speaking Latin he was equal to any one* (=although he did not...yet...).

Note 1.—The pronouns *tu* and *vos*, when used with *quidem*, have the same concessive force, but are of rare occurrence: as, *Oratorias exercitationes non tu quidem reliquisti sed certe philosophiam illis anteposulisti. Rhetorical exercises you have not indeed abandoned, but you have at all events preferred philosophy to them.*

Note 2.—*Certe, at all events; certo, for certain.*

8. *Ille* often begins a sentence to refer to a noun-clause coming after: as,

Illud vereor ne fames in urbe sit. This is what (the following is what) I am afraid of, that there will be famine in the city.

Scitum est illud Catōnis. The following saying of Cato is good.

9. In phrases like *My house and that of my friend*, Latin omits the demonstrative: as,

Domus mea et amici vēnilit. My house and that of my friend have been sold (p. 63, 4).

Oblivionis artem quam memoriae mālō. I prefer the art of forgetting to that of memory (*malo*, being compounded of *magis*, *more*, and *volo*, *I wish*, is naturally followed by *quam*).

Note.—If a change of case is required, the noun must be repeated: as, *Liberi nostri cariores sunt amicorum liberis, our children are dearer than those of our friends* (*liberis*, abl. after comparative; p. 76, 2).

10. In phrases like *This is life*, the demonstrative agrees in Latin with the predicate noun: as,

Haec est vita. *This is life.*

Ea dēum est vera felicitas. *This (and this only) is true happiness.*

11. And that too is et is (or isque): as

Eum cognovi optimis studiis deditum, idque a puero. *I have known him to be devoted to sound learning and that too from a boy.*

12. Idem, same, is often used to express our *also, at the same time, at once:* as,

Cicero orator erat idemque philosophus. *Cicero was an orator and, at the same time, a philosopher.*

13. Ipse, self, may be added for emphasis to a noun, a pronoun, or a numeral: as,

Caesar ipse imperavit. *Caesar himself commanded.*

Tu ipse hoc fecisti. *You yourself did this.*

Se ipsum interfecit. *He killed himself.*

Ipse navem aedificavit. *He built the ship by himself.*

Triginta ipsi dies. *Exactly thirty days.*

Adventu ipso hostes terruit. *By his mere (very) arrival, he frightened the enemy.*

Ipse hoc vidi. *I saw this with my own eyes.*

Ipse is also added in the genitive, singular or plural, to a possessive pronoun to express the English *own:* as,

Mea ipsius culpa. *My own fault.*

Sua ipsius domus. *His own house.*

Vestra ipsorum amicitia. *Your own friendship.*

This gen. is in apposition with the gen. implied in the possessive (*mea=mei, of me, gen. of ego*).

EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. He thought that the town would be stormed on the same night.
2. Tell me when that friend of yours intends to set out for Rhodes.
3. I believe that he sailed in seven days from Athens to Italy.
4. Ask him how long this legion will remain in camp. 5. You have

a small town, no doubt (p. 89, 7), but a very populous one. 6. He says that he belongs to a very large city and that too a famous one. 7. Restore us the freedom you have snatched away from us. 8. He complained that his own house had been burnt by the soldiers. 9. Of these two gods, the former was distinguished as a horseman, the latter as a boxer. 10. For my own part I do not know how it was done; ask him. 11. Do not inquire with regard to that matter of yours. 12. The following saying of the poet is well known, that Fortune aids the bold. 13. You must give back this money to-day. 14. Fool that I was! I preferred gold to honor. 15. What need have you of these ships? 16. Tell that friend of yours that I don't know what I ought to say. 17. You have had a bridge built, no doubt; but who will use it? 18. One ought not always to believe even the master himself. 19. Everyone says that those things should be left in camp. 20. He said that he had come to Karthage within the last few days. 21. He also begs us to wait for him in Corinth. 22. I saw him on the same day with my own eyes, leading an army across the river. 23. Ask him why he sent us the same things as before. 24. He says that on that very day he will be in Greece. 25. Was he not at the same time a great philosopher? 26. This only, he said, was true wisdom, to control one's self. 27. The top of the mountain was occupied by him at dawn. 28. He undertook the war in the end of winter and finished it in the middle of summer. 29. He said that we had always preferred our safety to that of the country. 30. Is it not your business to decide whether this concerns you or not?

§ 38. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

1. A reflexive pronoun is one that refers to the subject of a verb : as,

Tu te laudas. You praise yourself. Here *te* is a reflexive referring to the subject of *laudas*.

The first and second personal pronouns are used as reflexives of the first and second persons : as,

Ego me laudo. *I praise myself.*

Nos nos laudamus. *We praise ourselves.*

Tu te laudas. *You praise yourself.*

Vos vos laudatis. *You praise yourselves.*

Note.—The suffix *-met* is added to a reflexive for emphasis: as,
An temet contemnis? *Do you despise yourself?*

USE OF SE.

2. The forms *sui, sibi, se* (*himself, herself, itself, themselves, oneself*; or *him, her, etc.*), usually refer to the subject of the main verb: as,

Brutus se interfecit. *Brutus killed himself.*

Cicero effecerat ut Curius consilia Catilinae sibi prodēret.
Cicero had managed that Curius should betray Catiline's plans to him (Cicero).

3. When used as the subject of an infinitive, *se* refers to the subject of the verb on which the infinitive depends: as,

Scio eum dixisse se id fecisse. *I know he said that he had done it (Here se refers to eum).*

4. *Se* may refer to the object of a sentence, if it may do so without ambiguity: as,

Reliquos se convertēre cogit. *He compels the rest to turn.*

5. In certain phrases, *se* is used for *self*, without any reference to the subject of the sentence: as,

Haec per se expetenda sunt. *These things are to be sought in themselves (i.e., for their own sake).*

So too: *Sui compos, master of one's self; sui fiducia, self-confidence.*

6. When *him, her, etc.*, refer to the subject of a subordinate clause, *ipse* is generally used: as,

Rogavit ut eos dēderent qui ipsos prodidissent. *He asked them to surrender those who had betrayed them (se would refer to the subject of rogavit).*

7. The rules for the use of *suus* are the same as for the use of *se*. Thus :

(a) *Suus* usually refers to the subject of the main verb : as, *Eos gladio suo interfecit.* *He killed them with his sword.*

(b) *Suus* may be used of the object, if no ambiguity arises : as, *Iussit eos ad sua quemque signa redire.* *He ordered them to return each to his own standard.*

Note.—*Quisque*, *each*, is often joined in this way with *suus*.

(c) *Suus* is used in certain phrases without any reference to the subject : as, *Sui cives*, *one's own countrymen* ; *sua sponte*, *of one's own accord*.

(d) *His*, *her*, etc., referring to the subject of a subordinate clause, are expressed by the genitive of *ipse* : as, *Rogavit ne se cederent his qui inimici sui et ipsorum essent.* *He begged them not to give him up to those who were his enemies and theirs.*

8. In turning *He killed Caius with his own sword* (i.e., Caius's sword), it is better to make Caius the subject of a passive verb in order that *suus* may, as usual, refer to the subject : as,

Caius gladio suo ab eo interfectus est. *Caius was killed by him with his own sword.*

9. *Inter se* may be used to express the English reciprocal pronoun *one another* : as,

Furtim inter se aspiciēbant. *They looked furtively at one another.*

Inter se differunt. *They differ from one another.*

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. He said that he did not pity you, but himself. 2. Hannibal his own countrymen banished. 3. Don't you think that he said he could do it? 4. I believe that they were all killed with his sword. 5. He said there were many in the city who would never forgive him. 6. He should have known that they had destroyed his native city and their own allies. 7. After selling his house, did he not remain many years at Athens? 8. He begged them not to injure him.

and their own friends. 9. Have they not begged Caesar to help them? 10. It does not concern me whether he returned to his countrymen or not. 11. I hear that Caesar has been obeyed by all. 12. It is said that the city of Rome was founded by Romulus. 13. He asks whether he ought not to be believed. 14. You know how to praise yourselves. 15. He said that he would drive the enemy from our borders. 16. I believe that his father begged his son to come to him at once. 17. He took these precautions that the enemy might not surprise him. 18. The following was what I was afraid of, that they would be banished. 19. This he said was life, to have the greatest freedom and knowledge. 20. He thought that, without his aid, they would never cross the river. 21. I hear that you are ashamed of your conduct, and that he is not. 22. Don't you think that the man (*use is*) who is always praising you is not a true friend? 23. He says he will lead them back to camp at dawn. 24. Advise him to go into the city and look for his friend (*supine*). 25. To this (*huc*) was added (the fact) that he had killed himself (*use ut*). 26. He said that the birds returned in the spring. 27. I am afraid that riches are dearer to many than honor. 28. I am persuaded that you should take a walk every day. 29. Have they made a good use of this opportunity? 30. We ought to grieve, not only at our own troubles, but also at those of our friends.

§39. ON THE TRANSLATION OF "ANY." QUIS, QUISQUAM, AND QUIVIS.

1. The English *any* is translated by the indefinite pronoun *quis*, *quae* (or *qua*), *quid* (or *quod*), after *si* (*if*), *nisi* or *ni* (*unless*), *ne*, *num*, *quo* or *quanto* (p. 78, 6, note): as,

Si quis hoc dicit, errat. If anyone says this, he is wrong

Nisi quid vis, abibo. Unless you want anything, I will go away.

Ne quid nimis facias. Do not do anything to excess.

Num quis infantibus irascitur? Is anyone angry with children?

Quo quis callidior est, eo invidior. The more cunning anyone is, the more hated he is.

Note 1.—Instead of quis, quisquam may be used for an emphatic *any*: as, *Si quisquam sapiens erat, is erat. If anyone was wise, he was.*

Note 2.—Of the two neuter singular forms, *quid* is a pronoun, *quod*, an adjective: as, *Vereor ne quid subsit doli, I am afraid lest any guile may lurk beneath; num quod officium aliud maius est? Is any other duty greater?*

2. *Any*, in the sense of *any you please, every*, is *quivis* (from *quis, any*, and *vis, you wish*): as,

Non cuiusvis est adire Corinthum. It is not every one who can visit Corinth (p. 59, 2).

Instead of *quivis*, *quolibet* may be used: as,

Periculum quodlibet adire paratus. Ready to face any danger you please.

3. After a negative, *any* is *quisquam*, or—if used as an adjective—*ullus*: as,

Nec quisquam hoc dicet. Nor will anyone say this.

Negat quemquam id velle. He denies that anyone wishes this.

Nec ulla res unquam atrocior fuit. Nor was anything ever more atrocious.

In all these cases the pronoun, taken in conjunction with the negative, has the force of *none* or *no one*.

Note.—Instead of *And no one* at the head of a sentence, Latin prefers *Nor anyone*; *nec quisquam*, therefore, often begins a Latin sentence. So too, for *et nullus* use *nec ullus* (as above), and for *et nunquam*, *nec unquam*.

4. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are also to be used for *any* after what is called a *virtual negative*, i.e., a word or construction that implies a negative. Such words are *vix* (*scarcely*), *sine* (*without*), comparatives, and interrogatives that expect the answer *No*: as,

Vix quisquam reperiri potuit. Scarcely anyone could be found.

Hoc sine ullo auxilio feci. I have done this without any help.

Fortior fuit quam quisquam amicorum. He was braver than

any of his friends (a virtual negative, because virtually = *none of his friends was so brave*).

Num tu me existimas ab ullo malle meâ legi quam a te? *Do you think that I would prefer my works to be read by anyone rather than by you?*

5. Any, where it means *some* (i.e., *not none*) is *aliquis* or, rarely, *quispiam*: as

Si ad aliquam spem commōdi Fortuna nos reservavit, bene est. *If Fortune has reserved us for any hope of advantage, it is well.*

Nemo est sine aliqua virtute. *No one exists without some virtue.*

Note.—*Aliquis* has usually the force of *some one*: as, Vult aliquis vidēri, *he wishes to seem some one.*

6. Other compounds of the indefinite *quis* should be noticed. Thus:

(a) *Quidam*, *some one, a certain one, a*, is used of a person or thing known to the speaker but not fully described: as,

Tempore quodam quidam homo Aesōpo lapīdem impēgit. *Once upon a time a certain man threw a stone at Aesop.*

Note 1.—*Quidam* is frequently used to apologise for the use of a bold or figurative expression: as, In vigilia quadam mansi. *I kept (as it were) upon the watch.* In that case, in translating into English, *quidam* may usually be omitted.

Note 2.—*Quidem* (*indeed*), so commonly joined to pronouns, should be carefully distinguished from *quidam*. See p. 89, 7.

(b) *Nescio quis*, *some or other*, is used as a single word: as, Nescio quis prope me loquitur. *Somebody or other is speaking near me.*

Hoc nescio quo pacto contigit. *This, in some strange way, has happened* (p. 31, 4, note 2).

(c) *Quisque* is the English *each, every*; it never begins a sentence: as,

Quod cuique obtingit, id quisque teneat. *What falls to each, let each person keep* (notice the relative clause, as usual thrown forward).

Quisque is frequently joined to the reflexive suus, in which case it is written after, never before, suus : as,

Suae quemque fortunae maxime poenitet. *Every one is greatly dissatisfied with his own fortune.*

Quisque is frequently found with a superlative : as,

Ex philosophis optimus quisque confitetur multa se ignorare. *All the best of the philosophers admit that they are ignorant of many things.*

(d) Instead of num quis, ecquis is often used to express impatience : as,

Ecquis hoc ostium aperiet? *Will anyone open this door?*

(e) Quisnam, *who, pray*, is also frequently used for quis in questions, to express impatience : as,

Quidnam tibi negotii fuit in meis aedibus? *What business had you, pray, in my house? (p. 60, 3).*

EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. No one will attempt anything without assistance. 2. Scarcely anyone knew the magnitude of the disaster. 3. Do not be angry with anyone. 4. Such a thing may happen to anyone. 5. Nature can do anything, and indeed without any trouble. 6. When he hears anything of that kind, he always says that the story is invented. 7. Let each one keep his own. 8. Do you think that justice ever injured anyone? 9. He knew better than anyone that some of the soldiers had been killed. 10. If anyone will dare to defend him, he shall live. 11. What may happen to anyone, may happen to you. 12. Don't you think that the cleverer a person is, the more hated he is? 13. Once upon a time a certain man set out to find Atlantis. 14. Is it *my* fault, if some persons are afraid of me? 15. He thought that he was something in oratory (gerund of dico). 16. He begged that some part of his work might be reduced (minuo). 17. If anyone bore the hardships of life bravely, it was he. 18. I believe that he was more learned than any of us. 19. Was it of importance to anyone that this man should be spared? 20. I will hardly say this, that all good men are sorry for him. 21. It is clear to anyone that the farmer must plough his

fields in spring. 22. I believe that scarcely anyone intended to come to Rome that day. 23. I am afraid that some disaster is threatening. 24. Scarcely any letters can reach us. 25. Do not hesitate to say whether you need any help. 26. It seemed that all loyal men were estranged from us. 27. Does anyone know the purpose of his coming? (p. 32, 1). 28. It happened that I was in the city on that day. 29. It remains that I should show that everything has been made for the sake of man. 30. Will anyone believe that he is ashamed of his mistake? 31. Whom does this concern pray?

§ 40. CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

1. Sentences are either *simple*, *compound*, or *complex*. A *simple* sentence contains only a single statement: as,

Civitas pacem amat. The state loves peace.

A *compound* sentence contains two or more statements, usually connected by a conjunction or a relative: as,

Fratrem tuum vidi et eum (or quem) brevi consulem fore spero. I saw your brother and I hope that he will soon be consul.

Each *statement* in a compound sentence is called a *clause*, and the clauses are said to be *co-ordinate*, i.e., of equal grammatical value.

Note.—The relative is often used in Latin to connect co-ordinate clauses.

2. A *complex* sentence contains two or more clauses, one of which (the *main* clause) contains the principal assertion, while the others (the *subordinate* clauses) stand in a subordinate or dependent relation to it.

3. Dependent or subordinate clauses are called *noun-clauses*, *adjectival clauses*, or *adverbial clauses*, according as they perform the function of a noun, adjective, or adverb. Thus, in *I know who he is*, the clause *Who he is* is a noun-clause, object of *know*; in *I saw the man whom you seek*, the clause *Whom you seek* is an adjectival

clause, qualifying *man*; in *He came that he might see the town*, the clause *That he might see the town* is an adverbial clause of purpose, modifying *came*.

NOUN-CLAUSES.

4. As shown in § 9, a noun-clause introduced by *ut* follows verbs meaning to *ask*, *command*, or *advise*: as,

Peto ut aurum reddatur. *I ask that the gold be restored* (= the restoration of the gold).

5. As shown in § 16, a noun-clause (indirect question) is found depending on verbs of *asking*, *knowing*, etc.: as,

Scio quis sit. *I know who he is.*

6. *Quod* meaning *because*, *the fact that*, with the indicative, often introduces a noun-clause in Latin: as,

Magnum est hoc, quod victor victis pepercit. *This is an important matter, the fact that when victorious he spared the vanquished.*

Quod, with the indicative, is often found in this sense after verbs and phrases of *emotion* like *gaudeo*, *laetor* (*rejoice*), *queror* (*complain*), *glorior* (*boast*), *luvat* (*it delights*), *dōlet* (*it grieves*), *gratum est* (*it is pleasant*), *mirum est* (*it is wonderful*): as,

Vehementer laetor quod scripsisti. *I am very glad that you have written.*

Mihi gratum est quod venisti. *Your coming is very welcome to me.*

So too: *Peropportune accidit quod id rogasti.* *Your asking that was a lucky accident.*

This *quod* will often be useful in translating English verbal or abstract nouns: as,

His saving the country is a wonderful thing. *Mirum est quod patriam servavit.*

I pass over his betrayal of the king. *Quod regem prodidit, omitto.*

7. A noun-clause, introduced by *ut* with subjunctive, or by *quod* with indic., is used after *accēdit*, in the sense of *it is added*: as,

Huc accessit ut caecus esset. *To this was added the fact that he was blind.*

Accedit quod patrem tuum amo. *There is added the fact that I love your father.*

8. A noun-clause, introduced by *ut* with the subjunctive, is used to define a previous noun (usually the subject of *sum, I am*): as,

Commune vitium est in liberis civitatibus ut invidia gloriae comes sit. *It is a common vice in free states that envy is the attendant of glory.*

Cultus deorum est optimus ut eos purā mente veneremur. *The best worship of the gods is to adore them with a pure heart.*

ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES.

9. All clauses introduced by the relative *qui, quae, quod*, are adjectival when they can be changed into an attributive adjective: as,

Reges, qui boni sunt, amantur (=boni reges). *Kings, who are good, are loved.*

Virum video quem quaeritis. *I see the man whom you seek.*

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

10. Adverbial clauses modify verbs and adjectives, and are introduced by a conjunction or a relative adverb. They are divided into eight classes as follows:

1. *Local* (those that denote place), introduced by *ubi* (*where*), *unde* (*whence*), and *quo* (*whither*).

2. *Temporal* (those that denote time), introduced by *quum* (*when*), *dum* (*while*), *postquam* (*after that*), *priusquam* (*before that*), etc.

3. *Final* (those that denote an end or purpose); see § 7.

4. *Consecutive* (those that denote a consequence or result); see § 8.

5. *Causal* (those that denote a cause or reason), introduced by *quod* or *quia* (*because*), *quum* or *quoniam* (*since*).

6. *Concessive* (those that denote a concession) introduced by *etsi*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*, *etiamsi* (*although*).

7. *Comparative* (those that denote comparison or proportion), introduced by *ut* (*as*), *quasi*, *vĕlut* (*as if*) &c.

8. *Conditional* (those that denote a condition), introduced by *si* (*if*), *nisi* (*unless*), *dum* (*provided that*).

EXERCISE XL.

1. To this will be added the fact that the accused (*use is qui*) is a rich man. 2. The second thing is that you should do something great. 3. I was afraid that the letter you wrote me was lost. 4. It seems he is very like the brother whom you saw. 5. Don't you think that many things are better than wealth? 6. He wrote me to come as quickly as possible to Italy. 7. I saw your sister at Athens and heard that she was soon to start for Rome (co-ordinate rel.). 8. You knew how slow he was. 9. We shall soon know which of you is favored. 10. Tell him to give you the gold to keep. 11. I believe he will take a contract for burying the dead. 12. You should not linger in town against the wish of your father. 13. Shall I ask him to tell us whether the house is selling low or not? 14. I asked him to do it at once. 15. I told them the date of the intended abdication (*use verb*). 16. There is no doubt that there were brave men before Agamemnon. 17. After he had set out to attack the camp, he heard that it had been taken by storm. 18. Learning this, he did not hesitate to follow them. 19. I believe there is less water in the well than ever. 20. The ships were so high that we could not climb into them. 21. This was their custom, to sell their horses in the spring. 22. Does he intend to go to his country-house at Baiae to-day? 23. I believe he denies that he has sent anyone to us. 24. He used to say that anything at all was enough for him. 25. This is a great thing, namely, that all will be spared. 26. It is not for anyone to assert that they will obey the laws. 27. What does it matter to you whether he has accepted gifts or not? 28. It is a wonderful thing their being unwilling to consult their own interest. 29. I am very sorry that you came to help us. 30. He used to complain of men's forgetting their friends. 31. Let us not boast of doing what so many others have done.

§ 41. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES. LOCAL AND TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

1. Local adverbial clauses add to the statement of the main clause the idea of *place*: as,

Nolo vivere ubi tyrannus est. I do not wish to live where there is a tyrant.

Quo vult et qua vult, vagatur. He strolls where he will and in what direction he will.

Note.—*Ubi* expresses *rest*; *quo*, *motion towards*; and *quā*, *direction*.

2. The verb of the local adverbial clause is in the indicative except (*a*) in indirect narration (p. 4, note 3); (*b*) when it has a final force (*i.e.*, is used to express a purpose): as,

Dixit se, quo vellet, vagari. He said that he strolled where he wished (direct=quo volo vagor. I stroll where I wish).

Massiliam abiit ubi exulet. He has gone off to Massilia to live in exile there. (Here the adverbial clause expresses both place and purpose; i.e., ubi=ut ibi, that there).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.—POSTQUAM. DUM. PRIUSQUAM.

3. Temporal adverbial clauses define the time of the action of the main verb: as,

Haec feci, dum potui. I did this while I could. Here the clause dum potui is temporal, limiting the main verb feci.

POSTQUAM.

4. Temporal conjunctions meaning *after that*, *as soon as*, like *postquam*, *simul*, *simul ac* (or, before a vowel, *atque*), *ubi*, *ut* (*primum*), *quum primum*, are followed by the indicative: as,

Simul atque haec audivit, abiit. After he had heard this, he went away, or No sooner had he heard this, than, &c.

Note.—The perfect is used after these conjunctions for the English pluperfect.

Postquam id animadvertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit. *After he had noticed this, Caesar withdraws his forces to the nearest hill.*

Ubi se paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida incendunt. *When they thought they were ready, they set fire to the towns.*

Ea res ut Helvetiis nuntiata est, eum causam dicere coëgerunt. *When this fact was reported to the Helvetii, they compelled him to plead his cause.*

Nostri, simul in arido constitērunt, impetum fecērunt. *Our men, as soon as they had set foot on dry land, made an attack.*

Note.—Postquam with the perfect indic. may be sometimes used to supply the place of the perfect part. act. which is wanting in Latin (p. 49, 8): as, *Seeing (i.e., having seen) this, he groaned.* Postquam hæc vidit, ingemuit.

DUM.

5. Temporal conjunctions meaning *while* or *until*, like dum, donec, quoad, take the indicative when they mean *while*, *as long as*: as,

Dum ea Romani parant, iam oppidum oppugnabatur. *While the Romans were making these preparations, the town was already being besieged.*

Dum hic ero, te amabo. *I shall love you, while I am here.*

Note 1.—When the time expressed by the dum-clause includes the time of the action of the main verb, the present tense is used in Latin instead of the English past.

Note 2.—When the time of the temporal clause is really future, the future tense is used in Latin for the English present.

6. Dum, donec, quoad, meaning *until*, take the indicative when used to express time alone: as,

Dum rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit. *There was silence until Marcellus returned.*

Milo in senatu fuit eo die, quoad senatus dimissus est. *Milo was in the senate on that day, until the senate was dismissed.*

Non veniet dum scripsero. *He will not come till I write.*

Note.—*Dum* (*until*) is followed by the fut.-pf. for the English pres., when the action expressed by the verb of the temporal clause is to be over before that of the main verb begins.

But when *dum*, &c., express some further idea of *purpose* or *expectation* (i.e., are *final* as well as temporal), they require the subjunctive: as,

Dum naves convenirent, expectavit. *He waited till the ships should assemble* (i.e., *in order that they might assemble*; purpose). See p. 20, 2.

Differant dum ira defervescat. *Let them put off till their anger cools* (i.e., *in order that their anger may cool*).

Impetum hostium sustinuit quoad ceteri pontem interrumperent. *He withstood the attack of the enemy till the rest should break down the bridge* (i.e., *that they might break down the bridge*).

Note.—*Dum* for *dummodo*, *provided that*, is joined with the subjunctive: as, *Odèrint dum metuant.* *Let them hate, provided that they fear.*

PRIUSQUAM.

7. Temporal conjunctions meaning *before that*, like *priusquam* and *antequam*, take the indicative when they mark simple priority in time: as, *Priusquam lucet, adsunt.* *They are here before it is light.*

Filios convocavit, antequam mortuus est. *He called together his sons before he died.*

Note.—These take the future-perfect for the English present, when the action expressed by the verb of the temporal clause is to be over before that of the main verb begins: as, *Antequam aliquo loco consédéro, ne longas a me litteras expectavéris* *Before I settle* (literally, *shall have settled*) *somewhere, do not expect a long letter from me* (p. 26, 3).

8. *Antequam* and *priusquam* take the subjunctive, however, when used to express some further idea of *intention* or *purpose* or of a *prevented result*: as,

Priusquam se hostes ex terrore recipèrent, in fines eorum exercitum duxit. *Before the enemy recovered from their panic, he*

led his army into their territory (final ;=in order that they might not recover, etc.)

Priusquam pugnaretur, nox intervēnit. *Night came on before the battle was fought (result prevented).* See p. 38, 2.

Note.—**Antequam** and **priusquam** are often written in two words : as, **Ante rōrat quam** pluit, *it drops before it rains.* Written thus, they are often used for the English *not...until* : as, **Non prius respondēbo quam** tacueris, *I shall not answer until you are silent.*

9. In indirect narration, the verb of a temporal adverbial clause is in the subjunctive : as,

Dixit eos, ut primum lucēret, adesse. *He said that they were there, as soon as it was light.*

EXERCISE XLI.

1. As soon as he hears this, he will go away. 2. No sooner had they departed, than a second army was seen approaching. 3. I should like you to be in a country where you are known. 4. He will wait until the rest of the ships assemble there. 5. They will not come here until we write them. 6. Before I answer him with regard to the other matters, I will answer him with regard to myself. 7. They kept gradually advancing until they came to the camp. 8. I believe that they had already crossed the Alps into Italy, two hundred years before they captured Rome. 9. He did not leave the city before he had an interview with me. 10. He told me, that before he set out he would have an interview with me. 11. Wait until he comes. 12. I will not tell him why I sent for you, until I return to Rome. 13. He did not take part in the battle until his father was killed. 14. He falls into Scylla while he desires to avoid Charybdis. 15. He used to say that, while there was life (*anima*), there was hope. 16. He was detained until the consul was consulted. 17. While he was fortifying the hill, the enemy stormed the camp. 18. They did not cease to fly until they reached the river. 19. Before he had any pleasure in life, death took him away. 20. They were sent back to the place (*eo*) from which they came. 21. Wait until you are obeyed. 22. He decided

to consult the senate before he set out. 23. I thought that he was in the senate that day until it was dismissed. 24. Do you believe that it always drops before it rains? 25. He sustained the attack until the bridge was broken. 26. All this was done before I left Italy. 27. You can do nothing more pleasing to me than this. 28. I can make him as gentle as a lamb. 29. He used to say that nothing dried more quickly than a tear. 30. Nothing is more worthy of a good man than compassion. 31. Tell me where they are who say that he did not know Greek. 32. They did not take up arms until the truce had expired (*exeo*). 33. It is his part to say whether he thinks that this concerns him or not. 34. Provided that you have the zeal, you will always have the ability.

§42. TEMPORAL CLAUSES. SYNTAX OF QUUM.

1. **Quum** (*cum*) *when*, simply expressing contemporaneous time (called *quum temporal*) takes the indicative: as,

Quum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui. *When Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the leaders of the one party.*

Quum verba faciunt, maiores extollunt. *When they speak, they extol their ancestors.*

Nondum profectus erat **quum** haec gesta sunt. *He had not yet departed when these things took place.*

Te videbo **quum** potero, *I shall see you when I can.*

Quum rure rediero, tu Romae eris. *When I return from the country, you will be in Rome.*

In these sentences, **quum** is a relative adverb and corresponds to a suppressed correlative **tum** (*then*) in the main clause.

Note.—**Quum** when it refers to the future, takes the fut. tense for the English pres., and the fut.-perf. when the action of the verb of the temporal clause is over before that of the main verb begins.

2. **Quum** meaning *since* (called *quum causal*), requires the subjunctive: as,

Quae quum ita sint, Catilina, perge. As this is so, Catiline, go on.

3. But when used with the imperfect or pluperfect tense, *quum* usually takes the subjunctive, even when no idea of cause is implied: as,

Decessit Agesilâus quum in portum venisset. Agesilaus died when he had entered the harbor.

SUBSTITUTES FOR PERFECT PARTICIPLE ACT.

4. *Quum* with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, is a common substitute for the perf. part. active, which is wanting in Latin: as,

Quum haec dixisset, abiit. Having spoken these words, he departed.

There are, therefore, four substitutes for the perf. part. active:—

- (a) *Quum* + imperf. or pluperf. (b) *Postquam* + perf. indic. subj.
 (c) The ablative absolute. (d) The perf. part. of a synonymous deponent.

Thus: *Having spoken these words*, is:—

- (a) *Quum haec dixisset.* (b) *Postquam haec dixit.*
 (c) *His dictis* (= *these things* (d) *Haec locutus, said*).

5. *Quum* with the indicative (called *quum frequentative*) is often used for *quoties*, as *often as*, *whenever*.

In this sense, the perfect is used for the English present, and the pluperfect for the English past: as,

Quum rosam vidi, tum ver esse arbitror. Whenever I see the rose, then I judge that it is spring.

Quum impetum fecerant, hostes cedere cogebantur. Whenever they made a charge, the enemy were forced to retire.

After *quum*, however, in this sense, the subjunctive is used by Livy and Tacitus: as,

Cum hoc vidissent, convolabant. *Whenever they saw this, they flocked together.*

6. Quum with the subjunctive, sometimes has a concessive force meaning *although*: as,

Pylādes quum sis, dices te esse Orestem. *Though you are Pylades, you will say you are Orestes.*

Note.—This meaning of quum may be used to translate the English *instead of* or *without*, with a verbal noun: as,

Quum dicere dēbēret, tacuit. *Instead of speaking, he held his peace* (literally, *when he ought to have spoken*).

Quum hostes persequi deberet, ad urbem rediit. *Instead of (or without) following up the enemy, he returned to the city.*

7. Quum with the impf. subjunctive, is often joined with *audivi*: as,

Saepe eum audivi quum diceret. *I have often heard him saying* (dicere or dicentem might also be used).

8. Quum is never used interrogatively. Thus:

When do you intend to speak? Quando (never quum) dicturus es?

9. Cum...tum are often found in the sense *On the one hand.... on the other, both....and*: as,

Hic cum ab ceteris tum a Xenophonte laudatus est. *He was praised both by the others and by Xenophon.*

EXERCISE XLII.

1. When this bridge is destroyed (fut.-pf.), who will contract to build another? 2. When he had conquered Carthage, he returned to Rome. 3. When I hear him speak, I shall know whether he is the man or not. 4. When the ships were approaching Britain, a violent storm arose. 5. Being persuaded myself that we needed his help, I wrote to him to come. 6. When you have finished your work, you may go. 7. When they had reached the top of the hill, they saw a broad plain below them. 8. Phocion always remained poor, though he might (possum; p. 33, 5) have been rich. 9. When I was at Athens, I used to hear Zeno. 10. Instead of going to

athens, you remained at Rome. 11. When I see him, I shall go on to Arpinum. 12. When you read this, I shall perhaps have had an interview with him. 13. Being discontented (use *poenitet*) with his lot, he left the country. 14. Who can tell me when he intends to return? 15. The more they have, the more they ask for. 16. When I saw that he spoke with judgment, I applauded. 17. Caesar told Cato that his (Cato's) words displeased him. 18. He did not show what he thought himself. 19. The battle was not ended until the general was killed. 20. He used to say that a storm always threatened before it rose. 21. Though they could not have done much, still they might have spoken (p. 33, 5). 22. It never seemed to me that anyone could be happy when he was in misfortune (pl. of *malum*). 23. Having conquered the greater part of the island, he died at Citium. 24. Whenever he came to a town, he demanded hostages. 25. Observing this, he marched against them at once. 26. Nature wished one (*alter*) man to stand in need of another (*alter*); for what one has, another lacks. 27. He said that we must return the money to-morrow. 28. When you had finished your work, you should have helped your friend. 29. By disbanding the army, he declared that the war was ended. 30. I did not know how many men there were. 31. You must pay when the day of payment (gerund) comes. 32. It is many years since you have been doing this (cum + pres. ind. : p. 34, 3). 33. Do you think that anything is harder than stone?

§43. FINAL AND CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

QUI FINAL. QUI CONSECUTIVE.

1. For the syntax of ordinary final clauses, see § 7.

2. The relative *qui* (called *qui final*) is often used with the subjunctive to express a *purpose*: as

Misit legatos qui pacem peterent. *He sent ambassadors to sue for peace (qui=ut et, that they).*

Note.—Relative adverbs, like *ubi* (*where*) and *unde* (*whence*), are used, like the relative pronoun, to express a purpose: as,

Domum ubi habitaret lēgit. *He chose a house where he might dwell (ubi=ut ibi, that there);*

Cupit habere unde solvat. *He wants to have means to pay (unde=ut inde, that thence).*

3. In English, the infinitive is often used to denote a *purpose*, but in Latin it is never so used in good prose. Such an infinitive may be expressed in Latin, as shown already, in various ways.

Thus : *He sent ambassadors to sue for peace* may be expressed as follows :—

Lēgātos misit ut pacem pētērent (ut *final*).

Legatos misit qui pacem pētērent (qui *final*).

Legatos misit ad pacem petendam (gerundive acc. with ad).

Legatos misit pacis petendae causā (gerundive genitive with causā).

Legatos misit ad pacem petendum (gerund acc. with ad).

Legatos misit pacem petendi causā (gerund genitive with causa).

Legatos misit pacem petitum (supine after verb of motion).

Legatos misit pacem petitūros (future part. active, expressing a purpose).

4. For the syntax of ordinary consecutive clauses, see § 8.

QUI CONSECUTIVE.

5. The relative qui (called *qui consecutive*) is often used with the subjunctive to introduce a consecutive clause : as,

Non is sum qui hoc faciam. *I am not the one to do it (qui=ut ego, that I). Here is qui has the force of such as to, of such a kind as to.*

6. Qui consecutive is used in the following constructions :—

(a) With certain *indefinite expressions*, like sunt qui (*there are some who*), habeo qui, (*I have who*), reperiuntur qui (*there are found who*), nemo est qui (*there is no one who*), quis est qui? (*who is there who?*), nihil est quod (*there is nothing that*), est cur (*there is reason why*), quotusquisque est qui (*how few there are who*) : as,

Sunt qui putent nihil sibi litteris opus esse. *There are some who think that they have no need of literature.*

Nihil est quod dicere velim. There is nothing that I wish to say.

Nihil est cur irascere. There is no reason why you should be angry.

Nil habet quo se defendat. He has nothing to defend himself with.

(b) After *dignus* (*worthy*), *indignus* (*unworthy*), and *idoneus* or *aptus* (*fit*): as,

Dignus est qui ametur. He is worthy to be loved (= he is worthy that he should be loved, he deserves to be).

(c) After *quam* (*than*) with a comparative: as,

Maiores quam cui resisti possit. He is too great to be resisted (= greater than to whom it can be resisted).

Note.—*Possum, I can*, is used impersonally, only when joined with a passive infinitive.

(d) In negative and interrogative sentences, after *tam*, *sic*, *adeo* (*so*), or *tantus* (*so great*); as, *Nemo tam (or quis tam) ferreus est qui hæc faciat. No one is (or who is) so iron-hearted as to do this.*

7. Instead of *qui non*, *quin* with the subjunctive is often used: as,

Nemo est quin sciat. There is no one who does not know.

So, too, after *dubito* (*doubt*), *nego* (*deny*), *ignoro* (*be ignorant*), when joined with a negative or virtual negative,* that is expressed by *quin* (= *qui ne, how not*): as,

Negari non potest quin turpe sit fidem fallere. It cannot be denied that it is dishonorable to break one's word.

Non dubitat quin animus sit immortalis. He does not doubt that the soul is immortal.

Num quis ignorat quin hæc vera sint? Is anyone ignorant that this is the truth?

Note—*Quis* means *any* after *si* (*if*), *nisi* (*unless*), *ne*, *num*, *quo* and *quanto*.

* Words like *vix*, *scarcely*, and questions that expect the answer *No*.

8. *Qui*, with the subjun., is also used in a restrictive sense : as,

Nemo, qui quidem paulo prudentior sit, hoc dubitat. *No one, who at least is a man of some sense, doubts this* (p. 78, 9).

So, too : *Nemo quod sciam.* *No one as far as I know.*

9. *Qui* with the indic., refers only to the antecedent ; *qui* with the subjun., involves also the idea of a class : as,

Is sum qui id feci. *I am the one who did it.* But : *Is sum qui id faciam.* *I am the one to do it (i.e., of such a kind as to do it).*

EXERCISE XLIII.

1. Nothing is so obscure that it can not be found out by inquiry. (gerund). 2. Men were sent to pick out a place suitable to encamp on. 3. Is he not worthy to rule? 4. They have nothing to talk about (*rel.*). 5. He is not the man to make a bad use of his opportunities. 6. Is he the man to say one thing (*alter*) and think another (*alter*)? 7. He is a fit person to be trusted. 8. Is he not too wise to be here? 9. This book is too difficult to understand. 10. There are some who are too faithful to sell their country for gold. 11. He has committed a crime too great to be forgiven. 12. I do not doubt that you have spoken the truth. 13. He had nothing to say. 14. I sent a man to tell you the truth. 15. Aelius used to write speeches for others to deliver (use *qui*). 16. They are always asking me what I am doing. 17. Men are found who take from some (*alius*) that (*relative*) they may give to others. 18. Is anyone so foolish that he can understand nothing? 19. He was unworthy to have that honor conferred upon him. 20. He sent forward five legions to attack the camp. 21. How few there are who are like him! 22. They were too proud to ask for money. 23. There is nothing that can prevent him from doing it. 24. He is asking for a pen to write with. 25. Who is there who would wish this? 26. It happened that he was the first to announce it at Rome. 27. He left a legate to finish the business (*rel.*) 28. We need a consul to influence (*flecto*) the populace. 29. This I had to say (*rel.*) on friendship. 30. There was nothing new to ask you (*rel.*) 31. He wishes to have a place (*quo*) to go to. 32. No one—if at least he is a man (use *rel.*)—will be absent.

§44. CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

Because and Although.

1. Causal adverbial clauses state the *cause* or reason for the fact mentioned in the main clause. In English they are usually introduced by *because*: as,

Tac. quia periculum metuunt. *They are silent because they fear danger.*

2. Causal clauses are usually introduced by quod, quia (*because*) or quoniam (=quum iam, *since now*), *seeing that*.

They are followed by the indicative when the reason they introduce is given on the speaker's own authority; they are followed by the subjunctive when the reason they introduce is given on the authority of another: as,

Patriā expulsus est quia iustus erat. *He was banished because he was just (or for being just).* Here *esset* would mean that this was the reason usually given, for the truth of which, however, the speaker would not vouch.

Socrates accusatus est quod corrumperet iuventutem. *Socrates was accused because (as was alleged) he was corrupting the young men* (corrumpēbat would mean that the speaker vouched for the truth of the charge).

Note.—This *quod* is common after quōror (*complain*), laudo (*praise*), gaudeo (*be glad*), doleo (*be sorry*). See p. 99, 6.

3. Quum (*cum*), in the sense of *since*, is often used to introduce a causal clause (p. 106, 2): as,

Haec quum ita sint, abibo. *As this is so, I shall go away.*

4. The relative qui (called *qui causal*) is often used with the subjunctive to introduce a causal clause: as,

Peccasse videor qui a te discesserim. *It seems I have done wrong, inasmuch as I have parted from you* (peccāsse=peccavisse).

Note.—In this sense, qui is often strengthened by the addition of quippe or utpote, *indeed, as being*: as, Multa de me questus est

quippe qui in me incensus esset. *He complained at length of me inasmuch as he had been exasperated against me*

5. Qui causal is very commonly found after exclamations: as,
Me miserum, qui haec fecerim. *Wretch that I am for doing this!*

Note.—The accusative case is often used in exclamations. It is called the *accusative of exclamation*.

6. Non quod or non quo, with the subjunctive, is often used to introduce a rejected reason: as,

Hoc laudo non quod honestum sit, sed quod utile est. *I praise this, not because it is honorable but because it is expedient.*

De consilio meo non scripsi, non quo celandum esset sed quia, &c. *I did not write you about my plan, not because it required to be concealed but because, &c.*

So too: Non quin, *not but that*: as,

Non quin me ames sed quod abire cupio. *Not but that you love me, but because I am anxious to go.*

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

7. *Concessive* adverbial clauses are those that make some concession, in spite of which the statement of the main clause is true. They are usually introduced in English by *although*: as,

Romani, quamquam proelio fessi erant, tamen procedunt. *The Romans, although they were weary with fighting, nevertheless advance.*

8. Concessive clauses, when they state a *fact*, take the indicative; when they state a *supposition*, the subjunctive: as,

Caesar, quamquam nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen suspicabatur. *Though Caesar had not as yet discovered their plans, he nevertheless was suspicious.*

Non falso in suspicionem venisses, tamen mihi ignoscere debui. *Although you had been falsely suspected (which you were not: a supposition), still you should have pardoned me [In suspicionem venire—the passive of suspicor, I suspect].*

9. The following are the common concessive conjunctions, and

the moods with which they are used : **Quamquam** (*though*), and **utut** (*however*), with indicative ; **licet**, **quamvis** (lit., *as you wish*), **ut**, **quum** (all meaning *although*), with subjunctive ; **etsi**, **etiāmsi**, **tametsi** (*although, even if*)—all compounds of **si** (*if*), and following the same rules for mood (p. 119).

Note.—**Quamvis** is also used with single words as an adverb and without influence on the verb of the clause : as,

Ille, quamvis facētus, odio est. *He however witty, is hated* (or *whatever his wit* [**Odio esse, to be for an object of hate**, is the passive of **odi, I hate**].

10. The relative **qui**, with the subjunctive, is often used concessively. It is called **qui concessive** : as,

Caesar, qui haec vidēret, tamen aciem instruxit. *Though Caesar saw this, still he drew up his line* (**qui=quamvis**).

11. Latin concessive conjunctions may be used to express English phrases like *In spite of, notwithstanding, whatever* : as,

In spite of his being a good man, he was condemned. **Is quamquam vir bonus erat, condemnatus est.**

However guilty he may be (whatever his guilt), he will be acquitted. **Is, quamvis nocentissimus sit, absolvetur.**

12. **Quamquam** is often used co-ordinately, in the sense of *and yet* : as,

Quamquam ego putabam id non posse. *And yet I for my part thought it was impossible.*

EXERCISE XLIV.

1. Although they are brave, still they may be defeated. 2. Seeing that you had promised, you should have kept your word. 3. As they were not able to withstand our attack, they retreated to their camp. 4. They were glad because they had recovered their ship. 5. Unhappy man ! in that (since) you have been banished from your country. 6. He was accused of corrupting the young men (use *because*). 7. He was thrown into prison because he had killed his friend. 8. That being the case, take up your arms. 9. He was angry with me for preferring gain to friendship (as he said). 10. Was he not banished because he was just? 11. You are praising

him for doing what I am sure he did not do. 12. There are some who deny that it is true. 13. He was despised by them for they knew him (*rel.*) 14. He is not a proper person to be received. 15. They are too brave to be conquered. 16. This life is too short to be the whole life of man (*rel.*) 17. I pity you who have not slept for three whole nights. 18. How few there are who believe him! 19. He sent two sons there, that they might be taught literature. 20. There are some who think that mind and body perish together. 21. Hand me a sword to kill with. 22. You have reason to rejoice. 23. He wished to hinder me from coming. 24. There was no one but thought him mad. 25. The general, who saw that he could not prevent it, ordered the men to advance. 26. Who is there of you who is worthy of his country who will not pray for this? 27. He was too merciful to punish them. 28. Though he is worthy of punishment, I pity him. 29. To think that you should be unable to hear it! 30. You will hardly find anyone to believe it. 31. Give me a stick with which I may drive away the birds. 32. Of all men—of those at least I know (*rel.*)—he has the best ability.

§ 45. COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

1. A comparative adverbial clause expresses *agreement* (or the opposite) with the statement of the main clause: as,

Ut sementem fēcēris, ita mētes. You shall reap according as you do (lit., shall have done) your seeding.

Here the clause introduced by *ut* is an adverbial comparative clause.

The following words, used to introduce a comparative clause, are followed by *ac* (or, before a vowel, *atque*) for *than*, *as*, *from*, &c.:

Alius (*other*), *alīter* or *sēcus* (*otherwise*), *similis* (*like*), *dissimilis* (*unlike*), *par* (*equal*), *parīter* or *aeque* (*equally*), *perinde* or *proinde* or *iuxta* (*just as*), *contrarius* (*opposite*), *pro eo* (*in proportion*): as,

Se gerit longe aliter ac tu. He behaves very differently from you.

Simili fortunā atque antea utimur. We are having the same fortune as before.

Amicos aequē ac semet diligere oportet. We should love our friends as much as ourselves (lit., one should, &c.; p. 55, 2).

Contra (opposite) takes quam : as,

Contra quam pollicitus es, fecisti. You have acted in violation of your promise.

Nihil aliud (nothing else) is followed by quam or nisi : as,

Bellum suscipitur ut nihil aliud quam (or nisi) pax quaesita videatur. War is undertaken in such a way that nothing but peace seems sought for.

2. Comparative clauses introduced by *quam* may take the construction of the main clause, or the subjunctive with or without *ut* : *as*,

Nec ultra saevit quam satis erat. Nor did he show any needless cruelty (lit., nor was he cruel further than was enough).

Perpessus est omnia potius quam (ut) indicaret. He endured everything rather than inform.

Eum aggrediamur potius quam propulsemus. Let us attack rather than repel him.

Note.—In the same way, *quam* connects two infinitives : *as*,
Dixit se quidvis potius perpessurum quam exiturum. He said that he would endure anything rather than go forth.

3. Comparative clauses fall into two classes :—

(a) Where the comparison is stated as a *fact* : *as*,

Omnia, sicut acta sunt, memoravit. He has narrated everything, just as it was done.

(b) Where the comparison is stated as a mere *supposition* : *as*,

Honores petunt quasi honeste vixerint. They seek office, as if they had lived honorably (=while they have not).

The first class take the indicative ; the second, the subjunctive.

4. The following are the common comparative conjunctions that are usually joined with the subjunctive : *Tanquam*, or *tanquam si*, *quasi*, *velut*, or *velut si*, *as if* : *as*,

Tanquam hoc difficile sit. As if this were hard.

Velut si Asia sit clausa, sic nihil perfertur ad nos. Just as if Asia were closed, no news reaches us [p. 123, II. (b)].

5. The English *the...the* with two comparatives, is expressed in Latin in two ways :—

(a) By *quo...eo* (or *quanto...tanto*) with two comparatives : *as*

Quo (or *quanto*) *quis est melior, eo* (or *tanto*) *difficilius suspicatur. The better a man is, the more difficulty he has in suspecting* (p. 78, 6).

(b) By *Ut quisque...ita*, with two superlatives : *as*, *Ut quisque vir optimus est, ita difficillime suspicatur. The better a man is, &c.*

Note.—This might also be translated : *In proportion to a man's goodness, &c., or, In proportion as a man is good, &c.*

IDIOMATIC USES OF UT, AS.

6. The following idiomatic uses of *ut, as*, should be noticed :—

(a) *Ut fortasse vere, sic parum utiliter respondit. Though his answer was true, yet it was not very expedient (concessive and restrictive).*

(b) *Valde frugi erat, ut servus. He was very thrifty for a slave.*

(c) *Multum, ut illis temporibus, valuit. He had great influence for that time.*

(d) *Multae etiam, ut in homine Romano, litterae. A good knowledge of literature, too, for a Roman.*

(e) *Pauca, ut semper taciturnus erat, respondit. With his usual reticence, he made a brief reply.*

(f) *Magnus pavor, ut in re improvisā, fuit. The panic was great, as was natural in so unexpected an occurrence.*

EXERCISE XLV.

1. He shall be punished as he deserves. 2. I will bear it as I can. 3. They acted as if the enemy were already at the gates. 4. Though he is absent, I will come to your aid. 5. We will fight as you direct. 6. You speak as if he were here. 7. He praised us for having behaved so well (p. 113, 2). 8. He spoke as if no one were dissatisfied with his lot. 9. He shut the gate to keep out the enemy. 10. He talks as if he thought that it was all over with him. 11. He was too proud to accept money. 12. He acts as if I were a fool. 13. The more a man reads, the more he knows. 14. Though I am angry with you, you may say what you wish. 15. As if I cared for that! 16. Even Varius does not hesitate to lead out his troops (*use ne-quidem*). 17. However you have behaved towards me, still I will praise you. 18. They tell a very different story from you (say : *tell other things than*). 19. They placed the image in the opposite direction to what it had been (*use contra quam*). 20. You are acting otherwise than I wished. 21. They have not been praised as much as they deserve. 22. She gave him a sword to kill himself with (p. 111, 6). 23. I wish he would come (*use utinam*). 24. I spoke just as I felt. 25. Philosophy is not praised as much as it deserves. 26. They move backwards with an opposite motion to that of the sky. 27. He will be punished in proportion as he deserves. 28. She has as much sense as beauty (*use par*). 29. He asked me whether I was in good health, and I answered Yes. 30. A boy should know more than he says. 31. After dismissing the army, he returned to Rome. 32. He said that he would perish sooner than that I should be harmed. 33. Let them fight rather than be slaves. 34. Though they had rest from battle, still they did not cease from labor.

§ 46. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

1. A conditional sentence contains (*a*) a main clause, (*b*) an adverbial clause stating the condition on which the statement of the main clause is, or would be, true : as, *If he says this, he is wrong*. The clause containing the condition is called the *if*-clause.

2. The common types of the conditional sentence are as follows :—

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

	IF-CLAUSE.	MAIN CLAUSE.
Indicative in both Clauses.	1. Si quis hæc dicit, <i>If anyone says this,</i>	errat. <i>he is wrong.</i>
	Si quis hæc dixit, <i>If anyone said this,</i>	erravit. <i>he was wrong.</i>
	2. Si quis hæc dicet (or dixerit), <i>If anyone says (literally, shall</i>	errabit. <i>he will be wrong.</i>
	<i>say or have said) this,</i>	
Subjunctive in both Clauses.	3. Si quis hæc dicat, <i>If anyone were to (or should) say</i>	erret. <i>he would be wrong.</i>
	<i>this,</i>	
	4. Si quis hæc diceret, <i>If anyone were saying this (now),</i>	erraret. <i>he would be wrong.</i>
	5. Si quis hæc dixisset, <i>If anyone had said this (in the past) he would have been wrong.</i>	erravisset.

Note.—Instead of the English present, referring to the future (as in type 2), Latin uses the future, or—if the action of the verb in the if-clause is over before that of the main verb begins—the future-perfect.

3. *Unless, or if not* with the force of *unless*, is nisi or ni: as,

Nisi arma sumpsisses, delētus esses. *Unless you had taken up arms, you would have been destroyed.*

Nisi medicus adesset, puer morēretur. *If the doctor were not here, the boy would be dying.* But when *if not* cannot be turned into *unless*, it is expressed by si non: as,

Cur mihi nōces, si ego tibi non noceo? *Why do you harm me, if I do not harm you?*

4. *Any, after si or nisi*, is quis: as,

Si quis ita fecerit, poenas dabit. *If anyone does so, he will be punished (literally, shall have done so).*

5. *Whether...or*, introducing alternative conditions (i.e., with the force of *if...or if*), is expressed by *sive* (seu)...*sive* (seu): as,

Sive adfulisti sive abfulisti, nihil dico. Whether you were present or absent, I say nothing.

Note —*Sive...sive* must be carefully distinguished from *utrum...an* (p. 29, 6), introducing a dependent double question and used as the subject or object of a verb: as,

Utrum velit an nolit rogo. I ask whether he is willing or unwilling.

6. *But if*, introducing a corrected condition, is *sin* (= *si+ne*, *if not*); *if not* (without a verb) is *si minus* (or, rarely, *si non*): as,

Si rogas, respondeo; sin nihil rogas, taceo. If you ask, I answer; but if you don't ask, I hold my peace.

Si haec fecerit, gaudebo; si minus, aequo animo feram. If he has done it, I shall be glad; if not, I shall bear it with patience.

7. *Nisi forte* (or *vero*) is often used to express an ironical objection: as,

Nisi forte existimatis eum dementem fuisse. Unless indeed you think that he was mad (=you surely do not think).

EXERCISE XLVI.

1. If you should ask me that, I would answer nothing. 2. If I knew the name of this flower, I should value it more highly. 3. If you bore adversity well, you will bear prosperity joyfully. 4. If I should deny it, I should be telling a falsehood. 5. If dogs barked in the day-light, they would be killed. 6. If you were here, you would think otherwise. 7. If I had set out that night, I should have seen him. 8. If I am present, I will speak. 9. Whether you were absent or whether you were present, you will be punished. 10. If they had distrusted him, they would not have put him at the head of the army. 11. If he were to deny it, it would be the height of folly. 12. I should not ask you to do this, if I thought you would refuse. 13. Whether this is true or false, all will believe it. 14. If he had not come to our aid, it would have been all over with us. 15. If he were here, he would be laughing. 16. If you had not applauded, he would have been ashamed. 17. If they had not

detained me, I should have been here first. 18. If he is at the head of the army, the country will be safe. 19. If they should swear they were innocent, I would not believe them. 20. Will you ask how much I ought to give? 21. He asked me whether I would rather be an orator or a poet. 22. Let us return home for fear they come in our absence. 23. If anyone had ordered this, he would not have been obeyed by anyone. 24. If he should ask at what hour he would be put to death, they would tell him. 25. If he is a man of courage, he will refuse; if not, he will do it. 26. Learning is nothing else but recollecting. 27. You surely do not suppose that all the captives have been put to death. 28. If I am at home, my heart is abroad; but if I am abroad, my heart (*animus*) is at home. 29. If this were not so, he would be here. 30. Don't think that I write longer letters to any one. 31. Whether he reads or writes, he wastes no time.

§47. CLASSIFICATION OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Exception to the Rules.

1. The common types of the conditional sentence are easily learned with a little attention and practice. They are classified as follows :—

Conditional sentences are divided into *three* classes :

I. SIMPLE PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

This class will be easily recognised when the second and third classes are known. It includes all conditional sentences in which nothing is implied as to the fulfilment of the condition. It has the indicative in both clauses : as,

Pecuniam si habet, dat. If he has money, he gives it.

Pecuniam si habuit, dedit. If he had money, he gave it.

Note.—*Si* rarely stands at the head of the sentence. Hence the common use of *quodsi* (*but if*) for *si*, at the head of a *si*-clause,

II. FUTURE CONDITIONS.

This class includes conditional sentences in which the fulfilment of the condition is referred to the future. Of these there are two types :—

(a) Where the condition is regarded as likely to be fulfilled: as,

Pecuniam si habebit, dabit. *If he has (Old Eng., shall have) money, he will give it.*

Here the fut. indic. is used in both clauses. But the fut.-perf. is used in the *if*-clause when the action of the verb of that clause is to be represented as over before that of the main verb begins: as,

Hoc si fecerit, morietur. *If he does this, he shall die (literally, shall have done).*

(b) Where the condition is regarded as unlikely to be fulfilled. Such sentences have in English *would* or *should* in the main clause: as,

Pecuniam si habeat, det. *If he should have money, he would give it.*

Here the present subjunctive is used in both clauses.

III. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT.

This class includes all conditional sentences in which the condition is represented as not fulfilled. Of these also there are two types :—

(a) Where the condition is referred to the present. These have in English the word *now* (expressed or understood) in both clauses: as,

Pecuniam si habēret, daret. *If he had money (now), he would give it (now).*

Here the imperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses.

(b) Where the condition is referred to the past. This type has in English *would have* in the main clause: as,

Pecuniam si habuisset, dedisset. If he had had money, he would have given it.

Here the pluperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses.

Note 1.—In sentences of Class III., the *if*-clause may refer to the past, while the main clause refers to the present, or *vice versa*: as, *Illi si haec fecissent, viverent. If they had done this, they would now be alive.*

Note 2.—The first type of Class III. is also used of *past time* to express *continuous action*: as, *Haec si sentirent, sapientes essent. If they had held these views, they would have been wise.*

2. Instead of the usual forms for *would* or *would have* (in the main clause of the conditional sentence), the following forms are frequently found:—

(a) The active periphrastic conjugation (*p.* 54).

(b) The passive periphrastic conjugation (*p.* 45).

(c) Any verb or phrase denoting *duty*, *possibility*, or *propriety*, like *possum*, *oportet*, *debeo*, *dēcet* (*it is becoming*): as,

Quid, si hostes ad urbem veniant, facturi estis? What would you do, if the enemy should come to the city? (here facturi estis, are you likely to do, do you intend to do, is much the same as faciatis, would you do, the ordinary form).

Si unum diem morati essetis, omnibus moriendum fuit. If you had delayed a single day, all would have had to die (or would have died).

Si similem hostem habuisset, magna clades accipi potuit. If he had had a similar enemy, a great defeat would (or might) have been sustained.

Hunc, si ulla pietas in te fuisset, colere debebas. This man, if there had been any affection in you, you should have (i.e., would have) honored.

Si ita putasset Milo, optabilius ei fuit. If Milo had thought so, it would have been preferable for him.

3. An important exception to the regular rules for mood in such conditional sentences must be noted. It is as follows:—

The indicative, and *not the subjunctive*, is used in the main clause of the conditional sentence when the verb of that clause is—

(a) In the periphrastic conjugation, active or passive (p. 54, 45).

(b) Possum, *I can*; debeo, *I ought*; oportet, *it is needful*, &c. : as,

Ni litteras misisset, agros relicturi erant. *If he had not sent the letter, they would have left their lands.*

Consilia si processissent, interficiendus fuit. *If the plans had succeeded, he would (or must) have been put to death.*

Totus exercitus deleri potuit, si persecuti essent victores. *The whole army would (or might) have been destroyed, if the victors had followed up.*

4. *Provided that* is expressed by dum, by mōdo, or by dummodo, all with the subjunctive (with nē for non in negative clauses) : as,

Odērint dum metuant. *Let them hate provided that they fear.*

Veniant dum ne māneant. *Let them come, provided that they do not remain.*

5. Si, nisi, si non (or minus) may be used with single words : as,

Historia nil nisi annalium confectio fuit. *History was nothing but the compiling of annals.*

Cum spe, si non optimā, at aliquā tamen vivere. *To live with some hope, if not the highest.*

Note.—At tamen should always be joined to single words, never used to introduce a sentence.

EXERCISE XLVII.

1. If they make an attack upon this town, they will capture it very easily. 2. Had he listened to my warning (p. 48, 6), this would never have happened. 3. If you do not return, you will injure all of us. 4. If you had been consul that year, you would have shown the same courage as he did (p. 54, 2). 5. If I had gone there, I should have had to put up with his insults (p. 45, 2). 6. If the rest were killed, would you be likely to escape? (p. 54, 2) 7. If you had

wished to capture this city, you should have collected more troops. 8. Even if he had been a stranger, you should have helped him. 9. Had he been a good man, I might have influenced him. 10. Provided you ward off this danger, we shall consider you a friend. 11. If he had remained in Rome, he might have been destroyed. 12. If your country were to speak thus to you, she ought to obtain her request. 13. Provided I can collect an army, I will join you immediately. 14. Though you are away, we shall never forget you (*use ut....ita*). 15. Whether you will trust it to him or not, I do not know. 16. Whether you are willing or unwilling, I shall always be grateful. 17. Whether you were present or not, concerns yourself alone. 18. He promised that he would never return to Rome unless victorious. 19. Unless indeed you fancy it was the old man who was applauded (p. 121, 7). 20. Even if your father had punished you, you should have remembered that he was your father. 21. If you had acted otherwise, the same result would have occurred (say: *the same thing was about to happen*). 22. He wanted to prevent me from speaking. 23. O! that the king were here himself. 24. Having answered thus, he departed without saying good-bye to anyone (p. 52, 4). 25. He ought to have done what he promised. 26. You are not the one to consider poverty a disgrace. 27. What does it matter to us that the city has been captured? 28. Even if you had been falsely suspected, you ought to have pardoned me. 29. If he had not manumitted them, they must have been given up to torture. 30. If they had delayed a single day, all must have died. 31. They were thrown into prison until they paid the fine. 32. He was too cautious to admit that he preferred you to us. 33. Hardly any one doubted that the consul would be obeyed.

§48. INDIRECT (OR OBLIQUE¹) NARRATION.

1. A statement depending on a verb of *saying, thinking, perceiving, knowing*, or the like, is said to be in *indirect* or *oblique narration*.

Thus, in

Dixit se civem Romanum esse, *he said that he was a Roman citizen*, the words *se civem Romanum esse* are in indirect narration. The actual words used were *Civis Romanus sum*, *I am a Roman citizen*; these are said to be in *direct narration*.

2. The main verb of direct narration becomes infinitive in indirect narration, and the subject of direct narration becomes accusative before the infinitive (p. 4). The tense of the infinitive will be present, perfect, or future, according as the tense of the *actual words* was present, perfect, or future. Thus:—

DIRECT.	INDIRECT.
Civis Romanus sum. <i>I am a Roman citizen.</i>	Dixit se civem Romanum esse, <i>He said that he was a Roman citizen.</i>
Civis Romanus ero. <i>I shall be a Roman Citizen.</i>	Dixit se civem Romanum futurum esse (or <i>före</i> .) <i>He said that he should be a Roman citizen.</i>
Civis Romanus eram (or <i>ful</i>). <i>I was (or have been) a Roman citizen.</i>	Dixit se civem Romanum fuisse. <i>He said that he was (or had been) a Roman citizen.</i>

Note.—After verbs meaning *to hope* or *promise*, the future infinitive is used instead of the English present infinitive: as, *Promisit se venturum esse*. *He promised to come* (p. 7, 3).

3. To determine the tense of the infinitive in indirect narration, it is best to find the tense of the main verb in direct narration: *the tense of the main verb in direct narration is the tense of the infinitive in indirect narration*. Thus, in *Caesar said that he had*

¹The term *oblique narration* is sometimes limited so as to apply only to *reported speeches*. It is more convenient to use it in the wider sense.

written, the direct narration is *I have written*, *scripsi*; the indirect, therefore, is *Caesar dixit se scripsisse*; *he said that he was an orator*, is *dixit se oratorem esse* (direct=*orator sum*).

Note.—Pronouns of the 1st or 2nd person become pronouns of the 3rd person, in reporting speeches in indirect narration.

4. All adjectival and adverbial clauses in indirect narration must have the subjunctive: as,

Dixit se eos, quos cēpisset, domum misisse. *He said that he had sent home those whom he had taken* (direct=*eos quos cepi domum misi*, *I have sent home those whom I have taken*).

Dixit se, quoties potuisset, rediisse. *He said that he had returned as often as he could* (direct=*redii quoties potui*, *I have returned as often as I could*).

Note 1.—In accordance with the rule for the *sequence of tenses* (p. 20, 2), the verb of the dependent adjectival or adverbial clause will be in the impf. or plupf. subjunctive in indirect narration after a secondary tense.

Note 2.—A subordinate clause, when inserted in a passage in indirect narration on the authority of the writer or reporter, takes the indicative: as, *Certior factus est Xerxes id agi ut pons, quem ille in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur.* *Xerxes was informed that this was intended, i.e., to break down the bridge which he (Xerxes) had built over the Hellespont.*

Here the clause *quem.... fecerat* has the indicative, because the writer vouches for the truth of the statement himself.

5. The imperative of direct narration is put in the subjunctive in indirect narration (after a secondary tense, in the impf. subjunctive, in accordance with the law of sequence; § 11): as,

Ne cunctarentur. *Let them not delay (he said)* (direct=*ne cunctamini*, *do not delay*).

Ne illud faceret. *Let him not do that* (dir. = *ne feceris*; p. 26, 3).

6. Questions that expect an answer are put in the *subjunctive* in indirect narration; rhetorical questions (exclamations and appeals), in the *infinitive*: as,

(*Scriptis*) *quid de praeda faciendum esse censèrent?* (*He wrote what did they think should be done with regard to the booty?* (direct = *quid...censetis?* *what do you think?*).

Quid esse turpius? cur eos dubitare? *What was more dishonorable? why did they hesitate?* (direct = *quid est turpius? cur dubitatis?* *what is more dishonorable? why do you hesitate?*)

7. A fut.-perf. indicative in a dependent clause of direct narration, becomes, in indirect, perf. subjun. after a primary tense and pluperf. subjun. after a secondary : as,

Dicit eum qui id fecerit, poenas daturum esse. *He says that the one who does this, shall be punished.*

Dixit eum qui id fecisset, poenas daturum esse. *He said that the one who did that, should be punished* (direct = *qui id fecerit, poenas dabit, he who shall have done that shall be punished*).

8. Oblique narration is often suddenly introduced into the narrative by the historians, without the governing verb of *saying* being expressed : as,

Regulus reddi captivos negavit esse utile: illos enim bonos duces esse. *Regulus denied that it was expedient that the captives should be restored: that they were good leaders.*

9. *I say...not* in Latin is *nego*, which, owing to the tendency in Latin to put the negative forward in the sentence, is usually put first : as,

Negabat se praemium ullum accepturum. *He said that he would not accept any reward.* (Note.—*Esse* with a participle is often dropped in indirect narration).

EXERCISE XLVIII.

(*N.B.*—*Indirect narration is to be used all through the exercise*).

1. What (they asked) was more base than to adopt a policy at the suggestion of the enemy? 2. Let them remember (he said) what he had told them. Let them not forget the kindness they had received. 3. He said that he had not sold his house. 4. They said that he used to groan as often as he saw his son (p. 107, 5).

5. He did not doubt (he said) that all were weary of the war. 6. They voted (*censeo*) that they should march by night : (saying) that they could easily reach the defile. 7. He promised that he would not be wanting to his friends. 8. Why (he asked) did they obey a few centurions? When would they dare to demand redress? (*rhetorical quest.*) 9. He called out (*clamo*) that, as far as he was able, he would follow their footsteps. 10. He used to say that the soul was immortal. 11. What was he to do (he asked)? They were calling out that it was all over with us. / 12. He said that he was ready to die for the country. Must not all die some day? (he asked). 13. Did they intend to destroy the city? (he asked). 14. Don't you think that they should have fought with men, and that women and children should have been spared? 15. Do not ask him whether he did all this at the instigation of your brother or not. 16. He maintained that the assassination of the father would not profit them until they banished the son. 17. He answered that he blushed (*pudet*) for the country that could banish a man of such ability. 18. They said that they were ready to sacrifice (*posthabeo*) their liberty to that of the nation. 19. For myself, even in-the-face-of (*in*) this great danger, I could not believe that it was all over with the army. 20. He was easily persuaded that men are valued in proportion to their public usefulness (*say: in proportion as they have deserved well of the country; p. 116, 1*). 21. He thought that we ought to attack them before they could recover their presence of mind. 22. Whenever he heard anything of the kind, he said that the story was a fiction (*use fingo*). 23. The law (he said) forbade anything to belong to anyone who refused to obey the magistrates. Let them, therefore, take away all his property from him. 24. He said that no one who was worthy of his country held such a view. Let them lay aside their fear. Would they ever have such a golden opportunity? 25. He used to say that the more hidden a danger was, the more difficulty there was in avoiding it.

§ 49. SUMMARY OF RULES FOR TURNING DIRECT INTO OBLIQUE NARRATION.

1. The following is a summary of the rules already given for *turning direct into oblique narration* :—

(1) The main verb of direct narration becomes infinitive in indirect narration.

(2) All adjectival and adverbial clauses take the subjunctive in indirect narration.

(3) Pronouns of the 1st and 2nd person usually become pronouns of the 3rd person. *E.g.* :—

ego, nos	become	se
meus, noster	"	suus
tu, vos	"	ille, illi
tuus, vester	"	illius, illorum
hic, iste	"	ille, is

(4) Adverbs of *present* time become (after a secondary tense) adverbs of *past* time. *E.g.* :—

nunc	becomes	iam, tunc
hēri (<i>yesterday</i>)	"	pridie (<i>the day before</i>)
hodie (<i>to-day</i>)	"	illo die (<i>that day</i>)
cras (<i>to-morrow</i>)	"	postridie (<i>next day</i>)

So :—Hic (*here*) becomes ibi (*there*).

(5) Imperatives become subjunctives (usually imperf. subjunctives).

(6) Rhetorical questions are expressed by the accusative and infinitive ; questions that expect an answer, by the subjunctive.

(7) A future-perfect used in a dependent clause for the English present, becomes perfect subjunctive after a primary tense, and pluperfect subjunctive after a secondary.

2. The following examples of oblique narration should be carefully studied :—

(a) *Aristotle says that there are certain animals produced which live a single day.*

(b) *As to his having unexpectedly fallen on one canton, when those who had crossed the river were not able to bear help to their comrades, he should not (i.e., let him not) on that account presume exceedingly on his valor or look down on them; that they had learned this from their fathers and ancestors, i.e., to fight with valor.*

(c) *What would happen (he asked), if he carried the law?*

(d) *Why were they living (they asked)? Why were they reckoned as citizens?*

(e) *They said that, while he was delaying, the city had been taken.*

(f) *He said that he ate to live.*

(g) *Let them go (he said) where they wished.*

(h) *Let me die (he said), if I am not glad.*

(i) *He said he would do what they wished.*

Aristotēles ait bestias quaedam nasci quae unum diem vivant.

Quod improvise unum pagum adortus esset, quum il, qui flumen transiissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnoperē virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret; se ita a patribus maioribusque suis didicisse, ut virtute contenderent.

Quid fieret si legem pertulisset? (direct=quid fiat si legem pertulero? The deliberative subjun. [24, (d)] is unchanged in indirect narration, unless in accordance with p. 20, 2).

Quid se vivere? quid cives censi? (direct=quid vivimus? quid cives censemur?)

Dixerunt urbem, dum ille moraretur, captam fuisse.

Dixit se, ut viveret, edere.

Abirent quo vellent.

Se velle mori nisi gauderet (direct=moriar nisi gaudeo, let me die, &c.).

Dixit se, quod vellent, facturum [direct=faciam quod volent, I will do what they (shall) wish].

EXERCISE XLIX.

(N.B.—Use indirect narration all through the exercise.)

1. "Go," he said, "create consuls." 2. We had all to die some day (he said). What was the use, by declining the contest and deferring the day of death, of earning the coward's reputation? 3. He told us that we ought not to wait till we ascertained whether they intended to fight or not. 4. He sent a horseman to the army to say that our hope of victory was in proportion to the speed with which we could advance (p. 118, 5). 5. He said that it was of the utmost consequence to the country what they did; let them remember the ancestors from whom they were sprung. 6. He said that one's difficulty in suspecting others was proportionate to one's own goodness. The man who had made such an assertion was impious himself. They ought to wait until they saw what the result would be. 7. Could anyone have supposed that so able a general would not have sent out scouts to ascertain the number of the enemy? 8. Let them advance (he said) and resolve that they must either conquer or die. 9. He said that he did not blush to own that he owed all his training to the literature of Greece. 10. I believe that, in pardoning enemies and aiding friends, he will out-do all of us. 11. He said that he required more men to prevent our lands from being laid waste by the enemy. 12. Consider (he said) the greatness of your debt to your ancestors. 13. What ought he to have done? (he asked). Should he have obeyed so unworthy a man as the magistrate? 14. They answered that nothing would prevent them from being put to the sword. 15. He said that he was ashamed to think that they did not see what ought to be done. 16. Do not believe that I will lose such an opportunity of seeing you. 17. Do you think that he will ever forget how much you have injured him? 18. He answered that he had not as yet learned to sacrifice the safety of the country to his own. 19. I believe that twenty years ago he gained some credit at Athens. 20. I know that all the wise are convinced of this, that a man's obstinacy is in proportion to his folly. 21. He said that their children were dead. Let them follow him and avenge them. 22. How few there are who would venture to say that he is hated by all! 23. It is said that he led the army through our territory till he reached the foot of the hill. 24. He

said that they had to carry on war with an enemy who despised treaties. Let them, therefore, refuse to believe him or trust to his promises. 25. He denied that anyone had asked how long he had stayed at Veii.

§ 50. CONDITIONAL SENTENCE IN OBLIQUE NARRATION.

1. The above rules may now be applied to turning the common types of the conditional sentence into oblique narration. The verb of the main clause becomes *acc. with inf.*, and the verb of the *if*-clause *subjunctive*, as follows :—

DIRECT.		OBLIQUE.
1. Pecuniam si habet, dat.	becomes	Dicit se, si pecuniam habet, dare.
<i>If he has money, he gives it.</i>		<i>He says that if he has money, he gives it.</i>
Pecuniam si habuit, dedit (or dabat).	"	Dicit se, si pecuniam habuerit, dedisse.
<i>If he had money, he gave it.</i>		<i>He says that if he had money, he gave it.</i>
2. (a) Pecuniam si habebit (or habuerit), dabit.	"	Dicit se, si pecuniam habebit (or habuerit), daturum esse.
<i>If he has money, he will give it.</i>		<i>He says that if he has money, he will give it.</i>
(b) Pecuniam si habeat, det.	"	Dicit se, si pecuniam habeat, daturum esse.
<i>If he should have money, he would give it.</i>		<i>He says that if he should have money, he would give it.</i>
3. (a) Pecuniam si haberet, daret.		Dicit se, si pecuniam haberet, daturum fuisse.
<i>If he had money (now), he would give it.</i>		<i>He says that if he had money (now), he would give it.</i>
(b) Pecuniam si habuisset, dedisset.	"	Dicit se, si pecuniam habuisset, daturum fuisse.
<i>If he had had money, he would have given it.</i>		<i>He says that if he had had money, he would have given it.</i>

Note 1.—The future (*habebit*) in the *if*-clause of direct narration, becomes present subjunctive (*habeat*) in the indirect, after a primary tense.

Note 2.—The present subjunctive (*det*), in the main clause, becomes future infinitive (*daturum esse*) in indirect narration.

Note 3.—The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive in the main clause (i.e., *daret* and *dedisset*), are expressed in indirect narration by the future participle with *fuisse* (i.e., *daturum fuisse*, *to have been about to give*).

2. After a secondary tense, the verb of the *if*-clause is changed in accordance with the rule for the sequence of tenses (p. 20). Thus :—

DIRECT.		OBLIQUE.	
1. Pecuniam si habet, dat.	becomes	Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet, dare.	
Pecuniam si habuit, dedit (or dabat).	"	Dixit se, si pecuniam habuisset, dedisse.	
2. (a) Pecuniam si habebit (or habuerit), dabit.	"	Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet (or habuisset), daturum esse.	
(b) Pecuniam si habeat, det.	"	Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet, daturum esse.	
3. (a) Pecuniam si haberet, daret.	"	Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet, daturum fuisse.	
(b) Pecuniam si habuisset, dedisset.	"	Dixit se, si pecuniam habuisset, daturum fuisse.	

Note 1.—The future-perfect in the *if*-clause of direct narration, becomes pluperfect subjunctive in oblique.

Note 2.—For 2 (b), the form *Dixit fore ut, si pecuniam haberet, daret*, is often found (p. 36, 9).

EXERCISE L.

(a) 1. Do you think that if anyone had suggested such a course at Rome, he would have been opposed by anyone? 2. Do not think that, if this general had been more unlucky than any of his contemporaries, he could have won such a glorious victory as this?

3. He said that, had they been (*i.e.*, if they had) in office, they would have encountered the same storms as we had.¹ 4. He said that, if the enemy once reached the top of the hill, it made no difference to anyone whether we stood our ground or fled. 5. He answered that, if we had known the extent of the danger, we would never have asserted that our army was too brave to be routed. 6. I believe that if the announcement of this victory had been made, you would hear the whole city ringing with shouts of joy and triumph. 7. Do you think that, if you had ordered the soldiers to desist from butchering the vanquished, you would have been obeyed? 8. He said that, if they had obeyed the general, they would have conquered. 9. He told them that, if they wished to have peace, he must be consulted. 10. They answered that it was of no importance to them whether they stayed or went. 11. Don't you think that, if he were here, all would be well? 12. He said that, if he were here, he would give no quarter (*use parco*). 13. He said that, if the harvest was large, the country would be rich. 14. They thought that, if we had not detained them, they would have arrived sooner. 15. If they had not put as experienced a general as yourself (p. 3, 8) at the head of the army, I believe we should have had no hope of safety. 16. I thought that, if anyone else had said this, he would not have been believed by anyone. 17. I am persuaded that, if he showed remorse for his conduct, he would be acquitted. 18. He answered that, if we knew the extent of the danger, we would not go out. 19. I always thought that, if you used your own judgment, you would do better than anyone. 20. He wrote that, if he had received the letter, he would have hastened as quickly as possible to Rome.

(b) Turn into oblique narration after *dixit*, the sentences in Exercise 47.

¹Apply, all through, the important rule of p. 127, 3.

§51. VIRTUAL OBLIQUE NARRATION. ASSIMILATION.

1. A subjunctive is frequently used in a Latin subordinate clause to express that the statement of the clause depends on some verb of *saying* understood : as,

Laudat Panaetius Africanum quod fuerit abstinens. Panaetius praises Africanus because (as he says) he was abstemious.

This elegant use of the principle of oblique narration is called *virtual oblique narration*. It is often found in a causal clause (p. 113, 2) : as,

Socrates accusatus est quod corrumperet iuventutem. Socrates was accused because (as was alleged) he was corrupting the young men. Here the subjunctive implies oblique narration.

2. Virtual oblique narration is used when a speaker quotes the word or words of some one else : as,

Frumentum, Aedui quod polliciti essent, flagitabat. He demanded from the Aedui the corn which they had promised (here the verb of the rel. clause is quoted in virtual oblique narration from the original words of the Aedui ; hence the subjun.).

Socrates execrari eum solēbat qui primus utilitatem a iure seiunxisset. Socrates used to execrate the man who first had separated expediency from right (here the fact referred to in the rel. clause is not vouched for ; it is given on the authority of Socrates).

3. The verb of a subordinate clause, when depending upon a verb in the subjunctive, is itself often put in the subjunctive. This is called *assimilation* : as,

Concedit ut absim cum aliquid agatur. He allows me to be away when something is going on (*agatur* is assimilated to the mood of *absim*).

Erat in eo memoria tanta ut, quae commentatus esset, verbis eisdem redderet quibus cogitavisset. There was in him such power of memory that ideas he had excogitated, he reproduced in the same words in which he had thought them out (the verbs of the two rel. clauses are assimilated to the mood of *redderet*).

4. Verbs of *saying* and *thinking* are not inserted parenthetically into a sentence in Latin. Thus :

You were, he said, mistaken. Dixit te errare.

He has, you think, gone away. Putas eum abiisse.

Note.—Phrases like *ut aiunt* (*as they say*), *ut opinor* (*as I think*), *ut puto* (*as I fancy*), are, however, found.

5. *Inquit*, *he says* or *said*, is the only verb of *saying* that is never used to introduce oblique narration. It is always used in quoting the exact words of another and it is placed after the first two or three words of the quotation : as,

At Caesar: "Minime vero," inquit, "hoc probo." But Caesar said: "*I by no means approve of this.*"

6. *Credo*, *I believe*, is sometimes used parenthetically, but always in an ironical sense : as,

Credo, etiam tabulae proferentur. The account-books, *I suppose*, will even be produced.

EXERCISE LI.

1. They accused him of having (as they alleged) betrayed the king (*use quod*). 2. He used to walk at night because (as was said) he could not sleep. 3. He gave me all the books which (as he said) his father had left him. 4. He demands that you should remove this scruple which (as he says) is goading him day and night (*pl.*) 5. When he had reached the top of the hill, he pointed out streams which (he said) flowed towards Italy. 6. Cato used to wonder that a soothsayer did not laugh whenever he saw a soothsayer. 7. He sent them another king since the one that had been given them was useless. 8. You complain that we do not hold the same views. 9. He passed a law concerning the murder which (as he said) had been committed (*facio*). 10. Avail yourself of this blessing while you have it (*subjun.*). 11. The person who saw it (*subjun.*) would wonder. 12. He begged them, since they had not helped him in his life-time, not to leave his death unavenged. 13. This man—so they tell me—was born rich. 14. He said that, if the Romans made peace with him, he would remain where they

ordered him to remain. 15. When I do it, I shall return to Rome. 16. He, I believe, will quickly recover. 17. Thereupon the other (ille) said: "All this I will do." 18. Ask him whether he expects ever to be rich by sacrificing his own interests to those of his friends. 19. At your suggestion they were persuaded to set out to the attack upon our camp, without waiting for a guide. 20. If he did this, I would show my gratitude; if not, it would be of small consequence to me. 21. It is not easy to say whether this man should be spared by us or thrown into prison. 22. To my complaint that he had broken his word, he replied that he had done nothing of the kind. 23. At your suggestion, they attacked and stormed the camp. 24. Fearing for the safety of his father, he fled to me in Italy. 25. The announcement of this victory filled the city with shouting and singing. 26. It is difficult to see how he could have gained the battle by withdrawing his troops. 27. Don't you think that he felt shame and remorse for esteeming so highly such a wicked man as Catiline? 28. If they had defeated our army and captured this city, not a soul would be alive to-day. 29. When the soldiers had reached the summit of the mountain, they congratulated the general upon the conquest of Italy (use *quod+vb.*) 30. I believe that, if he had made the same mistake as you, he would long ago have repented of it. 31. After saluting the general of the enemy, he rode rapidly away without waiting for anyone.

§52. ON SOME SPECIAL IDIOMS OF LATIN SYNTAX.

"Without" and a Participial Noun.

1. The ablative of the gerund can not be joined with *sine*, the usual preposition for *without*. Phrases, therefore, like *Without injuring himself, without your perceiving it, &c.*, must be paraphrased into some synonymous form of words, and this turned into Latin. Thus:

He aids others without injuring himself. Allis subvenit, non sibi nocens.

I did it without your perceiving it. Hoc feci, te non sentiente.

They condemn him without hearing him. Eum damnant inauditum.

He cries without feeling grief. Flet nec dolet.

He never led out his army without examining the position of the ground. Nunquam exercitum eduxit nisi explorato locorum situ.

He speaks without persuading anyone. Dicit nec cuiquam persuadet.

We returned without accomplishing anything. Re infecta rediimus.

Those cannot fall without these falling with them. Cadere illa non possunt ut haec non concidant.

To think of my going away without saying good-bye to anyone! Mene abisse, nullo salutato! See p. 58, 15.

2. It has been seen (p. 31, 3; note 1) that the fut. subj. act. is formed from the fut. participle with *sim*, which becomes *essem* after a secondary tense. Therefore :

They are so terrified that they will not fight is Adeo territi sunt ut non pugnaturi sint.

They were so terrified that they would not fight. Adeo territi erant ut non pugnaturi essent (*would*, here, is simply the historical tense of *will*.)

"WOULD HAVE" IN A DEPENDENT CLAUSE.

3. *Would have* (of the main clause of a conditional sentence) when inserted in a dependent clause that already requires the subjunctive, is not to be turned by the pluperf. subj., but by the periphrastic conjugation. Thus :

I did not doubt that he would have taken the city. Non dubitavi quin urbem capturus fuerit. (consecutive sequence ; p. 14, 3).

I ask you what you would have done. Rogo te quid facturus fueris.

So great was the slaughter that you would not have survived. Tanta caedes fuit ut non superfuturus fueris.

And so in the passive:

Therefore it happens that, if I had given the order, a disaster would have been sustained. Eo fit ut, hoc si iussissem, clades accipienda fuerit (or accipi potuerit).

Note.—These examples show the Roman fondness for strict adherence to rule. They chose a form which would express (a) that the clause was conditional; (b) that it was consecutive, or an indirect question, etc. (*i.e.* a double dependence).

4. *Would have been* (in the main clause of an ordinary conditional sentence) requires in oblique narration the periphrasis *futurum fuisse ut (to have been about to be)*: as,

He said that, if life could have been longer, it would have been adorned with many arts. Dixit, si vita longinquior esse potuisset, futurum fuisse ut multis artibus ornaretur (dir. = ornata esset).

This periphrasis is also used (a) in the active, when a verb has no supine; (b) for the sake of variety, when there is no necessity for it: as,

(a) *I had hoped that this would have happened. Speraveram futurum fuisse ut id contingeret.*

(b) *I know that we should have taken the city, if he had not been there. Scio futurum fuisse ut urbem caperemus nisi ille adfuisset.*

5. Certain idiomatic uses of the *si*-clause deserve notice. Thus:

(a) *Exspectabat si hostem elicere posset. He was waiting in the hope that he could draw out the enemy (here the si-clause is in virtual oblique narration = determined that, if he could draw the enemy out, he would fight them).*

(b) *Mortem mihi denuntiavit si pugnavissem. He threatened me with death in case I fought (here the main clause of the conditional sentence is contained in mortem = si pugnaveris, moriēre).*

(c) *Nuntium ad te misi si forte non audisses. I sent a messenger to you, in case you had not heard (here the si-clause expresses purpose and therefore has the subjun. = that you might hear).*

6. *Coepti* means both *I begin* and *I began*. The active form is used when an active infinitive follows : as,

Urbem aedificare coepit. He began to build the city.

The passive form, *coeptus sum*, is used when a passive infinitive follows : as,

Urbs aedificari coepta est. The city began to be built.

7. Other common ways of turning *although*, beside those mentioned, may be given. Thus :

Though he is a good man, he sometimes sins

(a) *Ita est vir optimus ut interdum peccet* (*i.e.*, on this condition he is a good man, that, etc.; restrictive use).

(b) *Vir sane optimus est, sed tamen peccat* (usual concessive force of *sane*, *no doubt, if you will*).

(c) *Licet vir optimus sit, tamen peccat* (*licet, it is granted, though*).

8. For the present participle pass. (if required), a relative clause may usually be employed : as,

The accused is rich. Is, qui accusatur, vir dives est.

9. For the future participle passive, a periphrasis must be found : as,

Caesar, when about to be killed, etc. Caesar, quum in eo esset ut periret (or iam periturus) &c.

EXERCISE LII.

1. They poured round in the hope of finding some means of approach. 2. I believe that, if this had been said, it would have been heard. 3. You will find out, when you come. 4. Had he done so, there is no doubt that he would have done it to the public disadvantage (*abl.*) 5. He tried in the hope of helping us. 6. Why was he exempted from the law, in case he should be absent from the city? 7. The enemy were waiting, in the hope that we would cross. 8. There is no doubt that, if I had ordered it, you would have done it. 9. There was no doubt that, if he had not been there, the city would have been taken. 10. If it had been

right, you were the one (*talis*) who would have done it. 11. Nothing shall happen without my giving you notice. 12. He went away without consulting anyone. 13. I never visit you without coming away more learned. 14. All this he did without your approval. 15. He never saw him without flinging a stone at him. 16. He could not have condemned him without hearing him (say *unheard*). 17. He returned to Rome without waiting for the army. 18. I believe that if they had delayed a day, the city would have been destroyed. 19. The storm was so great that the fleet would not set sail. 20. You showed on that day how you would have behaved, if you had been there. 21. It came (p. 38, 2) to this (*eo*, *thither*) that, if they had had a high-spirited enemy, they would have been defeated. 22. There is no doubt that, if enough daylight (*dies*) had remained, they would have been stripped of their camp. 23. Ask them what they would have done, if the enemy had come to the city. 24. He was so able that he would have been chosen, if he had been in a private station (*privatus*). 25. You showed what kind of magistrate you would have been. 26. There is no doubt that the enemy would have turned their backs. 27. They rushed from the temple with such speed that they would have filled the city with tumult. 28. He said that he had received the thanks of parliament because he had not despaired of the country. 29. Whether it is constitutional or not may be questioned ; but whether it is or not, it is approved of by all patriots. 30. I shall advise him to go from Rome to Athens and to remain there three months. 31. He told us that the man would have recovered, if the doctor had not arrived too late. 32. The besieged (p. 142, 8) were not altogether without water.

§53. NOTES ON THE NUMERALS.

1. Cardinal numerals are indeclinable except (1) *ūnus*, *one* ; *dūo*, *two* ; *trēs*, *three* ; (2) the hundreds, beginning with *dūcenti*, *two hundred* ; (3) the plural of *mille*, *a thousand*.

2. *Mille*, *a thousand*, is indeclinable in the singular, but in the plural it is declined.

Note.—*Mille*, in the singular, may be either an adjective or a noun with the word depending on it in the genitive: as, *Mille hōmīnes* or *mille hōmīnum*, *a thousand men*. In the plural it is always a noun: as, *Decem millia hōmīnum*, *ten thousand men* (=ten thousand of men).

3. Compound numbers like 21, 22, &c., when between 20 and 100, are written *ūnus et viginti*, *duo et viginti*, or *viginti unus*, *viginti duo*, &c.

Above *one hundred*, the greater number precedes (with or without *et*): as, *Dūcenti unus*, or *dūcenti et unus*, *two hundred and one*. *Et* is rarely expressed: as,

Caesar Gallorum duo millia quingentos sex cepit. Caesar captured 2,506 Gauls.

4. *First, second, third*, in enumerations, is *unus, alter, tertius*: as, *Ex quibus generibus, unum est ex iis qui...., alterum ex iis, &c. Of these classes the first consists of those who... the second of those, etc.*

5. The ordinals are used in expressing dates: as,

Anno post urbem conditam septingentesimo quinquagesimo quarto natus est Christus. Christ was born 754 years after the foundation of the city.

A.D. millesimo octingentesimo octogesimo tertio = A.D. 1883.

Anno urbis conditæ quinquagesimo quarto. In the 54th year of the building of the city (i.e. the beginning of the Roman era; subtract from 754 for year B.C.).

Quota hora est? Hora, prima, secunda, tertia, &c. What hour is it? Seven, eight, nine o'clock, etc. (i.e., reckoning from sun-rise at six o'clock; time was measured by a sun-dial).

6. The distributive numerals are used:—

(a) To express our *so many at a time, so many each*, with a cardinal numeral: as, *Puëris binos libros dōnāvit. He gave the boys two books apiece.*

(b) To express multiplication: as, *Bis bina quattuor sunt. Twice two are four.*

(c) With substantives that have no singular or a different meaning in the singular and plural, respectively : as, *Bina castra*, *two camps*. *Castrum* is *a fort*; *duo castra*, would mean *two forts*.

Note 1.—In that case the plural of *unus* is used for singular: as, *Ex unis duas mihi conficies nuptias*. *You will make for me two weddings out of one*.

Note 2.—When the distributives are used with a numeral adverb, they have the force of cardinals : as,

Ter deni, *thrice ten*; *vicies centena*, *two thousand*.

7. *Mille* and *sescenti* (*six hundred*) are used to express an indefinitely large number : as,

Nonne millies mori satius est? *Is it not better to die a thousand times?* (i.e., *deaths*.)

Sescentas epistolas uno tempore accepi. *I received a thousand letters at one time*.

8. Fractions with 1 for the numerator are expressed by an ordinal with *pars*: as,

Tertia pars, $\frac{1}{3}$; *centesima pars*, $\frac{1}{100}$ (=1 per cent.); *millesima pars*, $\frac{1}{1000}$. *Dimidium*, however, is $\frac{1}{2}$.

9. Where the numerator is one less than the denominator, the cardinals with *partes* are used : as,

Duae partes, $\frac{2}{3}$; *tres partes*, $\frac{3}{4}$.

Tres quintae is $\frac{3}{5}$; *quattuor septimae*, $\frac{4}{7}$; *decumae* (*tenths*), *tithes*.

Dimidio plures, *half as many again* (=more by half); *duplo plures*, *double as many*; *alterum tantum*, *half as much again*.

10. *In the first place, in the second place, in the next place, lastly* is *primo, deinde, tum, postremo*.

EXERCISE LIII.

1. One camp seemed now made out of two.
2. His wine was guarded with a hundred keys.
3. The Lacedaemonians have now been living seven hundred years with one set-of-customs (*more*s).
4. I heard that he had a thousand horsemen in that place.
5. Have

you heard that he arrived at three o'clock? 6. If he had given that order, I believe that 1200 good men would have been lost. 7. So great was the slaughter the 12,422 of our men were slain. 8. The towers were carried up to 120 feet each. 9. He was born in the year 1889. 10. Let us ask him what he would have done with only 220 horsemen. 11. Speaking thus, he sent forward more than 1000 men (*p. 77, 4*). 12. I believe that he has surrounded the city with five camps. 13. Out of 100,000 citizens, no one came to his aid. 14. I almost think that as many are missing as have been killed. 15. So reasonable was your request (say : *such just things you asked*) that it would have been spontaneously (*ultro*) granted. 16. Seeing that the forces of the enemy were too numerous to be routed in a single engagement, he resolved to prepare for a protracted war. 17. If we had remained for more than six months at Rome, we should not have been able to see anyone when we returned to Athens. 18. It was most fortunate for me, fighting in spite of your opposition (*abl. abs.*), that I gained the victory without the loss of a single soldier. 19. Your friends were persuaded to condemn these men to death. By pardoning them now, you will show that you blush (*use pudet*) for such cruelty. 20. Do not be angry with anyone without some cause. 21. We must admit that he gained much credit by amassing wealth and aiding the poor. 22. Whenever summer began, he used to go to Athens. 23. Are you not ashamed and penitent for the desertion of your friend? 24. In proportion to a man's apparent meanness, will be his severity in pronouncing judgment. 25. Can we doubt that the universe is administered by divine wisdom? 26. He said that we would make our style (*oratio*) more copious (*plenus*) by reading his books. 27. Is anything good which does not make its possessor (*rel.*) good? 28. Thereupon, after saluting the general, he rode away, without anyone answering him. 29. Throwing themselves at the king's feet, they begged him not to destroy them. 30. Nor should we listen to those who tell us that we ought to be angry with children. 31. Let us ask him how he lived both at Veii and at Rome, and when he set out from Utica for Carthage. 32. He said that it was of the utmost importance what steps they took. Let them wake up (*expergiscor*) at last and follow him.

§ 54. THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

1. The days of the month at Rome were reckoned backwards from three points of the month called respectively **Kalendae**, **Nōnae**, and **Id-us** (-uūm).

2. The word **Kalendae** is derived from the old Latin **calo**, *I call*. It was the day on which the new moon was proclaimed, i.e., *the first of the month*.

Idus (from root *vid*, *to divide*) was the name given to the 13th of eight of the months, and to the 15th of the other four :

In March, July, October, May,
The Ides were on the fifteenth day.

The **Nones** (or *ninth*s) was the name given to the 5th of eight of the months, and to the 7th of the other four :

In March, July, October, May,
The Nones were on the seventh day.

The word **Nona**e or **Nones** is derived from **nonus** (*ninth*), being according to the inclusive Roman method of counting, "the ninth day before the Ides." The Romans, in counting the days before a particular date, counted in both the day from which they reckoned and the day to which they reckoned. Thus the Ides of March were on the 15th and, therefore, the Nones (*i.e.*, the 9th day before the Ides) fell on the 7th, counting in both the 15th and the 7th.

3. The names of the twelve Roman months are as follows :

Ianuarius, **Februarius**, **Martius**, **Aprilis**, **Maius**, **Iunius**, **Iulius** (or **Quintilis**), **Augustus** (or **Sextilis**), **September**, **October**, **November**, **December**.

These names are all adjectival and are used in agreement with the names (given above) of the divisions of the month. Each month had the same number of days as at present.

4. *On the third day before the Ides of March*, would naturally be **Tertio die ante Idus Martias** (p. 85, 1). This form, however, is not found, but, instead of it, the strange corruption **Ante diem tertium Idus Martias** (the preposition being regarded, apparently, as governing *diem* instead of *Idus*).

Thus : *On the third day before the Ides of March.* Ante diem tertium Idus Martias, or, as usually written, A. d. iii Id. Mart.

Note.—Instead of the above, the form iii Id. Mart. is also found.

5. To translate :—

We shall expect you on March 11th. Find how many days before the Ides (or 15th) the 11th falls, and add 1, in accordance with the inclusive method of the Romans. Thus $15 - 11 = 4$; and adding 1, the 11th of March is *the 5th day before the Ides of March.* (The days, according to Roman ideas, were these : the 15th, 14th, 13th, 12th, 11th, i.e., *five*). Therefore : *We shall expect you on March 11th* is A. d. v. Id. Mart. te expectabimus.

For convenience, it is better to add the 1 before subtracting; thus : $15 + 1 - 11 = 5$.

I was present on August 3rd. A. d. iii. Non. Aug. adful (date of Nones of August = the 5th ; $5 + 1 - 3 = 3$).

He was born Sept. 23rd. Natus est a. d. ix. Kal. Oct. ($32 - 23 = 9$; 30 days in Sept. + 1 in Oct. + 1, for the Roman method).

He died on the 3rd of June. A. d. iii. Non. Iun. mortuus est (Nones on 5th ; $6 - 3 = 3$).

I spoke in the Senate on October 21st. A. d. xli. Kal. Nov. in Senatu dixi ($31 + 2 - 21 = 12$).

6. The day immediately before the Kalends, Nones, or Ides is called pridie: as,

On the 14th March. Pridie Id. Mart. (acc.); *Dec. 31st,* prid. Kal. Ian.

7. The phrase ante diem came to be regarded as an indeclinable noun, and was joined with a preposition : as,

He invited me to dinner for Nov. 16th. In a. d. xvi Kal. De me in coenam invitavit.

8. In leap-year the Romans intercalated a day between the 25th and the 26th of February : i.e., between a. d. vi. Kal. Mart. and a. d. vii. Kal. Mart. The day inserted was called bissextus (i.e., *the 6th twice*) because the 6th day before the Kalends was reckoned twice. Leap-year was called annus bisextilis.

Thus : A. d. bisextum Kal. Mart. pugnatum est. *The battle was fought on the intercalary day in February.*

EXERCISE LIV.

1. I believe that the man died on the 7th of June. 2. The city began to be blockaded (p. 142, 6) on the 8th of May. 3. He remained at Rome from the 3rd of August till September 8th. 4. Did you hear that he left for home on the 20th of March? 5. Shall you be here on April 13th? 6. The Senate was called together for the 21st of November. 7. He promised that he would pay on the Greek Kalends. 8. If he had arrived by (ad) the 28th of June, he would have been safe. 9. Don't you think that, if he had been killed on the 2nd of June, we should have heard of it by this? 10. On the 5th of May, at sunrise, he led out the 5th and 7th legions to (qui) attack the enemy in the rear. 11. O! that he had been in Rome on the 5th of December. 12. I believe that he did not start for Rome till the 10th of April—a circumstance that he regretted to the last day of his life. 13. I believe that he went to Rome that winter on April 22nd, and remained there twenty days. 14. I heard that he stayed at Lucca from March 3rd until April 21st, and that then he crossed from Lucca to Athens. 15. I understood that he had denied again and again having promised to pay you at Tibur on May 17th, 1894. 16. We have been expecting you since April 10th. 17. I believe that he would have set out on July 14th. 18. They have ordained a thanksgiving from the 11th to the 20th of October. 19. You promised to stay with me on May 21st. 20. Instead of joining his father at Rome on the last day of August, he preferred to linger a whole month in the beautiful city of Athens. 21. In the battle of Cannae (*Cannensis*) more than 46,000 Romans fell. 22. I think that he has already reigned six years (p. 34, 3). 23. It is said that Homer flourished before the foundation of Rome. 24. The town was besieged from the 14th of March till the 15th of May. 25. Let us ask him whether he will come to Rome on December 4th. 26. Have you not heard that he gained the victory without the loss of a single man? 27. All this he did at my suggestion, without hoping for any reward. 28. I did not know when they intended to come to our assistance. 29. Will anything prevent those standing near from ridiculing us? 30. Don't you think that, if he had remained at Aricia six months, the town would have been saved?

§55. ROMAN CURRENCY.

1. The following is the table of Roman money true for the last two centuries, approximately, of the Republic :

1 as = $\frac{1}{2}$ d. (1 cent).

4 asses = 1 sesterlius = 2d (4 cents).

4 sestertii (16 asses) = 1 denarius = 8d (16 cents).

25 denarii (100 sestertii or 400 asses) = 1 aureus = 17s (over \$4).

The as was a copper coin; the sesterce and denarius, silver; and the aureus, gold.

2. The following table of approximate values is useful, and easily remembered :—

1,000 sestertii	=	£8 10s (over \$40).
10,000	"	= £85
100,000	"	= £850
1,000,000	"	= £8,500

3. The sesterce* was the common unit for expressing sums of money at Rome.

It was used as follows :—

(a) Up to 2,000, the ordinary numeral adjectives were used with sestertius : as,

Centum sestertii a hundred sesterces; undeni sestertii, eleven sesterces each.

(b) Above 2,000 and up to a million, the neut. plur. sestertia was used for the thousands : as,

Triginta quinque sestertia. Thirty-five thousand sesterces.

Sestertia tria et quadringenti octoginta sestertii = 3,480 sesterces.

Sestertia unum et triginta et quingenti sexaginta sestertii = 31,560 sesterces.

* Sestertius is derived from semis (half) and tertius (third), i.e., the third a half = $2\frac{1}{3}$; hence it is often written HS (ii semis). It was originally worth $2\frac{1}{3}$ asses.

(c) For a million and sums above a million, the numeral adverbs were used with *one hundred thousand sesterces*. Thus :

Decies centena millia sestertium (for *sestertiorum*). *One million sesterces* (lit., *ten times one hundred thousand sesterces*).

Vicies centena millia sestertium. *Two million sesterces*.

Quadrāgies, etc. *Four million sesterces*.

But, for the sake of brevity, each of the above was written without the *centena millia*. Thus : *Decies sestertium*, *vicies sestertium* etc., or *HS decies*, *HS vicies*, etc.

(d) When a sum requires more than one numeral adverb to express it, the numerals must be added together if the larger stands first, but multiplied if the smaller stands first : as,

Millies quingenties sestertium. *One hundred and fifty millions*.

Ter vicies sestertium. *Six million sesterces* ($= 3 \times 20 \times 100,000$).

(e) If the sum was written in figures, thousands were denoted by a line over the figure, hundreds of thousands by top and side lines. Thus :

HS [XXII] XXXVCCCCXVII = *vicies ducenta triginta quinque millia quādringenti decem et septem nummi* = 2,235,417 *sesterces*.

Note.—*Nummus* (a coin) is frequently used instead of *sestertius*.

(f) The genitive plural *sestertium*, used in expressing large sums, is sometimes treated as a neuter noun and declined : as,

Syngrapha sestertii centiens facta est. *A bond of 10,000,000 sesterces was drawn up*.

In vicies sestertio splendide se gessit. *He kept up great state on a fortune of two millions*.

EXERCISE LV.

1. He paid a debt to the amount of (ad) 800,000 sesterces.
2. He will lend you 10,000 sesterces each.
3. I believe that he took away from them forty millions of sesterces.
4. There was no doubt that he borrowed 600,000 sesterces.
5. He kept up greater state with a fortune of five millions than we did.
6. Can you call

him a miser who was willing to throw away (*perdo*) twenty millions of sesterces? 7. He restored gold and silver to the amount of ten millions. 8. He ordered 640,000 to be carried to your house; I believe he draws from his estates 600,000 sesterces. 9. He hired a house for six thousand sesterces (*abl.*). 10. He left less than two hundred thousand sesterces. 11. He promised to pay me \$65,000 at Rome on March 21st. 12. I believe he still owed them 1,800,000 sesterces on January 3rd. 13. If you had been there, you would have received 1,036,696 sesterces. 14. If six or seven thousand sesterces are wanting (*desunt*) to make up (*ad*) the four hundred thousand, you shall be a plebeian. 15. If he had been a rich man, the \$50,000 would have been paid. 16. Do you think he will give a hundred millions of sesterces for this villa? 17. Tell me how he can buy it for less than twenty thousand sesterces. 18. I have bought an estate at forty millions. 19. On the 14th of March he will pay you 110,000 sesterces. 20. Give them sixty sesterces each. 21. How few there are who would venture to say that he wished to be hated by all! 22. And no one knew why he was envied. 23. He asked where the seven hundred millions was which was in the account-books. 24. It is difficult to see how he could have gained the battle by withdrawing his troops. 25. Fearing for his safety, he fled to me at Rome. 26. At your suggestion, they attacked and stormed the camp. 27. He said that, if had not received your letter, it would have been all over with him. 28. If he had not consulted the interest of the country, he would never have been forgiven. 29. Let us advance rather than retreat. 30. It was of the utmost consequence to us that a general of such high ability as this should be at the head of the army. 31. He is more generous than well-born. 32. Whatever his poverty, he will give you something.

§56. WEIGHTS AND MEASURES. INTEREST.

1. The word *As* (Greek *εἰς*) was used to express any unit, and it was divided into twelve parts (*unciae*) to express twelfths of the unit.

The names of these divisions should be noted.

DIVISIONS OF THE AS.

As (the unit).

Deunx, gen. -*uncis* (de-*uncia*=one ounce off)= $\frac{11}{12}$.

Dextans, -*antis* (de-*sextans*=a sixth off)= $\frac{5}{12}$ or $\frac{5}{6}$.

Dōdrans, -*antis* (de-*quadrans*=a fourth off)= $\frac{9}{12}$ or $\frac{3}{4}$.

Bes, *bessis* (bis-as?)= $\frac{8}{12}$ = $\frac{2}{3}$.

Septunx, -*uncis* (septem-*uncia*)= $\frac{7}{12}$.

Sēmis or *semissis*, gen. *semissis* (semi-as, a half as)= $\frac{6}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{2}$.

Quincunx, -*uncis* (quinque-*uncia*)= $\frac{5}{12}$.

Triens, -*entis* (tres)= $\frac{4}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{3}$.

Quadrans, -*antis* (quattuor)= $\frac{3}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$.

Sextans, -*antis* (sex)= $\frac{2}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{6}$.

Uncia= $\frac{1}{12}$.

Note 1.—Of the above divisions, *semis*, *triens*, *quadrans*, and *sextans* were used as coins.

Note 2.—Both *inch* and *ounce* are derived from *uncia*.

2. These divisions were used for dividing into twelfths any unit like *iugerum* (an acre), *pes* (a foot), *libra* (a pound): as,

Arare semissem iugeri. To plough half an acre.

Obeliscus centum viginti quinque pedum et dodrantis. An obelisk 125 $\frac{3}{4}$ feet high.

Tres librae cum semisse. 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ pounds.

3. They were commonly used also in bequests: as,

Heres ex asse. Heir to the whole estate.

Heres ex semisse. Heir to half the estate.

Heres ex uncia. Heir to one-twelfth.

4. They were used to express not only fractions whose denominator was 12, but many mixed numbers : as,

Quartus quadrans, $3\frac{1}{4}$ (i.e., *the fourth number a fourth*).

Semis tertius, $2\frac{1}{2}$. Semis sextus, $5\frac{1}{2}$.

Lignum bessem alterum (or bessem alterum latum). *A log 20 inches in diameter (i.e., the second $\frac{2}{3} = 1\frac{2}{3}$).*

5. The same divisions were used for reckoning interest (*usurae*, *fenus*), which was due monthly. Thus :

Asses usurae (*units interest, i.e., one a month for the use of a hundred*), *twelve per cent. per annum*. It was also called *centesima usurae* (i.e., *the hundredth interest*), because in one hundred months a sum equal to the principal (*sors*) would have been paid.

The following table gives the Latin for interest from 1 to 12% :

		% per annum.
Asses	} usurae	12
Deunces		11 (i.e., $1\frac{1}{2}$ per month).
Dextantes		10
Dodrantes		9
Besses		8
Septunces		7
Semisses		6
Quincunces		5
Trientes		4
Quadrantes		3
Sextantes		2
Unciae		1

So too : *Binae centesimae*, 24% per annum ; *ternae centesimae*, 36% per annum, etc. Thus :

Pecuniam assibus usuris collocavit. He invested money at 12%.

Dodrantibus usuris grandem pecuniam apud eum collocavit. He placed a large sum of money in his hands at 9%.

EXERCISE LVI.

1. His height was five feet nine. 2. He made him heir to three-fourths of his estate. 3. You could have been heir to seven-twelfths of his estate. 4. He has left me fifteen million sesterces, which is nearly two-thirds of his estate. 5. I have been waiting for him half an hour. 6. If he had begun then, one-third of an acre would have been ploughed now. 7. It is said that he jumped twelve feet and a quarter. 8. The hill, I believe, was 252 feet 3 inches high. 9. Two acres and a half (*pl.*) have been assigned to each. 10. The will assigns to each three acres and seven-twelfths. 11. I shall borrow \$40,000 from him on the 1st at 5 %. 12. I hear the boy's height is 5 ft. 10 in. 13. I understand that the interest will be reduced (*redigo*) from 11 to 5 %. 14. He has lost five-sixths of his money. 15. He paid them \$10,000 on May 21st. 16. He gave one man three hundred sesterces, another three thousand. 17. Can anyone plough an acre and a third a day? 18. He left a small sum with me at 4 %. 19. I believe the tree was five and a half feet high. 20. Could anyone have been willing to pay interest at 48 % per annum? 21. They will tell us that, having saluted the general of the enemy, he rode back to the camp to finish the work. 22. Even if anyone had ordered them to remain until our sailors came up to their aid, they would have left immediately. 23. No doubt he was most deserving of death, but he ought to have been spared when he asked for pardon. 24. Did you think that he would gain much glory by killing women and children? 25. You should have answered that you intended to hand over the bridge to them to guard. 26. On receipt of the letter, he dismissed the messenger; then, seizing a spear, he prepared to defend himself. 27. He used to say that many evils happened to all of us. 28. I knew that our house would not sell at as high a figure as we bought it at. 29. To my complaint that he had injured his country, he answered that, if he had done so, he would pay the penalty. 30. Fearing this, Caesar led our his men and, in spite of my opposition, attacked the enemy's camp. 31. He used to say that, if he could do such a thing at Rome, he would have done it at Athens also. 32. On the 27th of September he told me that he was tired of war; that he had won glory enough by destroying armies and capturing cities.

§ 57. LATIN IDIOM IN THE USE OF WORDS.

1. Hitherto, attention has been drawn almost altogether to the difference between English and Latin in point of grammatical construction; the words used to illustrate the rules of syntax have been, as far as possible, such as occur in both languages. None but the simplest English, however, can be turned word for word into Latin, and care and thought will always be necessary, apart altogether from a knowledge of syntax rules, in order to obtain the proper form (*i.e.*, the right words) in which to express in Latin even ordinary English ideas.

2. DICTIONARIES.—And here it may be remarked that, though the study and verification in the Latin Lexicon of the use of words is of the greatest value, the use of the English-Latin Dictionary should be discouraged; it should be restricted, as far as possible, to turning up the names of things not commonly mentioned in the authors read. Compared to English, Latin has a small vocabulary, and many words of common occurrence in English have no corresponding *words* in Latin. The idea must be caught from the English and expressed in the Latin form. For example: *I believe in the existence of God*, is not to be expressed by *Credo in Dei existentia*; there is no such word in classical Latin as *existentia*. Knowing that Latin avoids abstract nouns, and changing the noun into a verb, we get *Credo Deum esse*, which is shorter, simpler, and more forcible than the English, and could not be got out of the English-Latin Dictionary. It can not, in fact, be too often repeated, that it is the English *idea*, and not the English *word*, that is to be expressed in Latin; the English form must, as a usual thing, be entirely re-cast.

3. IDIOMATIC TRANSLATION.—No exercise can be better for showing and impressing the great difference between the two languages in this respect than the constant translating of Latin authors into adequate and idiomatic English. For example:

Occisus Caesar multis pulcherrimum facinus videbatur. The assassination of Caesar seemed to many a very glorious deed.

Regnatum est Romae a condita urbe ad liberatam annos ducentos quadraginta quattuor. Kings reigned at Rome two hundred

and forty-four years, dating from the foundation of the city to its liberation.

Infelicissime pugnatum est. A most disastrous battle has been fought.

Rem prope prolapsam restituit. He restored what was almost a lost cause. And so on.

Such practice extends the student's knowledge of Latin vocabulary and cultivates close observation, without which no intimate acquaintance with Latin idiom can be acquired. It is only from the careful study of the Latin authors that such acquaintance is gained.

THE ABSTRACT NOUN.

4. Certain differences in English and Latin idiom in the use of language have been already pointed out, and may be re-stated here :

(a) Latin often uses the indirect question where English uses an abstract or verbal noun : as,

Illud quaeritur unde hoc periculum ortum sit. The question is what is the source of the danger.

Read § 17 again, and observe generally that Latin uses few abstract or verbal nouns.

(b) Latin often uses an impersonal verb (especially of motion) to express an English noun and verb : as,

Pugnatum est, a battle was fought; clamatum est, a shout was raised; ad arma concurritur, there is a rush to arms (see p. 38, 2).

So too : *Huius rei eum poenituit. This thing filled him with remorse (p. 66, 3).*

(c) An English verbal noun may often be turned by changing it into a verb : as,

Tecum pugnāt, he is in conflict with you; hoc respondet, he makes this reply; haec praecepit, these were his maxims; hoc fremebat vulgus, such was the popular cry; multa cogitat, his thoughts are many; quid mentitus est? what falsehood has he told? occurrebat ei, the thought occurred to him (see p. 38, 5).

(d) The present participle is often used for an English abstract noun : as,

Mihi quærenti, to my complaint ; te repugnante, in spite of your opposition ; indignantium voces, expressions of indignation (see p. 48, 6).

(e) The perfect participle passive is often used in Latin for an English abstract or verbal noun : as,

Propter classem amissam condemnatus est. He was condemned for the loss of the fleet.

Post expulsum filium. After the expulsion of the son (see p. 50, 14, and p. 52, 4, 5.)

(f) A noun-clause introduced by **quod** will often take the place of an English noun : as,

Mihi gratum est quod venisti. The fact of your coming is pleasing to me.

Idcirco adful quod ei subvenire volui. The reason of my presence was my wish to aid him.

Quod ei subveni mihi iucundum est. The reflection that I aided him is delightful to me (see p. 99, 6, 7).

(g) The comparative adverbial clause will often take the place of an English noun and preposition : as,

Feci perinde ac debui. I have acted in accordance with my duty.

Poenas persolvit, perinde ac meritis est. He was punished in accordance with his deserts (see p. 116).

(h) The genitive is used to express the English *task, duty, custom, characteristic, mark, token* : as, **Iudicis est sequi verum, it is the duty of a judge to follow the truth** (literally : *to follow the truth is of, i.e., belongs to a judge*) ; **hoc est praeceptoris, this is the business of an instructor** ; **sapientis est res adversas aequo animo ferre, it is the characteristic of a wise man to bear adversity with resignation** (literally : *with an even mind*). See p. 59, 2.

Note.—With possessive pronouns, this genitive is not used, but the neuter of the corresponding possessive adjective : as, **Tuum (not tui est) vidēre, it is your duty to see.**

To these may be added the following :

(i) The Latin infinitive will often supply the place of an abstract noun : as,

Humanum est errare. Error is human.

Liberius dicere mihi non licuit. Greater freedom of speech was not allowed me. So too: *Beate vivere, happiness* (also, *beata vita*); *felicem esse, success* (lit., *to be lucky*).

(j) A dependent adverbial clause may frequently be used to turn an English abstract noun : as,

Hoc malum ut vitaret, ablit. For the avoidance of this evil, he went away.

Hoc accidit dum abfui (or me absente). This occurred in my absence. And, generally speaking, it may be said that Latin avoids the abstract noun and prefers to use the verb instead.

(k) A relative clause may be used to turn an English noun in *-er* or *-or*, expressing an agent : as,

Qui patrem meum interfecerunt. My father's murderers.

Qui videbant ea, flebant. The spectators wept.

Note.—Nouns in *-tor* or *-sor* (expressing an agent), are common in Latin ; but the relative clause in this sense is usual.

EXERCISE LVII.

(*In doing the exercise avoid the use of abstract nouns.*)

1. Will he prefer life to death? 2. He was angry, I believe, with the by-standers. 3. He was better than any of his predecessors on the throne (use *regno, to reign*). 4. During your presence, he kept silence. 5. He did not take any account of my threats. 6. Such was his fear that he left the city. 7. I went to Rome to have an interview with them. 8. He made a voyage in the middle of winter. 9. He hopes for freedom at an early date. 10. He promised us our freedom. 11. You should yield obedience to the laws. 12. This tends to (say *belongs to* ; p. 59, 2) the preservation of liberty. 13. This step was taken to secure the safety of the city. 14. In spite of his innocence (p. 115, 11), he was condemned. 15. His conduct was very different from yours. 16. My interview with him was a lucky accident. 17. What is your opinion of such men? 18.

Your action in this matter (use *facio*) was criticised. 19. Their sudden transformation is marvellous (use *muto*). 20. The murder of Pompey was a great misfortune. 21. He seemed born for the protection of the people. 22. In proportion to his readiness (use *promptus, ready*), each man was advanced to office [p. 118, 5, (b)]. 23. Every evil seems harmless at its birth (use *part.*). 24. I feel distress that you have received no information from him. 25. I believe he feels regret (p. 66, 3) for his conduct. 26. By the removal of the tyrant (*rex*), the safety of the city has been secured. 27. This, he said, was the earnest wish of his heart. 28. The general, after a brief exhortation, induced them to remain. 29. Fancy how great was the joy I felt (say *How much do you think I rejoiced?*). 30. Shall we praise him for being a painter? (use *quia*). 31. Let us assume a case (*aliquid*) of somewhat wide application (use *patet late, it extends widely*). 32. He hurried away to announce Caesar's presence with all his forces. 33. The resistance ceased after midnight. 34. It is quite within the range of possibility that his political opinions are identical with your own. 35. This city has always been loved by her subjects (use *praesum*). 36. On reaching the gate, they immediately demanded admittance. 37. He asked that an investigation be made (use *quaero*) into the loss of the fleet. 38. I have never lost my belief in the existence of God. 39. He believes in the nothingness of all this (use *nullus esse*). 40. Lovers are always foolish. 41. He has taken his daughter to bear him company (*unā esse, to be together*).

§ 58. OTHER SUBSTITUTES IN LATIN FOR THE ABSTRACT NOUN.

1. The neuter (sing. or pl.) of an adjective may often be used to express an English abstract noun: as,

Aliud est honestum, utile aliud. Honor (or duty) is one thing; expediency, another.

Vera et falsa disiungunt. They distinguish truth and falsehood.

In fact, the neuter adjective or pronoun will often be used in Latin to express an English noun for which the word *thing* might be used, but a more pretentious noun is preferred. Thus :

Haec sequebatur, he pursued these objects ; magna ausus est, he ventured on great enterprises ; hoc unum me consolatur, this one consideration (or reflection) affords me consolation.

So too :

Amissa erant per quae humus exciditur. The tools for digging the earth had been lost.

Hoc audeo dicere. I venture to make this assertion.

Hoc mihi molestum est me non esse bonum civem. This thought is painful to me, that I am not a patriot.

Summa gloria constat ex tribus his : si diligit eum multitudo, si fidem habet, si honore dignum putat. The highest glory depends upon the following three conditions : if the multitude loves him, puts trust in him, thinks him worthy of honor.

Si modo haec stabunt. If only the present condition of the country continues.

Ea domi conflata esse constat. It is certain that these plans were formed at home (lit., kindled).

In translating into English, the context in every case determines the appropriate noun to use for the neuter adjective or pronoun.

2. Many English abstract nouns may be expressed by the word *res*, which is of very frequent occurrence, and is (as has been well said) a blank cheque, as it were, to be filled up from the context. Thus :

Ut res docuit. As the fact showed.

Res Graeciae constituit. He has arranged the affairs of Greece.

Multae res in philosophia non satis adhuc explicatae sunt. There are many problems in philosophy which have received as yet no adequate solution.

Bonis tuis rebus meas malas res ludis. In your prosperity, you are mocking my misfortune.

Compare too :

Res secundae (or prosperae), prosperity ; res adversae, adver-

sity; res tranquillae, tranquillity; res accisae, impaired fortunes; res novae, a revolution; res publica, the common weal (i.e., the nation, the government, the public interest, politics, etc.).

3. An English abstract noun may frequently be expressed by making it concrete, *i.e.*, referring it to an individual : as,

Plurimum interest inter doctum et rudem. There is the greatest difference between learning and ignorance (lit., between a learned man and an ignorant man).

Ingeniosi non sunt quales esse nobis videntur. Genius is different from what we suppose it to be.

Nullum poetam legerat, nullum oratorem noverat. He had read no poetry and was unacquainted with oratory.

This principle is useful when the name of a class may be substituted for the name of the quality that characterises it.

4. In accordance with this love of the concrete, is the Latin use of a proper noun (*a*) instead of naming the qualities that distinguish the individual indicated ; (*b*) where we refer to a person by some impersonal circumlocution (as, *e.g.*, in Parliament) : as,

Tempora Numae minus apta. A time little suited for Numa (i.e., irreligious).

De hac re iam Servium, virum amplissimum, audistis. With regard to this proposal, you have heard the honorable member who has just sat down.

Compare, also, the Latin love of accuracy in naming nations : as,
Romani cum Carthaginiensibus bellum iam diu gerunt. Rome has long been making war upon Carthage.

5. It should be noted that the abstract noun *must* be used :

(*a*) When speaking of a quality *itself*, and (often) in ascribing a quality to an individual : as,

Virtus in recte agendo posita est. Virtue consists in right action.

In his artibus praestabant illi: probitate, industriā, temperantiā. In these qualities they were pre-eminent: uprightness, energy, and self-control.

(b) Where, though an adjective is used in English, it really expresses an emphatic quality, or the main idea : as,

Neque occasionis tarditas expectabitur. Nor will men wait for slow-footed opportunity.

Adde huc montium altitudines immensitatesque camporum. Add to all this the lofty mountains and the boundless plains (the ideas emphasised here are the height of mountains and the boundless expanse of plains ; Latin, therefore, with its love of directness, uses the abstract noun in each case).

6. When an abstract noun refers to a plural noun or pronoun, it is often itself put in the plural, and thus becomes concrete : as,

Vitae omnium in periculo erant. The lives of all were in danger.
So too : *Frigora* (cold), *calores* (heat), *imbres* (rain), *fulmina* (lightning), *grandines* (hail), &c.

EXERCISE LVIII.

1. What goal, do you think, has he in view? 2. Some men pursue one object; some, another. 3. Nor should men pursue ends they cannot attain. 4. He said that procrastination (*inf.*) would be fatal. 5. You can receive no better gift (*vb.*) from heaven than contentment (*inf. + adj.*) 6. The assault of this legion (p. 50, 14) left no room for doubt that the citadel would be taken. 7. The secret of his unbroken success lay in his wisdom and foresight. 8. This is the advantage of vehemence and activity, that they soon learn to reform themselves. 9. Timidity, however, is a more fatal disease of the mind. 10. A man once persuaded that an impediment is insuperable, has made it more difficult than before. 11. He will never discover the unreasonableness of his fears. 12. Tell him the hour at which we leave. 13. There was no longer any possibility of his escape. 14. It will not add one iota to your happiness or prosperity (*adj.*) 15. To express gratitude is one thing; to feel it, another; to show it, another still. 16. All regard ingratitude with detestation (use *verb*). 17. The Roman loved oratory. 18. The betrayal of their plans threw them into confusion. 19. If I had made any proficiency in the art myself, I should not use these words. 20. Self-confidence (*inf.*) is a mark of arrogance. 21. Folly

delights in trifles. 22. I deferred (obsequor) to your desire. 23. (Obedience to the law began with (ab) the reign of Tullus (say: *it began to be obeyed to the laws*). 24. I believe that there has been a disastrous battle. 25. Many promises have been made. 26. Falsehood is dangerous. 27. Their judgment with regard to him is perfectly accurate (*use vere*). 28. They fled away in confusion (*use turbo*) and despair (*use spem abicere*). 29. Cries of mourning were heard. 30. There was a mutual disarmament (say: *it was departed from arms by each party*). 31. Is anything good that does not make its possessor good? 32. This proposal did not displease him. 33. The government came back to Camillus. 34. The experiment was made, to see if (si) the city could be taken. 35. An envious clique may be despised (say: *the envy of a few, etc.*; p. 163, *b*). 36. He denied the possibility of making war on Rome. 37. It would not be in keeping with his good sense to arm a reckless (p. 163, *b*) mob with public authority. 38. He crossed the river when the cold was almost unbearable.

§59. ABSTRACT ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

1. Latin, in its love of the simple and direct, avoids personification. Hence combinations of a noun and an adjective like *mental strength*, *anxious fear*, and the like, are not common in Latin. Instead of them are used:—

(a) A noun governing another in the genitive: as,

Corporis et mentis vires, *bodily and mental strength*; scientiæ cognitio, *scientific investigation*; praecepta morum, *moral precepts*; ad fidem historiae scriptus, *described according to historic truth*; omnium terror, *the universal terror*; intra hominum memoriam, *within human memory*; reipublicae dissensio, *political difference*; ferocitas iuvenum, *the high spirit of youth*; brevis temporis dolor, *momentary pain*; servavi temporis ordinem, *I have followed the chronological sequence*; instituta philosophiæ, *philosophical principles*.

(b) Two nouns connected by *and*: as,

Res iuventute geruntur et viribus. *Business is transacted by youthful strength.*

So:

Clamores et admirationes, *stormy applause*; clamor et admurmuratio, *loud murmuring*; non sine vociferatione et indignatione, *not without loudly-expressed indignation*; ratio et consilium, *rational judgment*; temeritas et casus, *blind chance*; metus et anxietas, *anxious fear*.

An attributive possessive case may often be turned in the same way: as,

Permissa est vulgo ultio et satietas. *The glutting of its revenge was allowed the mob.*

This is the principle usually denoted by the learned name *hendiadys* (ἐν διὰ δύοιν, *one thing through two*). It is of common application.

(c) Two nouns in apposition: as,

Tiro exercitus, *a raw army*; advēnae volucres, *foreign birds*.

(d) A subordinate clause: as,

Navis, quum fracta esset, cursum tenere non potuit. *The shattered vessel could not hold her course.*

ADVERBS.

2. Instead of the English adverb, or adverbial phrase, Latin frequently uses:—

(a) An adjective: as,

Hoc libens feci, *I did it gladly* (i.e., *was glad to do it*).

Invitus haec dico. *I say it reluctantly.*

Imprudens erravi. *I have erred inadvertently.*

Eos vivus restituit. *He restored them during his life-time.*

So too: Iratus, *in anger*; metu perterritus, *in fear*.

Adversos, aversos aggredi. *To attack in front, in rear*

(b) A noun: as,

Hoc consul fecit. *This he did in his consulship* (as consul).

So: Puer, *in his boyhood*; adolescens, *in his youth*; senex, *in his old age*.

Ratione et viâ docete. *Teach by method and system.*

Hoc memoriâ et litteris proditum est. *This has been handed down orally and in writing.*

So too: Arte factus, *artistically made*; vitio creatus, *informally elected*; naturâ tardior, *naturally rather slow*.

Amicitiam nec usu nec ratione cognitam habent. *They have known friendship neither practically nor theoretically.*

Ea, quae ex me audistis, re probare possitis. *May you be able to verify experimentally the principles you have heard from me!*

Plura verbo quam scripturâ mandata, dedimus. *We have given more commissions verbally than in writing.*

(c) A verb: as,

I solemnly entreat you. Te oro obsecroque.

I loudly protest that it is false. Clamo et testor hoc falsum esse.

I managed successfully to effect my object. Egi atque perfecti ut quid vellem facerem.

(d) A change of construction: as,

Ablisse videtur. *He is gone apparently.*

Dubitari non potest quin mortuus sit. *Undoubtedly he is dead.*

Peropportune accidit ut dives sit. *Very fortunately he is rich.*

Hoc quotidie facere soleo. *I usually do it every day.*

Manifestum est te errare. *You are manifestly wrong.*

3. The following list of equivalent phrases will repay study:—

Accomplice, scelerum socius.

Aristocracy, nobiles.

Assessment, quod cuique tributum est.

Atheist, qui deos esse negat.

Civilisation, exulta hominum vita.

Communism, aequatio bonorum.

Conservative, qui reipublicae statum conservat.

Demagogues, turbulenti cives or populi turbatores.

Enthusiasm, ardor animi.

Exports, res quae exportantur.

Historian, rerum scriptor.

Inspiration, divinus quidam afflatus.

Lawgiver, qui leges ponit.

Moral philosophy, quae de moribus et officiis praecepta sunt.

Patriotism, studium reipublicae.

Politician, qui in republica versatur.

So: *Enter political life, ad remp. accedere; administer the government, remp. gubernare.*

Prejudices, falsae atque inveteratae opiniones.

Prose, oratio soluta.

Rhetoric, rhetorum praecepta.

Statesmanship, reip. regendae et constituendae peritia.

Tyranny, unius dominatus.

EXERCISE LIX.

1. Natural shame might have prevented him from being present.
2. They will always have a lively recollection of all his services to the country.
3. They have neglected the systematic study of literature.
4. We feel ourselves impelled towards our philosophical writers.
5. All other philosophical systems he despised.
6. All these things were made by human handiwork (*hend.*).
7. They always differed in party policy.
8. An abundant variety of food has been secured (*invento*).
9. These terrible threats of prosecution you should never have taken into account.
10. The beaten army withdrew to Canusium.
11. I had a thorough knowledge of his political views.
12. Fear and anxiety are inconsistent with such a disposition (p. 162, 3).
13. The introduction of the games did not relieve them from superstition or disease.
14. Unfortunately they were gone.
15. Towards them, as Christians (*use quum*), great cruelty was shown (*use saevio*).
16. The shouts of congratulation were overpowering.
17. In a charge of this nature inquiry should be made as to date, place, means, and agents.
18. The historians tell us that human society was a late development.
19. There is no doubt that he would have returned safely.
- 20.

After his death, apparently, he has become very friendly towards us. 21. You will never know how zealously and intelligently he has managed this matter. 22. We are all attracted by the love of scientific inquiry. 23. This phenomenon is of most constant occurrence in the winter season. 24. Error and ignorance are considered positive evils (*superl.*) 25. Many subjects are difficult and obscure and at the same time (*use idem*) unnecessary. 26. Let us not lend a blind assent to these theories. 27. Will you never regard measures rather than the men who propose them? (*auctor*). 28. Were not these people always fond of novelty? 29. If they had not obeyed at once, an ignominious disaster would have been sustained. 30. The struggle will be for empire (*use decerto*). 31. Providentially, he has made his escape. 32. He is behaving with the greatest folly (*adv.*). 33. He made inquiries as to the health of the gentle Tullia. 34. They have come, I believe, with all speed. 35. He wished to consult the interest of France. 36. The majority of mankind are convinced that philosophy has no utility. 37. Many are of opinion that it is positively an injury (*use vb.*). 38. It is a mark of folly to be scared by empty shadows. 39. They professed they had a declaration to make. 40. If the government had ascertained the strength of the enemy, this defeat would never have been sustained. 41. This bond closely unites states together (p. 166, c).

§ 60. DIFFERENCE OF IDIOM—(*Continued*).

1. Latin may be said to prefer, as a general thing, the active (because of its greater directness) to the passive. Thus :

The wise remark of the father was verified by the rashness of the son. Patris dictum sapiens filii temeritas probavit. See, however, p. 38, 2.

2. The name of a mere *instrument* (as opposed to an *agent*) cannot be made the subject of an active verb : as,

This bribe induced him to open the gate. Hac mercede adductus est ut portam aperiret.

Note.—An exception to this is seen in the personification of emotions, so common in Livy : as,

Pavor tribunos invaserat. Fear had seized the tribunes.

Hinc spes, hinc desperatio animos irritat. On one side hope, on the other, despair is an incentive (lit., *incites*; see 6.).

So, too, with *habeo*, *excipio* (*follow*), *teneo*, &c. : as,

Insequens annus tribunos habuit. The following year had tribunes.

Tristem hiemem gravis aestas excepit. A sickly summer followed a gloomy winter.

Hoc miraculum eos stupefactos tenuit. This marvel held them spell-bound.

3. An English adjectival phrase, which might—if literally turned—modify the verb, must be joined to its own noun by a participle or a relative clause : as,

A voice from the temple recalled them. Vox e templo missa (or quae e templo mittebatur) eos revocavit.

Vox e templo eos revocavit would mean *A voice recalled them from the temple.*

Note.—Such an adjectival phrase may, however, be turned literally, if it can without ambiguity be joined adverbially to the verb : as, *His frivolity in great matters was noticed. Lévis eius animus in magnis rebus spectabatur.*

4. An English adjective often expresses a reason or makes some distinct predication which must be brought out explicitly by a separate clause or participle in Latin : as,

This manœuvre did not escape our veteran leader. Haec res imperatorem nostrum, qui bellum esset peritissimus, non fefellit.

5. Where the emphatic verb in English is put in a relative clause, Latin demands that it should be made the main verb : as,

A fresh blow came that crushed the city. Clades nova urbem afflixit.

This is especially common with *It is, it was*, etc. : as,

It is you that I want. Te volo.

6. Latin, in its love of the concrete, defines an act much more closely than English : as,

They refresh themselves with food. Corpora cibo curant.

These proceedings relieved them from their fear. Haec animos pavore levabant.

7. From the Latin love of the direct and concrete, arises the constant use of the 2nd pers. sing., and the 1st and 3rd pers. pl., for the English passive or the indefinite subject (*one, people, etc.*) : as,

The truth of this will be found, if the pages of history are turned over. Hoc verum esse, si velis temporum memoriam replicare, reperies.

People are born with genius, but are made learned. Nascimur ingeniosi, fimus eruditi (= Learning is a product, genius a gift).

8. The verb *sum* will often take the place of a more emphatic or picturesque verb in English : as,

Immense indignation reigned in the camp. Per castra indignatio ingens erat.

From this a false opinion results. Ex hoc est falsa opinio.

9. Two adjectives qualifying one noun in Latin must be connected by *and* : as,

He had large bright eyes. Oculos magnos et nitidos habebat.

10. Several consecutive nouns in Latin in the same construction are written down one after the other without conjunctions : as,

Illa arma centuriones cohortes non nobis periculum denuntiant.
Those arms, officers and battalions do not threaten us with danger.
 This is called *asyndeton* (*a* not + *σύν*, together + *δέω*, bind.).

Note.—So too, clauses : as, *Redit iuvenis, rem narrat, implorat opem.* *The youth returns, tells his story, and begs for aid.*

EXERCISE LX.

1. This dagger stabbed the celebrated Pompey. 2. All the soldiers in the city were sent to Baiae. 3. A sense of shame suddenly changed them. 4. The little gold they had was taken from the wretches. 5. As Christians, they were treated very cruelly. 6. He was very popular, for a banker, with all classes. 7. I never lose

sight of him (*use deicio oculos*). 8. A musical ear detects (*sentio*) the slightest discord. 9. I have lost all the vigor of youth. 10. The men in the ship demanded our destination. 11. The battle at Cannae (*rel.*) cut off many thousands. 12. Word was brought of the sack of the city. 13. They have perfect confidence in men of goodness of character (p. 165, 1, *b*). 14. It was Balbus who built the house. 15. In pursuit of some cherished object, they will undergo any hardship (*use perpetior*). 16. The men descending from the mountain attacked us. 17. Firmness and dignity are consistent with true courage (p. 162, 3). 18. He stationed the cavalry that they might make a display (*use utor ad speciem*). 19. This statue will serve you for a god. 20. Orators always have been few (p. 163, *b*). 21. This, as a general thing, is believed. 22. He might be thought a madman. 23. He endured the pain without difficulty. 24. By this time there was in vogue (p. 170, 8) a better fashion (*consuetudo*). 25. Not far away our army was encamped (p. 170, 8). 26. In both cases he acted with dignity (*use graviter*). 27. He attempted to conclude his speech amidst the loudly-expressed detestation (*hend.*) of the House. 28. When the pleasant spring (p. 163, *b*) is past, then comes summer. 29. The frequent repetition of these remarks (*use saepe*) terrified all. 30. Open flattery (*part.*) all men hate. 31. The disappointed (p. 169, 4) soldiers began to murmur. 32. This they did, without compulsion from anyone. 33. He announced that the measure was both practicable and expedient (*use verbs*). 34. There is no doubt that there were poets before Homer. 35. There was not one of all the soldiers who was not wounded. 36. Have you heard how bravely they fought? 37. You know how (*ut*) they surrounded us. 38. We do not know how he escaped. 39. They were of the opinion that unless news of this battle had been brought, the city would have been lost. 40. I have bought an estate at a million of sesterces. 41. This proceeding proved (p. 170, 8) their salvation. 42. From these pursuits arises facility in speaking (p. 165, 1, *b*).

§ 61. EQUIVOCAL WORDS. WORDS OF THE
SAME FORM IN LATIN AND ENGLISH.
METAPHOR.

1. Many English words are equivocal (*i.e.*, have two or more meanings), and require care in translating into Latin. Thus :

He is a man of honor. Vir est summā fide.

He is an honor to his country. Ille est patriae decōri (*i.e.*, ornament).

He is worthy of the highest honor in the gift of the people. Dignus est summis populi Romani honoribus (*i.e.*, office, political distinction).

They pay him honor. Laudem ei tribuunt.

He thirsts for honor. Sitit famam (gloriam or laudem).

So, too : *People go into the country.* Rus homines eunt (*i.e.*, as opposed to the city).

It is sweet to die for one's country. Dulce est pro patria mori.

He is disturbed for the safety of the country. De reipublicae salute perturbatur (*i.e.*, the political community).

He returned home, to the great joy of his country. Cum summo civium gaudio domum rediit (*i.e.*, countrymen).

I will march into their country. In eorum fines iter faciam.

Such examples suffice to show the necessity of thinking out the exact meaning of the English, before attempting to translate into Latin.

2. Many English words of Latin origin differ altogether in meaning from the Latin original.

Thus : *He obtained the highest office.* Summum honorem (or magistratum) consecutus est (obtineo=*hold*; and officium=*duty*; see Lexicon).

Sulla, as dictator, oppressed the poor. Sulla dictator pauperes vexabat (opprimo=*crush* or *surprise*).

The following list of such words (taken from Bradley) deserves attention :—*Acquire* (adipiscor, consequor), *act* (facio), *alien* (externus),

be astonished (miror), *attain to* (pervenio ad), *barbarous* (crudelis), *cease* (desino or desisto), *class* (genus), *commonly* (saepe), *crime* (scelus), *crown* (i.e., kingdom, regnum), *desire* (cupio), *destined* (in fatis esse), *expose to* (obicio), *famous* (praeclarus), *fatal* (perniciosus), *fathers* (maiores), *fury* (ira), *heart* (animus, indoles), *heaven* (deus, di immortales), *injury* (damnum), *mortal* (of a wound, mortiferum), *nation* (civitas, respublica), *be obnoxious* (odio esse), *provoke* (animum irritō), *ruin* (perniciēs, interitus), *scene* (locus or ubi, p. 32), *secure* (tutus), *triumph* (vinco), *urge* (agere cum....ut), *vile* (turpis), *world* (omnes, or homines; mundus=universe), *study* (cognitio).

LATIN METAPHOR.

3. Metaphor (or language used in a 'transferred' or figurative sense) is common in English and rare in Latin; and in translating into Latin, the metaphor may, as a usual thing, be dropped: as,

He ascended the throne of his fathers. Regnum a maioribus traditum excepit.

There is a wide gulf between learning and ignorance. Inter doctum et rudem plurimum interest.

He soon showed himself in his true colors. Brevi sui similis fuit.

He has always lent me the countenance of his support in the House. Me suā auctoritate in Senatu semper adiuvavit.

The political horizon seems overcast with clouds. Reipublicae impendēre multa pericula videntur.

4. A metaphor may often be turned into Latin by expanding it into a simile. Thus, in the last example: *Ut nubes mari saepe, ita reipublicae pericula nunc impendent.*

5. The words *quasi* (as if), *tamquam*, *velut*, *quidam*, *ut ita dicam*, &c., are used to apologise for or introduce a figurative or unusual phrase: as,

The soul flies forth from the prison-house of the body. E corpore, quasi e carcere, evolat animus.

Philosophy was the mother of all the arts. Philosophia omnium artium quasi parens erat.

6. Roman metaphor is found chiefly (*a*) in verbs of motion (especially in those meaning to *flow* or *gush*); (*b*) in words drawn from *navigation, war, agriculture, the stage, the human body, medicine, flowers, building, painting, fire, light and darkness, wind*. Every student of Latin should collect examples for himself; a few only will be given here. Thus:

Rempubicam gubernat. *He holds the helm of state (i.e., administers the government).*

Partes (or personam) lenitatis agite. *Take the rôle of leniency.*

In tanto reipublicae incendio sisti non potest. *In the midst of such public confusion, it can not be helped.* (Compare the use of *combustion* in Elizabethan English).

Multae tempestates in fluctibus contionum subeundae sunt. *Many storms must be met amid the tides of the popular assemblies.*

Quae res magnas civitates possum dedit. *An evil which has sent great states to the bottom (i.e., ruined).*

Arx fontibus scatet. *The citadel is full of springs (i.e., gushes with).*

In eo quasi lumen virtutis perspicio. *I see in him the light of virtue.*

Solo aequandae sunt dictaturae. *The office of dictator must be levelled to the ground.*

Faber fortunae suae. *The architect of his own fortune.*

Propugnacula murique otii. *The bulwarks and ramparts of peace.*

Haec spargere me ac disseminare arbitrabar in orbis terrae memoriam sempiternam. *I thought I was scattering these achievements broadcast (p. 166, c) for the undying recollection of the whole world.*

In medullis populi Romani et visceribus haerent. *They are enshrined in the affections of Rome (lit., marrow and flesh).*

Nostrae res litterarum monumentis inveterascent. *My achievements will live to old age in the pages of literature.*

Compare also: *Tumere* (*be bombastic*), *frigere* (*be spiritless*), *fervere* (*be passionate*), used of style.

EXERCISE LXI.

1. Indicate a motive for this detestable crime. 2. I tendered him the homage of my support in the House. 3. He was overwhelmed by the tide of business (say : *as by a billow*). 4. Does not the moon revolve round the world? 5. Was not the world made by design? 6. If he had consulted the interests of the country, he would have been dear to the country. 7. Rome was mistress of the whole world. 8. By teaching these doctrines, he did the world much harm. 9. I am afraid I shall never see him again in this world. 10. After the death of the father, the son demanded the crown. 11. He attained to the highest offices in his native country. 12. All this district he won with the sword. 13. The love of money is the root of all evil. 14. He has held the sceptre for more than thirty years. 15. The fact of the existence of God is engraved (*inseculpo*) on the heart of man. 16. I never heard him without admiration. 17. The voice of warning was drowned in the shouts of admiration. 18. He says that the administration should be in his control. 19. Interest rose (*use flo*) on August 8th from 4% to 8 (*abl.*). 20. He drew a broad line between honor and self-interest. 21. The State must not encroach upon the property of the individual. 22. That older world stood nearer to the dawn and saw truth with clearer eyes. 23. The enemy was reduced to submission without difficulty. 24. They were admitted to an audience. 25. Their exasperation will be proportionate to the good nature with which they now proceed. 26. Disaster now stared them in the face. 27. The cold was of such intensity as to be almost unendurable. 28. This reverse damped their triumph. 29. His first attempt met with poor success. 30. If he had had more, he would have given more. 31. He said on April 5th that he would never set foot in my province. 32. By the foreign voyages of our ships all the necessities of life are supplied. 33. He has glutted (*pasco*) his adherents with political incendiarism. 34. The forum would have been the stage of his genius. 35. The House assigned me this rôle and I sustained the character to the best of my ability. 36. A strong and really (*use quidam*) astonishing feeling of good-will was beginning to glow in my breast. 37. From friendship blossom many advantages. 38. This spark of genius cannot be concealed

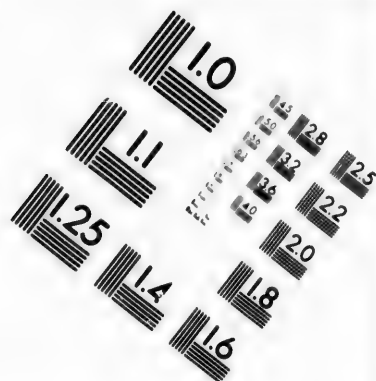
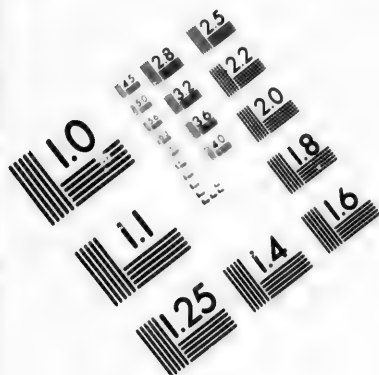
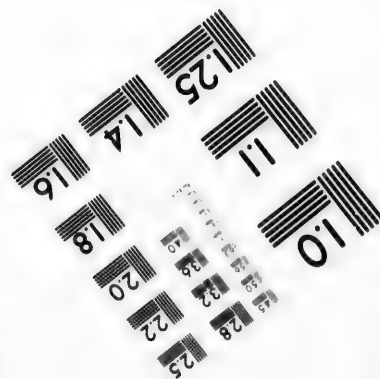
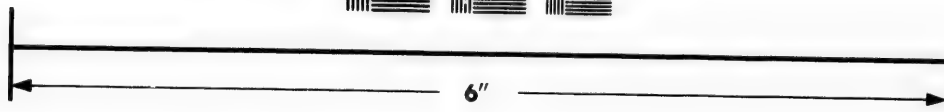
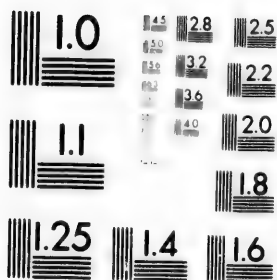


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503



(lateo). 39. Let us hold the course that the loyal have always held; let us turn a deaf ear to any signal of recall. 40. Who can heal the country's wounds? 41. We are all (as I might say) in the same boat and sharers in the same dangers.

§ 62. ORDER AND EMPHASIS.

1. Conjunctions, relative and interrogative pronouns, relative and interrogative adverbs, usually stand first in their own clause: as,

Quae cum ita sint, abeat. Under these circumstances, let him depart.

2. The following words never begin a sentence: *Quis* (any), *quisque* (each), *quodque* (also), *quidem* (at least, indeed), *vero* or *autem* (but), *enim* (for), *igitur* (therefore). See any page of Livy or Cicero.

3. The usual order of words in a Latin sentence is as follows: (1) Subject; (2) adverbs of time, place and manner; (3) indirect object; (4) direct object; (5) verb: as,

Caesar enim illo die ei coronam dedit. That day Caesar gave him a crown.

Qui tum civitatibus arma abstulit. At that time he took away arms from the states.

Note.—Since Latin aims at showing, as far as possible, the logical connection of each sentence with the preceding, sentences constantly begin with *for*, *who*, *which*, &c. See again any page of Livy or Cicero.

4. The practice of indicating emphasis by position, often modifies the regular arrangement: as,

Non video in mea vita quid despiciere possit Antonius. I do

not see in my life what any man can despise of the name of Antony (subject made emphatic by being put last instead of first).

So, too, the verb is emphasised by being put not last but first : as,

Irridet Clodius Senatum. *Clodius is actually mocking the Senate.*

Compare :

Senatum Clodius irridet. *It is the Senate that Clodius is mocking.*

Pecunia a patre exacta est crudeliter. *The money was extorted from his father with every circumstance of cruelty* (adverb at the end for emphasis).

In miseriam nascimur sempiternam. *We are born to misery everlasting* (adjective last, for emphasis).

Profluens quiddam habuit Carbo et canōrum. *Carbo had the gift not only of a flowing but of a musical style* (adj. last and separated from the word with which it would naturally go).

Note.—The use of the emphatic position renders many words, that are common in English, unnecessary in Latin. Thus :

I should not mention that affair at all. **Illius rei non mentionem faciam.**

That I shall not believe till I actually hear the envoys. **Hoc non prius credam quam audiero legatos.**

SPECIAL RULES OF ORDER.

5. The following special rules of order should be studied and the examples (which are chiefly taken from Potts' *Hints Towards Latin Prose*) carefully committed to memory.

(a) Everything logically connected with the subject should be placed close to it : as,

Two Numidians were sent to Hannibal with a letter. **Duo Numidæ cum litteris ad Hannibalem missi sunt** (here the letter belongs to the Numidians).

Democritus could not distinguish black from white after he had lost his sight. **Democritus, luminibus amissis, alba et atra discernere non poterat.**

(b) A sentence should not, as a usual thing, have more verbs at the end than two : as,

Verres so harried Sicily that it could not possibly be restored to its former condition. Verres Siciliam ita vexavit ut restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo potuerit (the main verb of a final or consecutive sentence is not put at the end).

He said he saw that this was the aim, i.e. that the man might be compelled to say something false. Dixit se intellegere id agi ut aliquid falsi dicere cogeretur (the verb introducing oblique narration put, as usual, first).

So, too :

They say that he had an incredible memory. Ferunt eum incredibili memoriâ fuisse. See, also, p. 129, 9.

(c) The verb of an explanatory clause introduced by enim or autem, stands first : as,

What such achievement has ever been performed? For I may boast before you. Quae res unquam gesta est tanta? Licet enim mihi apud te gloriari.

(d) A colorless verb (like esse, solere, posse, coepisse, &c.) stands usually in the middle of the sentence : as,

He is usually either bombastic or spiritless. Aut tumere (swell) solet aut frigere (be cold).

Sum, however, comes first in the sentence (1) when it means *to exist*, (2) to prevent the separation of closely connected words : as,

Est igitur haec lex. *This law, therefore, exists.*

Erat nemo quicum essem libentius. *There was none with whom I would more gladly be.*

(e) Words of opposite meaning, words of the same sound or derivation, and different cases of the same word, are usually written together for the sake of the contrast and the assonance : as,

In his single hand he controlled everything at Rome. Omnia unus Romae poterat.

I do not think that immortality should be despised by a mortal. Mortali immortalitatem non arbitror contemnendam.

You should not ask any question but which of the two waylaid the other. Nihil aliud quaerere debetis nisi uter utri insidias fecerit.

(f) Two words in antithesis are often found, one at the beginning, the other at the end : as,

Errare m̃lo cum Platone, quam cum istis vera sentire. I prefer rather to be wrong with Plato than to be right with those gentry (p. 88, 4).

(g) When pairs of words are contrasted, the order of the words in the second pair is reversed : as,

You would have heard the shrieking of women and the shouting of men. Audires ululatus feminarum, virorum clamores.

This arrangement is called *chiasmus* (from the Greek letter *chi*, χ). Thus :

ululatus feminarum,
X
virorum clamores.

(h) Adjectives and attributive genitives (except those of possession, number and amount) usually follow their nouns : as,

I am a Roman citizen. Civis Romanus sum.

The leader of the Senate. Princeps Senatūs. See p. 59, 1.

Two nouns belonging to the genitive, are not separated, unless for emphasis : as,

It is more difficult to find the beginning of this speech than the end. Huius orationis difficilior est exitum quam principium invenire.

(i) The negative should come as near the head of the sentence as possible : as,

Even the Lacedaemonians were unable. Neque ipsi Lacedaemonii poterant.

Do not disturb me. Noli me turbare.

You will find it better not to have uttered a sound. Non erit melius vocem misisse (inf. when used as a noun, usually at the end). See p. 95, 3, note.

EXERCISE LXII.

1. The Aedui sent ambassadors to him. 2. When he was living there with great dignity owing to his many virtues, the Spartans sent ambassadors to Athens. 3. They deny that any one should see the light who acknowledges himself guilty of homicide. 4. It is a matter of history that he rejected this argument (*disputatio*). 5. He felt that he was being taken to task even by Brutus. 6. With what feelings do you think a man like Alexander lived? (p. 176, 4). 7. Till to-day you have followed another general; now follow Caesar. 8. On this charge he was condemned, a charge of the most frivolous character. 9. As long as he lived, he lived in grief (p. 179, *g*). 10. Do not sacrifice the safety of your country to the safety of your father. 11. As far as learning goes, you can do that as long as you please (p. 176, 4). 12. I was unable to visit him, for he lives in a remote part of the city. 13. Prosperity cannot be secured (*efficio*) without men's zealous aid (p. 165, 1, *b*). 14. He was a man undoubtedly worthy of all honor. 15. To think that men should eat human flesh (p. 58, 15)! 16. It is glorious to die for one's country. 17. He used to say that silver was cheaper than gold, gold than virtues (p. 179, *g*). 18. Danger comes to one from one quarter, to another from another (use *aliunde*). 19. After the removal of the tyrant (*rex*), I see the tyrant's power still remains. 20. And yet these things are not closely connected (p. 166, *c*). 21. My thoughts are at present employed in guessing the reason of your absence. 22. I am distressed at not receiving any information from you by letter. 23. Truth needs no adornment (use *fucus*, *dye*). 24. He says that no one lives happily. 25. They prefer to call each thing by its own name. 26. The betrayal of their plans threw them into the greatest confusion (*vb.*). 27. Under these circumstances, then, we spared them all. 28. He went to Baiæ, not for recreation (use *otior*), but for business (use *negotior*). 29. I am now coming to the point at issue (use *ago*). 30. They were bound to him by friendship of long-standing (p. 165, 1, *b*). 31. Have they brought us assistance without being requested? 32. He did this deliberately. 33. They reached Rome without any interference (*vb.*). 34. A man of wonderful eloquence and profound learning, he did not escape condemnation.

§ 63. NOTES ON THE LATIN SENTENCE: CONNECTION, RHYTHM, &c.

1. Latin, as compared with English—see Livy and Macaulay *passim*—usually shows the logical connection of each sentence with the preceding; and in turning English into Latin, this connection must usually be expressed. Thus:

It was too late for him to regain public esteem. He had overlooked the real difficulties of his position. Nec iam (by this) potuit studium populi recuperare. Non enim intellexerat (pick up) quae pericula sibi impendērent.

We may conclude that there are some subjects which invite study on their own merits. Quocirca (therefore) intellegi potest esse quaedam propter se cognoscenda.

The question between the believer and the atheist is no light matter. It concerns the very constitution of human society. Non levi igitur illi de re dissentiunt qui esse Deum dicunt et illi qui nullum omnino esse contendunt: de ea vero quā omnis humani generis societas continetur (adversative).

2. The most common of all Latin connectives is the relative pronoun, and its use deserves careful attention. Thus:

Horatius was marching in advance. His sister met him before the gate. Princeps Horatius erat; cui soror obviam ante portam fuit (cui=et ei, and him).

Two and two are four. If this is granted, &c. Bis bina quattuor fiunt; quod si concessum erit, &c.

Note.—The relative is often used for *and* with a demonstrative; hence the frequent use in Latin of *quamobrem*, *quare*, *quam ob causam* (*and on account of this thing, &c.*).

3. The relative—unless referring to an emphatic *is* or *idem*—stands near the antecedent, and an adjective or an appositive noun is put in the relative clause: as,

He sent the most faithful slave he had. Servum, quem habuit fidelissimum, misit.

He reduced the Volsci, a nation which is situated not far from this city. Volscos, quae gens non longe ab hac urbe est, subegit.

But :

Most people are servile to a man from whom they expect something. Plerique a quo aliquid sperant, ei (or eidem) inserviunt. See p. 9, 6.

4. The subject of the main verb is often to be supplied in Latin from the relative clause : as,

When this word was brought him, he arose. Cui quum id esset nuntiatum, surrexit.

So too : There are books with which, when we read them, we are delighted. Libri sunt, quos quum legimus, delectamur.

Note.—If the connection is not expressly shown by a particle, the sentence begins with some emphatic word which serves the same purpose : as,

We began the war with Saguntum. We must wage it against Rome. Susceptum cum Saguntinis bellum ; habendum cum Romanis est.

He was killed in the engagement ; and Fulvius left him dead on the field. Occisus est in acie ; iacentem Fulvius reliquit.

5. For the sake of clearness and emphasis, a word is often repeated at the head of each clause of a sentence : as,

The panic and confusion were as great as if an enemy were besieging the city. Tantus pavor, tanta trepidatio fuit, quanta si hostes urbem obsidèrent.

He promised but with difficulty, with frowns, and grudgingly. Promisit sed difficulter, sed subductis superciliis, sed malignis (niggard) verbis.

This is called *anaphōra*.

6. The subject of a Latin sentence should be kept—as far as possible—unchanged all through the sentence : as,

The matter was quickly dispatched and the legions returned. Quā re confecta, legiones redierunt.

When his friends asked him his opinion, he replied as follows. Ille, sententiam ab amicis rogatus, ita respondit.

Note 1.—The subject should be taken out of a subordinate clause and put at the head of the sentence : as,

When Caesar heard this, he set out. **Caesar, quum hoc audisset, profectus est.**

Note 2.—If the subject *is* changed, it should be expressed by the pronoun **is** or **hic**, when the new subject has been already mentioned in the previous sentence : as,

They came to the king at Pergamum. He received them kindly.
Pergamum ad regem venerunt. Is eos comiter excepit.

7. The same noun or pronoun should—as far as possible—be kept in the same case all through the sentence : as,

When Midas was a boy, some ants piled grains of corn upon his lips, when he was asleep. **Midae dormienti cum puer esset, formicae in os tritici grana congesserunt.**

Note.—This will often involve the use of a subordinate clause (or a participial phrase ; see p. 47, 3) for an English main clause : as,
Hannibal ordered him to leave the camp, but he soon returned.
Qui, cum Hannibalis iussu castris exisset, paulo post rediit.

This he persistently repeated and his whole discourse was spent in eulogizing virtue. **Quibus constanter dictis, omnis eius oratio in virtute laudanda consumebatur.**

8. A noun, when the object both of the main and of the subordinate clause, is put at the head of the sentence : as,

If I cannot crush my annoyance, I will conceal it. **Dolorem, si non potero frangere, occultabo.**

And, generally speaking, the important word is to be taken and put at the head of the Latin sentence, in order that the subject of discourse may be emphatically and clearly indicated in advance : as,

When they saw that he had escaped the flames, they hurled darts at him and killed him. **Quem, ut incendium effugisse viderunt, telis emissis, interfecerunt.**

Note.—This will often involve a change of voice (as in the last example) or the use of a pronoun in the subordinate clause : as,

When Hannibal was living in exile at the court of King Prusias, and was of the opinion that the war should be fought out to the end, the king refused. Rex Prusias, quum Hanniball apud eum exulanti depugnari placéret, id facere noluit.

9. Besides insisting on Clearness and Emphasis, the Latin writers paid particular attention also to Rhythm (or the due alternation of short and long syllables). A knowledge of the correct rhythm of the Latin sentence can only be obtained by committing to memory sentences from the great masters of Latin prose style such as Livy and Cicero. The following model examples are given by Postgate (*Sermo Latinus*) :

(a) *Ad miseriam nascimur sempiternam. We are born to misery that is unending.*

(b) *Quid autem agatur cum aperuero, facile erit statuere quam sententiam dicatis. When I show you how much is at stake, it will be easy to decide what opinion to express (p. 24, d).*

(c) *Magna eloquentia, sicut flamma, motu excitatur, materie altur et urendo clarescit (which was translated by the younger Pitt, as follows :) It may be said of eloquence, as of flame, that it requires motion to excite it, fuel to feed it, and that it brightens as it burns.*

Cicero himself quotes as a model the following period of his own :

Est igitur haec, iudices, non scripta sed nata lex, quam non didicimus, accepimus, legimus, verum ex natura ipsa adripuimus, hausimus, expressimus, ad quam non docti sed facti, non instituti sed imbuti sumus, ut si vita nostra in aliquas insidias, si in vim et in tela aut latronum aut inimicorum incidisset, omnis honesta ratio esset expediendae salutis.

There is, gentlemen of the jury, a law—not a written law but a natural one—which we have not arrived at from study, tradition, or books, but derived, imbibed, and drawn from mother Nature herself; which was not taught us, but was inborn; which we reached not by training but by instinct. The law is this: If our lives are exposed to the secret attacks, the violence, or the weapons of bandits or of enemies, any means of securing our safety is justifiable.

10. A sentence should not close with the end of a verse (*e.g.*, *essē vidētur*, or *placuisse Catoni*). The favorite endings are two trochees, or a tribrach and a trochee (*e.g.*, *collōcāvit* or *essē vidēātūr*).

EXERCISE LXIII.

1. For several days storms followed and they kept us within our camp. 2. Which wealth—if it fell to our lot—we would be dissatisfied with. 3. Desires which arise naturally, are satisfied without difficulty. 4. When Hannibal had reviewed (*recenseo*) his troops, he set out for Gades. 5. After Alexander had killed his friend, he almost committed suicide. 6. Do you believe that the mind is strengthened by pleasure and weakened by abstinence? 7. There is no doubt that force would have been repelled by force. 8. The matter was universally approved of, and it was entrusted to the general. 9. When the Cretans sent ambassadors to him, he did not take away all hope from them. 10. If the occasion (*say time*) be favorable for the change, we shall effect it with more ease. 11. The augur Tiresias (*put the appositive second*) is described (*use fingo*) by the poets as a philosopher, and he is never represented as bewailing his blindness. 12. By the common consent of the competitors, he won the prize for valor, but resigned it to Alcibiades, whom he devotedly loved. 13. Had Croesus ever been a happy man, he would have prolonged his happiness to the end. 14. Tatius corrupted this man's daughter with gold. She had happened to go outside of the ramparts to seek water. 15. This was observed and they altered their plan. 16. He had taken the city and the troops were marched home. 17. Such was my view and, if the Senate had supported me, the country would be safe. 18. Heaven will requite you in accordance with your deserts. 19. He was tired of his journey and so his slave killed him. 20. Do not imagine there is any necessity for haste. 21. This is a kindness which, if you confer it upon me, I shall not forget. 22. They felt more sorrow for the loss of their countrymen than joy at the rout of the enemy. 23. They roamed through the city without meeting any resistance. 24. To think that you should have fallen into such misery! 25. He moved his camp nearer the enemy, to see if he could draw them

to an engagement. 26. As soon as the enemy saw us, they made a charge; and we were quickly thrown into confusion. 27. Surely this is a greater miracle, the fact of his sparing the vanquished. 28. Was not this the reason why Aristides was banished, *i.e.* because he was just? 29. They were not disturbed by these disasters because (as they thought) the consuls were managing well (p. 137, 1). 30. I pity you for making so influential (*tantus*) a person your enemy (p. 113, 4). 31. He is too great a genius to be compared to me. 32. As if I cared for that. 33. It was reported that an attack had been made on my house. 34. There was no doubt that he would have called (*cito*) witnesses. 35. I am afraid I shall not be able to recover the million of sesterces he borrowed.

§64. THE LATIN PERIOD.

1. The Latin writers—and especially the historians—were fond (as already intimated) of seizing and putting forward some prominent idea and grouping into one organic and harmonious whole (called a *period*) all connected and subordinate ideas. This period the Latin writers used with great skill and developed to a high degree of perfection. It is eminently characterized by melody, vigor, clearness, and dignity, and justly regarded as one of the most perfect linguistic forms ever produced for the expression of thought.

Modern English style has taken quite a different direction. Every sentence contains, as a usual thing, a single idea with which the subordinate clauses (always very few and simple) are intimately connected. Compare, for example, the following passages in which the successful attack upon the usurper Amulius by his brother Numitor is described :

THE DEATH OF AMULIUS.

At the beginning of the tumult, Numitor gave out that the public enemy had attacked the city and had actually assaulted the palace; and, under color of this pretext, the wily prince had managed to withdraw the fighting men of the place from the scene of action

and had induced them to occupy their citadel with an armed force. Meanwhile the youthful conspirators had effected the assassination of the tyrant, and they were advancing to congratulate their grandfather upon his success. The triumphant chief lost no time in calling a meeting of the people and in representing to them the unnatural conduct of his brother towards himself. He explained the extraction of his grand-children, and the mode of their birth and education; and he related the wonderful manner in which they had been discovered. Finally, he disclosed the secret of the tyrant's death, avowing himself the author of the act.

Numitor inter primum tumultum hostes invasisse urbem atque adortos regiam dictitans, quum pubem Albanam in arcem praesidio armisque obtinendam avocasset: posteaquam iuvenes perpetrata caede perire ad se gratulantes videt, extemplo advocato concilio, sceleva in se fratris, originem nepotum, ut (*how*) geniti, ut educati, ut cogniti essent, caedem deinceps tyranni, seque eius auctorem ostendit.

The important and central idea here, is the announcement made by Numitor; the subject of the Latin period, therefore (and put, as usual, first), is **Numitor**, and the main verb (put, as usual, last), **ostendit**; all the steps leading up to the climax are described by subordinate clauses, participles, or adverbial phrases (*abl. abs.*, etc.).

The use of shorter sentences in English necessitates the repetition of the same idea under different forms. Thus, it is unnecessary—in fact, impossible—to express in the Latin period, *the wily prince, the triumphant chief*; the subject, when once mentioned, is not again referred to except by a pronoun; in fact when any idea has been once clearly stated, it is not repeated.

2. Compare, again, the two following passages:—

An exact report of these proceedings was carried to King James, who was fired with indignation at the total failure of this hopeful project. He saw that the way was now blocked for the employment of finesse and concluded that recourse must be had at last to open war. The exiled tyrant began accordingly to make the round of the French cities, entreating them in pathetic terms not to allow an unfortunate monarch, who had been expelled from his kingdom by an infamous conspiracy, to perish in destitution before their eyes.

His sicut acta erant nuntiatis, incensus Tarquinius dolore tantae ad irritum cadentis spei, postquam dolo viam obseptam vidit, bellum aperte moliendum ratus, circumire Galliae urbes, supplex orare ne se, e regno sceleratâ coniuratione pulsum, egentem ante oculos perire sinerent (notice ad irritum cadere, *prove vain*).

It may be remarked here with regard to the rendering of modern proper names, for which there is no Latin word, that there are three courses open :

1. Omit the word altogether and substitute a pronoun.
2. Substitute a real Latin name, *e.g.*, as above, Tarquinius for *James*.
3. Latinise the word : *e.g.*, the *people of Canada*, *Canadenses*; the *English*, *Angli*; *Peru*, *Peruvia*.

3. The Latin writers of course employed short sentences in the detached style, interspersed, for variety and rhetorical effect, with their long sonorous periods.

Whether an English sentence is to be incorporated in a period in Latin or kept separate and detached, is a question for judgment to decide ; but the following rules may be given. The detached style is employed :

(a) To wind up a narrative. See any page of Livy : as,

Palatinum munit; sacra diis aliis facit. *He fortified the Palatine, and instituted rites in honor of the other gods.*

(b) In graphic narrative and in a detailed summary of facts which are not easily subordinated to one central idea : as,

Bellum ab altero consule prospere gestum; Suessa in deditionem venit, Teanum vi expugnatum. *The military operations of the other consul were successful; Suessa surrendered and Teanum was taken by storm.*

Duo exercitus erant; scuta alterius auro, alterius argento caelaverunt. Forma erat scuti, etc. *There were two armies; the shields of the one were embossed with gold; those of the other, with silver. The shape of the shield, etc.*

In rapid and graphic descriptions of this kind, asyndeton is common.

(c) In conversation or argument : as,

At enim Cn. Pompeius et de re et de causa iudicavit; tulit enim de caede quae in Appia via facta esset. Quid ergo tulit? Nempe ut quaereretur. Quid porro quaerendum est? Factumne sit? At constat. A quo? At paret. *But, you will say, Pompey pronounced upon both the question of fact and the question of law; he proposed a measure dealing with the homicide which had taken place on the Appian Road. What then was his proposal? Of course, that an investigation should be held. But what is the subject of investigation? The fact of the homicide? That is admitted. The author of it? But that is clear.*

(d) In exclamations, anger, denunciation, scorn, irony, &c. : as.

Me miserum! me infelicem! *Unhappy and unfortunate man that I am!*

Quae cum ita sint, Catilina, perge quo coepisti; egredere aliquando ex urbe; patent portae; proficiscere. *Therefore, Catiline, go whither you are preparing to go. Set forth at length from the city; the gates are open; depart.*

(e) In the epistolary style : as,

Quae res mihi non mediocrem consolationem attulit, volo tibi commemorare, si forte eadem res tibi minuere dolorem possit. Ex Asia rediens, cum ab Ægina Megaram versus navigarem, coepi regiones circumcirca prospicere. post me erat Ægina; ante Megara: dextra Piraeus: sinistra Corinthus: quae oppida quodam tempore florentissima fuerunt, nunc prostrata et diruta ante oculos iacent. Coepi egomet mecum sic cogitare: Hem! nos homunculi indignamur, si quis nostrum interiit, cum uno loco tot oppidorum cadavera proiecta iaceant? Visne tu te, Servi, cohibere, et meminisse hominem te esse natum? Crede mihi, cogitatione ea non mediocriter sum confirmatus. *In the hope that it may assuage your grief, I want to tell you a reflection that brought me no small consolation. As I was returning from Asia and sailing from Aegina towards Megara, I began to look out upon the surrounding countries. Behind me lay Aegina; before me, Megara; on the right, Piraeus; on the left, Corinth: all of which were once flourishing towns, but now they are lying in utter ruin before our eyes. I began to reflect as follows: "Dear me! are we poor mortals indignant if any one of our number perishes, when in one*

spot the ruins of so many cities are lying spread out before us? Will you not restrain yourself, Servius, and remember that you were born a man?" Believe me, I was not a little strengthened by the reflection.

4. It may be remarked in conclusion that :

(a) Translation into Latin is really (as has been well said) a process of simplification. The English is thought into some simple equivalent mould which can be expressed in Latin. If a Latin version does not, when re-translated, read like what is called "a literal translation," the chances are that it is not Latin.

(b) Unusual expressions and constructions should be avoided. Nothing better can be given on this point than the words of Caesar: *Hoc habere in memoria atque pectore ut, tamquam scopulum (rock), sic fugias inauditum atque insolens (unusual) verbum.*

(c) Latin must be rhetorical. Its fondness for antithesis (or contrast) and for assonance, has been referred to ; and the frequent use of interrogatives (*quid? but again; quid quaeris? in short*, etc.), and of the superlative where English is satisfied with the positive (*e.g., optimus quisque, for all good men*), is an illustration of the same striving after rhetorical effect, which is so characteristic of Latin style.

EXERCISE LXIV.

Turn into a single period and translate :

(a) The defeat and rout of the allied forces increased the panic of the French, and they saw disaster staring them in the face. A large body of men who had been completely surrounded by the English troops and were fighting in a ring, seeing no hope of succor which would enable them to maintain their position, broke through the enemy's line and escaped. But they were prevented by a blinding storm of sleet from seeing where they were going, and rushing pell-mell into the river, they were carried away by the current and drowned.

(b) One of the hostages given to the king was a noble maiden of the name of Cloelia. This young lady, eluding the sentries, escaped from the royal camp—which was pitched at no great distance from the river—and, at the head of a band of hostages, swam across the

stream. Ambassadors were at once sent to demand her surrender and to say that the king would regard a refusal as a virtual violation of the peace. The hostage was accordingly restored ; but the king, filled with admiration for the exploit, sent her back in safety to her friends.

(c) An officer, who happened to be stationed with a handful of men on the bridge, had witnessed the capture of the fort by the invading host, and now saw them descending the hill at full speed. Knowing that, if he deserted his post, they would immediately cross the river, he solemnly implored his countrymen to destroy the bridge with fire and steel. Thereupon he advanced to meet the enemy and maintained his position with his handful of men until warned by the shouts of those who were toiling in his rear that they had accomplished their object.

APPENDIX.

I. THE PREPOSITION.

1. Latin prepositions govern either the accusative or the ablative ; but **In**, **sub** (*below*), **super** (*above*), and **subter** (*beneath*), govern both.

Note—**Gratiā** and **causā** (*for the sake of*) govern the genitive ; but they are really nouns used as prepositions.

2. **In**, **sub**, **super**, and **subter** (*beneath*) govern the *ablative* when they express *rest*, and the *accusative* when they express *motion* : as, **In urbe**, *in the city* ; **in urbem**, *into the city* ; **sub muro**, *under the wall* ; **sub murum**, *up under the wall* ; **super eo pendet**, *it hangs over him* ; **super eum volat**, *it flies over him*.

WITH ABLATIVE.

3. The following nine prepositions govern the ablative : **A** (or **ab**), *from, by* ; **coram**, *in presence of* ; **cum**, *with* ; **de**, *from, concerning* ; **e** (**ex**), *out of* ; **prae**, *in front of, in consequence of* ; **pro**, *in front of, on behalf of* ; **sine**, *without* ; **tenus**, *up to* (written after its case ; also with gen.).

WITH ACCUSATIVE.

4. All other prepositions govern the accusative. A list is given for reference : **Ad**, *towards* ; **adversus**, *against* ; **ante**, *before* ; **apud**, *beside* ; **circum** (or **circā**), *round* ; **cis** (or **citrā**), *on this side of* ; **contrā**, *against* ; **ergā**, *towards* ; **extrā**, *outside of* ; **inter**, *among* ; **infrā**, *below* ; **intrā**, *within* ; **iuxtā**, *near* ; **ob**, *on account of* ; **penes**, *in the power of* ; **per**, *through* ; **post**, *behind* ; **praeter**, *past* ; **prope**, *near to* ; **propter**, *close to, on account of* ; **secundum**, *along, after* ; **trans**, *across* ; **versus**, *towards* (written after its case) ; **ultrā**, *beyond*.

PREPOSITION WITH NOUNS IN -ING.

5. The prepositions **ad**, **ob**, **in**, **inter** and (rarely) **de**, may be joined with the gerund or gerundive, to express an English preposition with a noun in -ing : as,

Ad pacem petendam huc missi sumus. *We were sent here for the purpose of asking peace.*

Turpe est pecuniam accipere ob rem iudicandam. *It is a shame to take money for giving a verdict.*

Inter aedificandos muros. *During the building of the walls.*

Quae in hac rogatione suadendā dixerunt. *They made these remarks in recommending the bill.*

With other prepositions, a periphrasis—as often seen already—is needed. See p. 139, 1.

Other examples may be given. Thus :

(a) *I am in favor of returning.* Redeundum esse censeo.

(b) *Hoping is different from believing.* Aliud est credere, aliud sperare (lit., *it is one thing to believe, another to hope*).

(c) *In blaming them, you praise me.* Quum culpas eos, me laudas.

(d) *I am surprised at your going away.* Miror quod abis (p. 99, 6).

(e) *I will not object to your going away.* Non recusabo quin abeas. See also p. 22, 2, 3.

(f) *I am tired of hearing this.* Me taedet hoc audire.

(g) *He urged them to the undertaking of the war.* Monuit ut bellum susciperetur.

(h) *You have no reason for being angry.* Non habes cur irascaris.

(i) *Since setting out, I have written twice.* Ex quo tempore profectus sum, bis scripsi.

(j) *Before setting out, I wrote twice.* Priusquam profectus sum, bis scripsi.

(k) *He was late in coming.* Serus vēnit.

(l) *He was foremost in asserting.* Primus (or princeps) dixit.

(m) *What do you mean by thanking me?* Quid tibi vis quod mihi gratias agis?

(n) *By breaking down the bridge, he cut off supplies.* Ponte rescisso, commeatus interclusit.

(o) *Instead of loving, you hate me.* Odisti me quum amare debeas (p. 108, 6). See also p. 15, 5.

(p) *What will you do on going there?* Quid facies quum eo iveris?

(q) *He was accused of killing them.* Accusatus est quod eos occidisset (p. 99, 6, and 137, 2).

He was praised for saving the city. Laudatus est quod urbem servaverat.

(r) *They were very near assaulting him.* Minimum abfuit quin eum violarent.

(s) *He is in the habit of lying.* Mentiri solet.

(t) *As to pardoning, I will do no such thing.* Quod rogas ut ignoscam, nihil eiusmodi faciam.

(u) *I have no doubt about his going.* Non dubito quin iturus sit.

(v) *Besides speaking Latin, he also speaks Greek.* Non solum Latine sed etiam Graece loquitur.

(w) *By doing this, I shall reach home in time.* Quod si fecero, domum temperi perveniam.

(x) *I shall not punish him for doing it.* Quod hoc fecerit, non eum puniam.

(y) *He was condemned without being present.* Absens condemnatus est.

6. The prepositions are widely used with nouns to form idiomatic adverbial phrases of *place*, *time*, and *manner*. Such prepositional phrases should be committed to memory as they are met with. A list is added for reference :—

A or ab (*from, by*).

A fronte, *in front* (so, a latere, *in flank*; a tergo, *in rear*); a senatu stat, *he stands on the Senate's side*; a re frumentaria laborare, *to be in distress with regard to supplies*; confestim a proello. *immediately after the battle.*

Ad (*to*).

Ad ludos pecunia decernitur, *money is voted for the games*; ad fortunam felix, *fortunate in point of fortune*; ad Cannas, *in*

the neighborhood of Cannae; ad Sicillam, off Sicily; ad aliorum arbitrium, at the beck of others; omnes ad unum, all to a man.

Apud (*beside*).

Apud forum, near the forum; apud me, in my house; apud me plus valet, he has more influence with me; apud Terentium, in the writings of Terence.

Cum (*with*).

Cum gladio, sword in hand or wearing a sword; magnā cum curā quaerit, he seeks with great care; confer hanc pacem cum illo bello, compare this peace with that war; cum aliquo certare, contend with a person.

De (*from, about*).

De industria, on purpose; bene mōrēri de patria, deserve well of one's country.

E or **ex** (*out of*).

Ex equis pugnare, fight on horseback; statua ex aere facta, a statue made of bronze; ex consulatu, immediately after his consulship; ex itinere, while on the march; quaerere ex aliquo, ask from a person; ex improviso, unexpectedly; ex foedere, in accordance with the treaty; ex sententia, satisfactorily; ex parte magna, in a great measure.

In (*in or into*).

In equo, on horseback; in barbaria, among barbarians; in bonis ducere, reckon among blessings; in te unum se tota convertet civitas, the whole state will turn to you alone; pietas in deos, piety to the gods; pecunia in rem militarem data, money given for military purposes; in rem tuam hoc est, this is for your interest; in dies, every day; in horas, every hour; denarius in singulos modios, a denarius for every bushel; in posterum diem, for the next day.

Inter (*between, among*).

Inter me et te hoc interest, there is this difference between you and me; inter se aspicebant, they kept looking at one another; inter aedificandos muros, during the building of the walls.

Per (*through*).

Per vim, *by violence*; per speculatores, *by means of spies* (secondary agent); per me, *through my instrumentality*; per te stetit quominus vinceret, *it was owing to you that he did not conquer*; digladiantur per me licet, *they may fight it out, as far as I am concerned*; per te stetit quominus venirem, *it was owing to you that I did not come*.

Praeter (*past, except*).

Praeter modum, *beyond measure*; decem praeter se, *ten besides themselves*; omnes praeter unum, *all except one*; praeter naturam, *outside the course of nature*.

Pro (*before, instead of, in behalf of*).

Pro occiso relictus, *left for dead*; pro meritis gratias agere, *to thank for services*; pro multitudine hominum, fines angustos habent, *considering their population, they have limited territory*; proelium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium editur, *a battle is fought fiercer than might have been expected from the number of combatants*.

Sub (*under, up to*).

Sub nostram aciem successerunt, *they came right up to our line*; quae sub sensus sunt, *what is within the range of the senses*; sub haec dicta omnes procubuerunt, *after these words all prostrated themselves*; sub ipsâ profectione, *at the very start*; sub noctem, *at night-fall*.

EXERCISE.

1. Consider what has to be done about this matter. 2. They pitched a camp near the river, and a little beyond that place. 3. I saw it when I was sailing towards Athens. 4. He descended from the mountain and advanced against them. 5. You have the greatest influence with him. 6. They have settled under a high hill. 7. You will not see the sun for the multitude of spears. 8. Work according to your strength. 9. In whose hands is the power? 10. Is there a race that dwells beneath the earth? 11. Do not speak in his behalf. 12. After so many battles they are tired of war. 13. Such were the arguments urged against this law.

II.—RULES FOR GENDER.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension ending in *-ā* and *-ē* are feminine ; those ending in *-as* and *-es* are masculine.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Names of male persons in *-a* are masculine : *as*,
Poëta bonus, a good poet ; *nauta timidus*, a timid sailor.
2. *Dāma*, a deer ; *talpa*, a mole ; *Hadria*, the Adriatic Sea, are usually masculine.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the second declension ending in *-us*, *-er*, *-ir*, *-os* (Greek), are masculine ; those in *-um*, *-on* (Greek), are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.

Domus (house), *alvus* (belly), *carbāsus* (linen ; pl., *carbāsa*, sails), *cōlus* (distaff), *hūmus* (the ground), *vannus* (a winnowing shovel), are feminine.

Pēlāgus (the sea ; pl., *pēlāgē*, nom. and acc. ; Greek), *vulgus*, (rarely masc. ; crowd), *virus* (poison), are neuter. (The two last are used only in sing.)

THIRD DECLENSION.

MASCULINE TERMINATIONS.

Most nouns of the third declension ending in *-er*, *-or*, *-os*, *-es*, (increasing in the genitive), *-o* (except *-do*, *-go*, *-io*), are masculine : *as*, *Carcēr Romanus*, a Roman prison ; *honor magnus*, a great honor ; *flos albus*, a white flower ; *paries altus*, a high wall ; *sermo Latinus*, the Latin language.

EXCEPTIONS.

(1) *-er* : *cadāver* (dead body), *iter* (road), *papāver* (poppy), *tuber* (swelling), *uber* (udder), *ver* (spring), *verber* (lash), are neuter.

(2) -or: arbor (*tree*), is feminine; æquor (*sea*), marmor (*marble*), cor (*heart*), are neuter.

(3) os: cos (*whetstone*), dos (*dowry*), are feminine; os (ossis, *a bone*), ōs (ōris, *mouth*), are neuter.

(4) -es: compes (*fetter*), merces (*merchandise*), merges (*a sheaf*), quies, rēquies (*rest*), sēges (*a crop*), tēges (*a covering*), are feminine; and aes (*copper*), is neuter.

(5) o: caro (*carnis, flesh*) and ēcho (*an echo*), are feminine.

FEMININE TERMINATIONS.

Most nouns of the third declension which end in -do, -go, -lo, -as, -is, -aus, -x, -es (not increasing in the genitive), -s (preceded by a consonant), -ūs (in words of more than one syllable), are *feminine*: as,

Multitudo magna, *a great multitude*; imāgo cerēa, *a wax image*; orātio longa, *a long speech*; aestas callida, *a warm summer*; rara avis, *a rare bird*; laus parva, *small praise*; vox magna, *a loud voice*; clādes nostra, *our defeat*; plebs Romana, *the Roman populace*; virtūs divina, *heroic valor*.

EXCEPTIONS.

(1) -o: ordo (*an order*), cardo (*hinge*), ilgo (*˘nattock*), margo (*margin of a river*), are masculine.

(2) -as: as (assis, *a small coin*), élēphas (elephantis, *an elephant*) are masc.; vas (vasis, *vessel*), fas (*right*), nēfas (*wrong*), are neuter,

(3) -is: amnis (*river*), collis (*hill*), cinis (*cinder, ashes*), crinis (*hair*), ensis (*sword*), fascis (*bundle*), finis (*an end*), follis (*bellows*), fūnis (*rope*), ignis (*fire*), lāpis (*stone*), mensis (*month*), orbis (*circle*), panis (*bread*), piscis (*fish*), postis (*post*), pulvis (*dust*), sanguis (*blood*), torris (*fire-brand*), unguis (*nail*), vectis (*crowbar*), vermis (*worm*), are masculine.

(4) x: cālix (*a cup*), cōdex (*a book*), cortex (*bark of a tree*), grex (*a flock*), pollex (*a thumb*), silex (*flint*), vertex (*top*), are masculine.

(5) -es: acināces (*scimitar*), is masculine.

(6) **-s** preceded by a consonant : **mons** (*mountain*), **dens** (*tooth*), **fons** (*fountain*), **pons** (*bridge*), **bīdens** (*mattock*), **rudens** (*rope*), are masculine.

NEUTER TERMINATIONS.

Most nouns of the third declension which end in **-c, -a, -t, -e, -l, -n, -ar, -ur, -ūs** (short in gen.), **-ūs** (in words of one syllable), are neuter : **as**,

Lac album, *white milk*; **pōēma longum**, *a long poem*; **cāput suum**, *his own head*; **māre magnum**, *a great sea*; **ānimal fērum**, *a wild animal*; **līmen altum**, *a high threshold*; **calcar acūtum**, *a sharp spur*; **fulgur clārum**, *a bright flash*; **tempūs antiquum**, *ancient time*; **lūs magnum**, *a great right*.

EXCEPTIONS.

- (1) **-l**: **sal** (*salt*), **sol** (*sun*), are masculine.
- (2) **-n**: **lien** (*spleen*), **ren**, (*kidney*), **splen** (*spleen*), **pecten** (*comb*), are masculine.
- (3) **-ur**: **fur** (*thief*), **furfur** (*bran*), **turtur** (*turtle-dove*), **vultur** (*vulture*), are masculine.
- (4) **-ūs**: **pēcus** (**pēcūdis**, *a single head of cattle*), is feminine; **lēpūs** (**lēpōris**, *a hare*) is masculine.
- (5) **ūs**: **grus** (**gruis**, *crane*), **sus** (**suis**, *pig*), **mus** (**muris**, *mouse*) are masculine.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension that end in **-us**, are masculine; those in **-u**, are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.

Ācus (*a needle*), **cōlus** (*distaff*; also of the 2nd), **dōmus**, *a house*; **mānus** (*hand*), **porticus** (*portico*), **tribus** (*a tribe*), **īdūs** (*Iduum, the Ides of the month*), **Quinquātrūs** (*pl., feast of Minerva*), **pēnūs** (*store*), are feminine.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in **-es**, and are feminine.

EXCEPTIONS.

Dies (*day*), is masculine or feminine in the singular, and masculine in the plural; *meridies* (*midday*, used only in sing.), is masculine.

III.—VERBS FOLLOWED BY UT.

The following verbs take *ut* with the subjunctive, with *ne* for *that—not* in a final clause :

<i>adduco, induce.</i>	<i>facio, bring about.</i>
<i>assequor, secure.</i>	<i>fero, propose.</i>
<i>cāveo, take care (ne).</i>	<i>impello, urge.</i>
<i>censeo, recommend.</i>	<i>insto, press.</i>
<i>cogo, compel.</i>	<i>mollor, endeavor.</i>
<i>committo, cause, permit.</i>	<i>obtineo, secure.</i>
<i>concēdo, allow.</i>	<i>opto, wish.</i>
<i>consēquor, secure (ne).</i>	<i>paciscor, engage (ne).</i>
<i>constituo, determine.</i>	<i>perficio, bring about.</i>
<i>contendo, strive.</i>	<i>permitto, entrust.</i>
<i>curo, take care (ne).</i>	<i>provideo, take care (ne).</i>
<i>dare operam, take care (ne).</i>	<i>sancio, enact (ne).</i>
<i>decerno, determine.</i>	<i>statuo, resolve (ne).</i>
<i>efficio, bring about (ne).</i>	<i>tempto, try.</i>
<i>enitor, strive.</i>	<i>teneo, secure (ne).</i>
<i>exspecto, await.</i>	<i>video, take care (ne).</i>
<i>evinco, carry a point.</i>	

But *decerno* and *statuo* (*resolve*) also take a modal inf. (p. 18, 3)

IV.—ON CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS, ETC.

(*a*) *Atque* (*and, moreover*) introduces something of greater importance than what preceded;—*que*, something of less importance: as,

Senatus populusque Romanus *The Senate and people of Rome.*

Caedes atque incendia appropinquare dixerunt. *They said that murders, nay, conflagrations, were approaching.*

(b) **Aut....aut** usually contrast alternatives that are mutually exclusive : as,

Hoc aut verum aut falsum est. *This is either true or false.*

Vel....vel contrast alternatives that may co-exist : as,

Eos vel metu vel spe adstringere potest. *He can bind them either by fear or by hope (it matters not which).*

Note.—**Ve....ve** is poetical for **vel....vel** : as, **Nec quod fuimusve sumusve cras erimus.** *What we either were or are, we shall not be to-morrow;* but **-ve** is used alone in prose for **aut** : as, **Timet ne plus minusve dicat.** *He is afraid he will say too much or too little.*

Sive (seu) is used to correct a previous assertion : as,

Quid miserius hoc ab urbe discessu sive potius turpissimā fugā? *What more wretched than this departure, or rather shameful flight, from the city?*

Sive....sive are used to introduce two alternative adverbial clauses of condition, where it is unimportant which is chosen : as,

Seu preces seu superstitio valuit, nil mutatum est. *Whether it was entreaty or superstition that prevailed, no change was made.*

(c) **Haud (not)** is usually joined with adjectives or adverbs : as,

Haud procul, not far. It is used, however, with a verb **in** **haud scio an** (*I almost think*).

(d) **Non solum (or modo)....sed etiam** is *not only....but also*. **Non solum (modo) non....sed ne quidem** is *not only not....but not even*; but when the two clauses have a common predicate which is expressed in the latter only, the **non** is omitted : as,

Regnat advena, non modo vicinae, sed ne Italicae quidem stirpis *The king is a stranger, not only not descended from a neighboring stock, but not even from an Italian one.*

(e) **An** is often used at the head of a rhetorical question : as,

An me, nisi te audire vellem, censes haec dicturum fuisse?

You surely do not think that I would have said what I did, if I had not wished to hear you.

(f) At is used to introduce an objection; at enim, a supposed objection: as,

Nunquam nisi honorificentissime eum appellat. At in eo multa fecit asperius. *He never speaks of him except in the most complimentary terms. Yes; but in dealing with him he acted on many occasions rather roughly.*

At enim ille ab hac ratione dissentit. *But, I shall be told, he differs from this view.*

(g) Nedum is used for *much less*: as,

Vix in ipsis tectis frigus vitatur: nedum in mari facile sit. *It is difficult to avoid the cold in the house; much less would it be easy upon the sea.*

Ne dicam (without any effect upon the construction) is used for *not to say*: as,

Crudelem Castorem ne dicam impium. *How cruel, not to say unnatural, Castor is!* (p. 58, note).

a
qui
qua
a
(-an
a
th
a
a
a
80,
a
acc
a
(chi
exp
the
ver
(pre
a
a
51,
a
a
-tin
siste
a
a
pia)
a
-cep
a
dat.
a
a
-fect
a

VOCABULARY.

N.B.—*r.* 1=*regular of 1st conjugation*; *r.* 4=*regular of 4th conjugation*.

A.

a, usually not expressed; (a certain), quidam; **a city which** ea urbs quae....

abdicate, I, me magistratu abdicō, (-āre, -āvi, -ātum).

ability or abilities, ingenium; **to the best of my a.**, use quam possum.

able, pōten-s, -tis; peritus.

able, I am, possum, posse, pōtūi.

abound, I, af-fluo, -flūere, -fluxi (p. 80, 2).

about (*of place*), circum (prep. with acc.); (= concerning), de (prep. with abl.).

about (=nearly), fere or ferme, adv. (chiefly with numeral adjectives or words expressing amount; usually placed after the words limited); paene (used with verbs); (= in the neighborhood of), circa (prep. with acc.).

abroad, peregre.

absence (in my), me absente (p. 51, 1).

absent, I am, ab-sum, -esse, -fui.

abstain from, I, abs-tīnēo, -tīnēre, -tīnui, -tentum (with abl., p. 74, 3); ab-sisto, -sistere, -stīti (with abl.).

abstinence, abstinētia.

abundant variety, say plenty (copia) and variety.

accept, I, ac-cipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum.

acceptable to, grāt-us, a, -um (with dat., p. 69, 9).

accident, cās-us, ūs; or use accido

accomplish, I, ef-ficō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum.

accordingly, itaque.

account of, on, propter (prep. with acc.); causā with genitive (usually placed after the expression governed by it).

account, I take into, (or take a. of) rationem hab-ēo, -ēre, -ui, -itum (with genitive).

account-book, tabula, ae.

accuse, I, accūso, -āre, -āvi, -atum (p. 65, 1).

accused, rē-us, -i.

accustomed, I am, solēo, -ēre, sol-itus sum (p. 18, 3).

acknowledge. See admit.

acquire, I, ad-īpiscor, -īpisci, -eptus.

acquit, I, ab-solvo, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum (p. 65, 1).

acre, īngŕum, -i, n. (sing. declined in the second declension; pl. in third; for division of, see p. 153, 2).

across, trans (prep. with acc.).

act, fact-um, -i.

act, I, āg-o, -ere, ēgi, actum.

action, use vb.; **by a.**, agendo.

activity, use strenuus.

added, to this is, huc accedit (p. 15, 5).

adherent, use suus.

administer, I, gubern-o (r. 1).

administration, respublica.

admiration, use miror; **without a.** use quin with vb.

admire, I, admīr-or, -āri, -ātus sum.

admit, I, con-fiteor, -fiteri, -fessus sum; (let in), admitto.

admittance, use admitto.

adopt, a policy, consilium capere.

adopt, I, ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum (with abl., p. 80, 1).

advance (go forward), I, prō-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cessī, -cessum; pro-grēdior, -grēdi, -gressus sum; **I advance my friends to office**, amicos meos ad honores promoveo.

advantage, is of, prosum.

adversity, res adversae.

advice, consiliū, -i, n.

advise, I, mōn-ēo, -ēre, -ŭi, -itum.

Aedui, Aedū-i, -ōrum, M. (pl.).

Aelius, Aeli-us, -i, M.

Aesop, Aesōp-us, -i, M.

afar, prōcul (adv.).

affair, res, rei, f.; **affairs**, res, or res gestae.

afraid, I am, tīm-ēo, -ēre, -ŭi; mētū-o, -ēre, -i; vērēor, vērēri, vēritus sum (p. 17, 1).

Africa, Africa, -ae, f.

after, post (prep. with acc.); postcā (adv.); postquam (conj. with perf. indic., p. 102, 4); quum (with subj., p. 106, 1); abl. abs. (p. 51, 1; 107, 4).

again, Itērum (*a second time*); rursus.

again and again, saepissime.

against, contrā (prep. with acc.);

against my will, me invito (p. 51, 1).

against, I offend, viol-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

Agamemnon, Agāmēmnōn, -ōnis, M.

agent, often expressed by an indirect question; *I don't know the agent*, nescio quis hoc egērit (p. 32, 1).

Agessilaus, Agesilā-us, -i, M.

ago, abhinc (before expressions of time and with acc. or abl.); *ten years ago*, abhinc decem annos (or annis.)

agreeably, convenienter (with dat., p. 69, 9.)

agreed, it is, con-stat, -stāre, -stitit; convēnit, -vēnīre, -vēnit; *all are agreed*, inter omnes constat.

agreement, consensū-o, -ōnis, F.

aid, auxiliū, -i, N.

aid, I, auxili-o sum (with dat., p. 69, 8); sub-vēnīo, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum (with dat., p. 71, 6); iāv-o, -āre, iāvi, iātum (with acc.); *I come to your aid*, tibi subvenio.

Alexander, Alexand-er, -ri.

alike, pariter.

alive, viv-us; **be a**, vivo.

all, omn-is, -e (adj.)

allege, I, dicō-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

allied, socius.

allow, (let) I, sīno, -ēre, sivi, sītum.

allowed, I am, mihi licet, -ēre, licuit (p. 70, 2); *it is allowed by all*, inter omnes constat.

ally, soci-us, -i, M.

almost, fere, paene, prope (of place); see **about**=*nearly*; p. 33, 4.

alone, sol-us, -a, -um, un-us, -a, -um; *I am alone in doing this*; hoc solus (o. unus) facio (p. 11, 2).

Alps, Alp-es, -ium, F.

already, iam.

also, quōque, idem (p. 90, 12).

altar, ār-a, -ae, F.

alter, muto.

altogether, omnino.

always, semper (adv.).

amass, I, compār-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

ambassador, lēgāt-us, -i, M.

among, inter (prep. with acc.); in (prep. with abl.).

ancestors, maiōr-es, -um.

ancient, (belonging to old time) pris-cus, pristinus, -a, -um, antiqu-us, -a, -um; (full of years), vētust-us, -a, -um.

and, et, -que (written after), atque (ac, before consonants only.)

anger, ira, -ae, F.; Irācundī-a, -ae, F.

angry, Irāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

nis, F.

h dat., p.
ni, -ventum
-āre, iūvi,
o *your aid*,

-ri.

I, -ātum.

sīvi, sītum.
licet, -ēre,
by *all*, inter

be (of place);
4.

-us, -a, -am;
hoc solu, (o.

, 12).

e, -āvi, -ātum.

-i, M.

with acc.); in

am.

old time) pris-
qu-us, -a, -um;
-um.

after), atque
)

undī-a, -ae, F.
adj.).

angry with, I am, iras-cor, -ci,
irātus sum (with dat., p. 71, 6).

animal, anim-al, -ālis, N.

announce, nuntio (r. 1).

announcement, expressed by the
perf. part.: **the announcement of**
the defeat, clades nuntiata.

annoyed, I am, me piget (p. 66, 3).

another, alt-er, -ēra, -erum (of two);
alius, -a, -ud (of more than two).

answer, responsum, -i, N.

answer, I, respond-eo, -ēre, -i, re-
sponsum; **I make the same answer**,
idem respondeo; **he makes no an-**
swer, nihil respondet.

Antonius, Antōnī-us, -i, M.

anxiety, sollicitūd-o, -inis, F.

anxious, sollicit-us, -a, -um.

anxious, I am, cūp-īo, -ēre, -īvi (-fi),
ītum.

any, quis; (in affirmative clauses) quivis,
quilibet; (in negative) quisquam or ullus,
(p. 95, 3, 4); *ecquis* (p. 97, d).

any longer, ultrā (adv.); diutius.

anything, (after a neg.), quidquam;
(**you please**), quidvis, quidlibet (p.
95, 2).

Apollo, Apoll-o, -inis, M.

apparent, it is, manifestum est;
appār-et, -ēre, -ūit; use videor for adj.: =
as each shall seem most mean, &c. (p.
118, 5).

apparently, use *seem*.

appear, I, videor, -ēri, visus sum

appearance, spēcī-es, -ei, F.

applaud, I, plaud-o, -ēre, plausi,
plausum.

application, stūdi-um, -i; **appli-**
cation to literature, studium lit-
terarum.

approach, advent-us, -ūs, M.

approach, I, ad-vēnīo, -vēnīre, -vēnī,
-ventum.

approval, use vb.

approve, prōbo (r. i.).

April, April-is, -e, (adj.).

argument, urge, use dico.

Aricia, Aricia, -ae, F.

arise, I, con-surgo, -surgēre, -surrexi,
-surrectum; see *rise*,

arm, humerus; vb., armo (r. i.).

arms, arm-a, -ōrum, N. (pl.).

army, exercit-us, -ūs, M.

Arpinum, Arpin-um, -i, N.

arrest, I, ar-rīpio, -rīpēre, -rīpūi,
-reptum; cor-rīpio, -rīpēre, -rīpūi, -rep-
tum.

arrival, advent-us, -ūs, M.

arrive, I, per-vēnīo, -vēnīre, -vēnī,
-ventum; **I arrive at the city**, ad
urbem pervenio.

arrogance, use arrogans.

arrow, sagitt-a, -ae, F.

art, ar-s, -tis, F.

as (correlative of *same*), qui (p. 10, 1);
corr. of *such*, qualis; of *great*, quantus
(p. 10, 1).

as not, in consecutive clause, ut-non
(p. 14, 4).

as soon as, p. 102, 4.

ascertain, I, cog-nosco, -nosce-re,
-nōvi, -nītum; certior factus sum.

ashamed, I am, me pudet (-ēre,
pūdāt); *I am ashamed of you*, tui me
pudet (p. 66, 3).

ask (or **ask for**) I, rōg-o, -āre, -āvi,
-ātum; posco, -ēre, pōposci; pēto, -ēre
petīvi, pētītum.

assassination, expressed by perf.
part. pass.; *after Caesar's assassination*,
post Caesārem interfectum.

assault, use immitto (*send against*).

assemble, I, (trans.), convōc-o, -āre,
-āvi, -ātum; (intr.), conven-io, -ire, -vēnī,
-ventum.

assent, lend a blind, temere assentior.

assert, I, dico, -ēre, dixi, dictum.

assertion, make, dico.

assign, I, tribuo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; divido.

assist, assistance. See aid.

assume, sumo.

astonishing, admirabilis.

at, ad. See p. 82.

at once, statim.

Athens, Athēn-ae, -ārum, F. (pl.).

Atlantis, Atlant-is, -idis, F.

attack, impēt-us, -ūs, M.

attack, I, ag-grēdior, -grēdī, -gressus sum (with acc.); impetum facio in (with acc.); **I make an attack on** (a place), op-pugno, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (with acc.).

attain, attingere (ad).

attempt, conāt-us, -ūs.

attempt, I, cōn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum.

attention, animadversi-o, -ōnis, F.

attract, traho.

audience, use audio; p. 166, c.

August, August-us, -a, -um.

authority, pōtest-as, -ātis, F.; auctorit-as, -ātis, F.

avail, oneself of, utor.

avenge, I, ulcisc-or, -i, ultus sum.

avenue, ādit-us, -ūs, M.

avoid, I, vit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

away, I am, ab-sum, -esse, -fūl.

away, I go, āb-ēo, -ire, -ivī (-ii), -itum.

B.

bad, māl-us, -a, -um (adj.).

back, terg-um, -i, N.

baggage, impedimenta, -orum.

Baiae, Bai-ae, -ārum, F. (pl.).

Balbus, Balb-us, -i, M.

banish, I, ex civitate pello (pellere, pēpūli, pulsum).

banished, extorr-is (ex, terra), with abl. (p. 74, 4).

banishment, exili-um, -i, N.; **I am in banishment**, exul-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

banker, argentarius.

bark, I, latr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

base, turp-is, -e (adj.).

battle, pugna, -ae, F.; proeli-um, -i, N.; **in battle**, in acie; **there has been a disastrous b.**, infelicitèr pugnatum est.

bear, I, fero, ferre, tūli, lātum; tollero, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

beast, fēra, -ae, F.; bēlua, ae.

beat, use vinco.

beautiful, pulch-er, -ra, -rum; (of places), āmoen-us, -a, -um.

beauty, pulchritūd-o, -inis, F.

because, quod, quia, quoniam (p. 113, 2).

become, I, fio, fieri, factus sum.

before, antēā, antēhāc ante (adv.); **ten years before**, decem annos ante (p. 86, 4).

before, ante (prep.).

before, antequam, priusquam (p. 104, 7).

beg, I, or-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; **I beg you not**, te oro nē (with subj.; p. 12, 2).

begin, I, in-cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum; coepi, -isse (p. 142, 6); **at the beginning of spring**, primo vere; **at the beginning of night**, primā nocte.

beginning, initī-um, -i, N. (see above).

behave, I, me gero (gerere, gessi, gestum).

belief, use vb.

believe, I, crē-do, -dēre, -didī, -dītum; **I am believed**, mihi creditur (p. 72, 10).

believing, by, credendo (p. 42, 6); **seeing is believing**, videre est credere (p. 43, note 2).

belong to, p. 59, 2; see *have*.
below, *infra*.
benefit, *commod-um*, -i, N.
benefit, I, *pro-sum*, -desse, -fui (with dat.; p. 70, 1).
bereft, *orb-us*, -a, -um (with abl., p. 74, 4).
beseech, *or-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; *obséc-or* (r. 1).
besiege, I (*blockade*), *ob-sidéo*, -sidère, -sēdi, -sessum; (*by actual attack*), *oppugn-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
besieged, *the*, use rel. clause.
betray, I, *prō-do*, -dūre, -dēdi, -ditum.
better, *melior*, comp. of *bonus*; it would be better, *melius est*; *satius est* (p. 124, 2).
between, *inter* (*prep. with acc.*)
bewail, *deploro* (r. 1).
bind, *iungo*.
bird, *avis*, -is (F.).
birth, of noble, *nobili loco natus* (p. 74, 4).
bite, *mors-us*, -ūs, M.
blame, *culp-a*, ae, F.
blame, I, *vitūpér-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
blessing, *bonum*.
blind, *caec-us*, -a, -um.; **blinding**, omit, as being implied.
blindness, *caecit-as*, -atis.
blockade, *obsideo*, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum
blood (in veins), *sanguis*, *sanguinis*, M.; (when shed), *cru-or*, -ōris, M.
blossom, *effloresco*.
blush to do it, I, *me pudet hoc facere*.
boast, I, *glōrī-or*, -āri, -ātus sum; I make the same boast, *idem glōrior*.
boat, *navigium*.
body, *corpus*, *corpōris*, N.; **a great body of men**, *magna vis hominum*
bold, *aud-ax*, -ācis (adj.).
boldly, *audacter* or *audaciter*.
bond, use neut. pron.

book, *lib-er*, -ri, M.
borders, *fin-es*, -ium, M. (pl.).
born, I am, *nascor*, *nasci*, *nātus sum*.
born to rule, *nātus ad regendum*.
born of a noble family, *nobili gente natus* (p. 74, 4).
borrow money, *pecuniam mutuam accipere* or *sumere*.
both, *uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque*; *ambo*, -ae, -o.
both... and, et... et; -que... -que; *vel... vel*.
bottom, *fundus*, -i, M.; *imus*, -a, -um;
at the bottom of the mountain, *in monte imo* (p. 61 (e)).
boxer, *pūg-il*, -ilis, M.
boy, *pū-er*, -ēri, M.; **from a boy** (*from boyhood*), *a puero*, or, when used of more than one, *a pueris*.
boyhood, *pūcēritia*, -ae, F. (see above).
brave, *fort-is*, -e (adj.).
bravely, *fortiter* (adv.).
bread, *panis*, -is, M.
break, I, *frang-o*, -ēre, *frēgi*, *fractum*;
I break a law, *legem violō* (-āre, -āvi, -ātum); **I break my word**, *fidem fallo* (-ēre, *fēfelli*, *falsum*).
break a bridge, I, *pontem interrumpo* (-rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum); *pontem interrumpo* (-scindere, -scēdi, -scissum).
breast, *pectus*, -ōris, N.
bridge, *pon-s*, -tis, M.; **I build a bridge over a river**, *pontem in flumine facio*.
brief, *brēv-is*, -e.
brigand, *latr-o*, -ōnis, M.
bring, I, *fēro*, *ferre*, *tūli*, *lātum*; *dūco*, -ēre, *dūxi*, *ductum*; **I bring this to you**, *hoc tibi affero*; **I bring help to you**, *operam* (or *auxilium*) *tibi fero*; *tibi auxilio venio* (dat.; p. 69, 8).
Britain, *Britannī-a*, -ae, F.
broad, *lāt-us*, -a, -um.
brother, *frāt-er*, -ris, M.
Brundisium, *Brundisī-um*, N.

build, I, aedific-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
I build a bridge, pontem facio; **I build a mound**, aggerem extruo (-ēre extruxi, extructum).

burden, ōn-us, -ēris, N.

burn, I, crēm-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
 uro, -ēre, ussi, ustum; in-cendo, -cendēre -cendi, -censum.

bury, sepelio, -ire, īvi, ultum.

business, res, negōti-um; p. 60, 2, note.

but, sed, verum (emphatic).

butcher, I, trucid-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

buy, I, ōm-o, -ēre, ōmī, emptum.

by (of agent), a, before a consonant;
 ab, before a vowel or h; abs, before te;
 (of secondary agent) per, with acc.; **by land and sea**, terrā marique.

by-stander, use adsto.

C.

call (summon), I, vōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

call (name), I, appell-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

call down, I, devōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (from = de + ahl.).

call out, evōco; (**exclaim**), I, exclām-o, -are, -āvi, -ātum.

call together, cogo; convoco.

camp, castr-a, -ōrum, N. (pl.).

can (am able), I, possum, posse, pōtūi.

candidate for, I am, pēto, -ēre, pētīvi (petīi), petītum; **I am a candidate for the consulship**, consulatū peto.

Cannae, Cann-ae, -ārum, F. (pl.); **the battle at Cannae**, pugna Can-nensis or pugna apud Cannas.

Canusium, Canusium.

capable of command, imperii capax, -acis (p. 64).

Captive, captiv-us, I, M.

capture, capio; **on the capture of the city**, urbe capta (p. 51).

Capua, Capua, -ae, F.

care, cūr-a, -ae, F.; **care for**, curo (r. 1).

care, take, cave ut (p. 26, 5); **take care that . . . not**, cave ne (p. 26, 5).

care, without, secūr-us, -a, -um.

carry, I, port-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
 fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum.

carry away and drown, absumo.

carry on war, I, bellum gero, (-ēre, gessi, gestum); **I carry on war against the enemy**, bellum contra hostes gero; bellum hostibus infero.

carry up, edūco.

Carthage, Carthāg-o, -inis, F.

Carthaginian, Carthāginiens-is, -e.

case, in our, in nobis; **in case**, si (p. 141, 5, b).

case that, it is the, fit ut (p. 15, 5); p. 106, 2.

cast, I, iācō, iācēre, iēcī, iactum;
 coniciō, -iēcēre, -iēcī, -iectum.

cast (of a spear), iact-us, ūs.

Catiline, Catilin-a, -ae, M.

Cato, Cat-o, -ōnis, M

cause, caus-a, -ae, F.; vb., facio.

cause (loss), I, in-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, illātum.

cause a panic, I, pavorem inīcō, -iēcēre, -iēcī, -iectum.

cautious, caut-us, -a, -um.

cavalry, ēquitāt-us, ūs, M.; ēquītes.

cease, I, de-sīno, -sīnēre, -sīvī, -sītūm;
 de-sisto, -sistēre, -stiti, -stitum.

celebrated, ille; praeclarus.

centre, mēdius, -a, -um; **in the centre of the city**, mediā urbe;
the centre of the line, media acies.

centurion, centūrī-o, -ōnis, M.

certain (sure), cert-us, -a, -um; **it is certain**, certum est; **certain vic-**

tory, victoria explorata; **as certain**, pro certo.

certain (some), aliquis, aliquae, aliquid or aliquid (p. 96, 5); **a c.**, quidam.

chance, sors; fortūn-a, -ae, F.; cās-us, -ūs, M.; **by chance**, forte, cāsu.

change, I, mūt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; **a change**, res.

character, (natural), ingēnī-um, -ī, N.; often expressed by a dependent question: **I know the character of the man**, scio qualis homo sit; (good character), virt-us, -ūtis, F.; (mode of life), mōr-es -um; (the highest character), mores optimi; the same character as talis . . . qualis (p. 10, 1).

charge (attack), impēt-us, -ūs, M.

charge (attack), **I make**, invād-o -ēre, -vāsi, -vāsum; impetum facio, facere, feci, factum; **I make a charge on the enemy**, hostes invado or impetum in hostes facio.

charge, crimen; (**accuse**) **I**, accūs-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; **I am charged with**, in crimen venio; **I am charged with treason**, in crimen prodicionis venio.

Charybdis, Charybd-is, -is, F.

cheap, vilis.

cheat, I, circum-vēnlo, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum.

check, **I keep in**, mōdēr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum; (**troops**), con-tīnēo, -tīnēre, -tīnūi, -tentum.

child, pū-er, -ērī, M.

children, libēr-i, -ōrum, M.

Cicero, Cicēr-o, -ōnis, M.

circumstance, res, rēī, F.; **a circumstance which**, p. 9, 9; **under these circumstances**, quae cum ita sint; **I yield to circumstances**, temporī cedo.

citadel, ar-x, -cis, F.

Citium, Citium, -ī, N.

citizen, civ-is, -is, M.

citizenship, civit-as, -ātis, F.

city, urb-s, -is, F.

clamor, clām-or, -ōris, M.

class, genus hominum.

clear, **it is**, manifestum est; apparet, -ēre, -nit.

clear (it is) or light, lucet, -ēre, juxit.

clemency, clementi-a, -ae.

clever, callid-us, -a, -um.

client, (at law), hic (p. 88, 4); (political dependent), clien-s, -tis, M.

climb, scan-do, -ēre, -di, -sum.

Clitus, Clit-us, -ī, M.

closed to truth, ears, aures ad veritatem clausae.

closely unites, say joins and bind together (connecto).

cold, frīg-us, -ōris, N.

colleague, collēg-a, -ae, M.

collect, I, col-līgo, -līgēre, -lēgi, -lec-tum; cōgo, -ēre, cōēgi, coactum.

Colline gate, porta Collina.

colony, cōlōnī-a, -ae, F.

come, venio.

command, I, iūbēo, -ēre, iussi, iussum (p. 16, note); impēro, -arc, -āvi, -ātum (p. 71, 6); **I command an army**, exercitui praesum (p. 71, 5).

commerce, mercātūr-a, -ae, F.

commit (a crime) **I**, admitto, -mittēre, -mīsi, -missum.

common, use *all*.

compare, I, con-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, collātum; compāro (r. 1).

compassion, mīserīcordīa.

compel, I, cōgo, -ēre, cōēgi, coactum.

competitor, use decerto (r. 1).

complain, I, quēror, quēri, questus sum (de); **to my complaint he answered nothing**, nihil mihi querenti respondit.

compulsion, use cogo.

conceal, I, cēl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

concerning, de (prep., with 'ab')

concerns me it, mea interest (p. 66, 4); *ad me pertinet* (-ēre, -nit).

conclude, a speech, say *make an end of speaking*.

condemn, I, con-demno, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

condemnation, escape, say *nor was he not condemned*.

condition, stat-us, -ūs, M.

conduct (a government), I, gubern-o (remp.); conduct myself well, I, me bene gero.

conduct, fact-a, -ōrum; or use verb.

confer, I, defero; dōn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

confidence, fidūci-a, -ae, F.; or use confido or fidem habeo (dat.).

confusion, throw into, use turbo.

congratulation, use gratulor (p. 48, 6).

conquer, I, vinc-o, -ēre, vici, victum; sūp-er-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum.

conscious, conscius, a, um; conscious of right, conscius recti.

consent, consensus, -ūs, M.

consequence, event-us, -ūs, M.; a matter of the greatest consequence, res gravissima; it is of great consequence to me, mea multum interest (p. 66, 4).

consider, I, spect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; aestim-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; hāb-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum.

consistent with, etc., say the man who is very brave we wish to be, etc.

conspire (make a conspiracy), I, coniurationem facio (facēre, feci, factum).

constant occurrence, of, say happens more often.

constitutional, e republica; lēgītī-mus, -a, -um.

consul. consūl, -is, M.

consulship, consulāt-us, -ūs; I stand, am a candidate for the

consulship, consulatum peto; in the consulship of, use consul (abl. abs.).

consult, I, consūl-o, -ēre, -nī, -tum; I consult you, te consulo; I consult your interest, tibi consulo (p. 72, 7).

contain, I, con-tīnēo, -tīnēre, -tīnui, -tentum.

contemporary, aequālis, -is, M.

content, content-us, -a, -um (with abl., p. 81, 6).

contest, certām-en, -inis, N.

contract, I, con-traho.

contract, I let out a, lōco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; I take a contract, conduco, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum; I contract to build a bridge, pontem faciendum conduco (p. 46, 6).

control (noun), use penes.

control myself, I, mihi moder-or, -ārī, -ātus sum; mihi temp-er-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

convince, persuadeo.

Corinth, Corinthus, -i, F.

corn, frument-um, -i, N.

corrupt, corrumpo.

costs, it, constat, -āre, -stitit; it costs much, magni constat; it costs too much, nimio constat (p. 79, 12).

cottage, casa, ae.

council, concill-um, -i, M.

count, I, enūm-er-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

country, (one's native), patrī-a, ae, F.; (the state), civīt-as, -ātis, F.; respublica, reipublicae, F.; (territory), fines; (as opposed to the town), rus, rūris, N.; in the country, ruri.

country-house, villa, ae, F.

countrymen, civ-es, -um, M. (pl.).

courage, virt-us, -ūtis, F.; constan-ti-a, -ae, F.; fortitūd-o, -inis, F.

course, res, or use neut. pron.; hold (a c.), facio.

court, iudicium, -i, N.
cover, I, tēgo, -ēre, tectum.
coward, cowardly, ignavus.
Crassus, Crassus, -i, M.; **the gallant Crassus**, Crassus, vir fortissimus.
create, creo (r. 1).
credit, laus, -dis, F; fid-es, -ei, F.
Cretan, Cretensis, -e.
crime, facin-us, -oris, N.; scelus, eris.
criticise, reprehendo, -ēre, -di, -sum.
crooked (bent), curvus, a, um; (**of counsels**), prāvus, a, um.
cross, I, trans-co, -ire, -ivi (ii), -itum.
crown (a circlet), cōrōn-a, -ae, F.; often translated by regnum, -i, N.
cruel, crūdēl-is, -e; saev-us, -a, um.
cruelty, crudelit-as, -ātis, F.
current, flumen.
custom, mos, moris, M; consuetūd-o, -inis, F.
cut off, say *kill*.
Cyprus, Cyprus, -i, F.

D.

dagger, sica, -ae, F.; pugio, -onis, M.
daily, quotidie (of daily repetition); (**with words expressing increase or decrease**), in dies.
damp, say *in consequence of* (prae, withabl.) *this they could not exult* (exsulto).
danger, pericul-um, -i, N.
dangerous, periculosus.
dare, I, audēo, -ēre, ausus sum.
daring, aud-ax, -acis (adj.); **he acted with more daring than discretion**, audacius quam prudentius egit.
daringly, audac-ter (or audac-iter) comp., -ius; sup., -issime.
dart, iacul-um, -i, N.; tel-um, -i, N.
date, often expressed by an indirect question introduced by quando: **I don't know the date of the event**, nescio quando acciderit (p. 32, 1); **at**

an early date, mature, brevi.

daughter, fili-a, -ae, F. (dat. and abl. pl., filiabus).

dawn, prima lux; **at dawn**, primā luce; **dawn, nearer to**, etc., say *the nearer they were away from the rising (ortus) of things, the better they saw*, etc.

day, dies, -ei, M. or F.; **day by day**, see **daily**; **day after day**, diem de die; **day before**, pridie; **of the day before**, hesternus, -a, -um; **for the day**, in diem; **in my day**, meis temporibus; **one day**, postea; aliquando.

daybreak. See **dawn**.

daylight, lux, -cis, F.

dead, mortuus.

deaf ear, turn, etc., say *let us not obey* (obtempero) *those dissuading* (dissuadeo).

dear, car-us, -a, -um; **dearest friends**, homines amicissimi.

death, mor-s, -tis, F.; **after his death**, mortuus (p. 48, 3, note).

debt, aes alienum (literally **another's money**).

deceive, I, de-cipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum.

December, Decemb-er, -ris (adj., p. 147, 3).

decide (determine), I, stāt-ūo, -nēre, -ūi, -ūtum; con-stītūo, -stītūere, -stītūi, -stītūtum (with inf. or *ut* with subj., p. 17, note).

declaration, use *declare*.

declare, dico; declaro (r. 1).

decline, detrecto (r. 1).

declining, 48, 3, note.

decree, I, de-cerno, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum, (p. 17, note.)

decree, a, decret-um, -i, N.

deed, fact-um, -i, N.

deep, alt-us, -a, um; **deep grief**, dolor gravis.

defeat, clād-es, -is, F.; **the defeat at Cannae**, clades Cannensis, or clades apud Cannas; (vb), vīneo.

defend, I, de-fendo, -fendēre, -fendi, -fensum.

defender, defens-or, -ōris, M.

defer, differo.

defile, angustī-ae, -ārum, F. (pl.).

delay, I, mōror, -āri, -ātus; cunct-or.

delay, without, confestim (adv.).

deliberately, consulto.

deliberation, there is need of, opus est consulto (p. 81, 4).

delight, delecto (r. 1) (trans).

delightful, iūcund-us, -a, -um.

deliver a speech, I, orationem habeo (-ēre, -ūi, -itum).

deliver (entrust), I, mand-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

demand, I, postūl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; flagito, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 39, note); **I demand this from you**, hoc tibi impero (p. 72, 9).

deny, I, neg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

depart, I, āb-ēo, -īre, -īvi (ii), -itum; dis-cēdo; proficiscor.

departure, profecti-o, -ōnis, F.; or use proficiscor.

descend, descendo.

desert, I, desēro, -ēre, -sērūi, -sertum; destit-ūo, -ūēre, -ūi, -ūtum.

deserter, transfūg-a, -ae, M.

desertion, p. 50, 14.

deserts, mērit-um, -i, N.; **in accordance with my deserts**, pro meis meritis.

deserve, I, mērcor, mērerī, mēritus sum; mērcō, -ēre, -ūi.

design. See plan.

desire, cupīdo, -inis, F.

desire, I (=I am desirous to), cupio, cupēre, cupivī (cupiī), cupitum; stupeo, -ēre, ui (with inf., p. 55, 3).

desirous, see above.

desist, I, desisto, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum (p. 74, 3).

despair, I, dēspēr-o, -āre, etc. (de).

despair, dēspērātio, -ōnis, F.

despise, I, con-temno, -temnēre, -tempti, -temptum.

destination, say *where we are going*.

destiny, fāt-um, -i, N.

destitute of, exper-a, -tis (p. 64); ēgēn-us, -a, -um (with gen.; p. 64); nudus, a, -um (with abl.; p. 81, 6).

destroy, I, dēl-ēo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum; **I destroy a bridge**, see bridge.

destruction, pernici-es, -ei, F.; extit-um, -i, N. (p. 69, 8).

detain, I, rē-tinēo, -tinēre, -tinūi, -tentum.

detect, sentio, -ire, sensi, sensum.

deter, I, deterreo; pro-hibēo, -hibēre, -hibūi, -hibitum; **nothing deters me from going**, nihil me prohibet quominus eam (p. 22, 2).

determine, I. See decide.

detest, odi.

detestable, atrox.

detestation, loudly-expressed, say *hate* (pl.) and *shouts*; p. 165, b.

devastate, I, vast-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; pōpūl-or, -āri, ātus sum.

development, late, say *springs up late among men*.

devotedly, say *very much*.

die, I, mōrior, mōri, mortuus sum; mortem obo, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itum; vitā excēdo, -cēdēre, -cessi, -cessum.

differ, differo.

difference to us, it makes no, nihil nostrā interest (p. 66, 4).

difficult, difficil-is, -e.

difficulty, use adj.; **without difficulty**, facile.

dignity, dignitas -ātis; or use gravis.

direct, I, iubeo; administr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

direction, often translated by a dep. question: **I know the direction the enemy have taken**, scio quo hostes ierint (p. 32).

disadvantage, incommōd-um, -i, N.

disagreeable, ingrāt-us, -a, -um; molestus.

disagreement, dissensī-o, -ōnis, F.

disappoint, elūdo, -ēre, elūsi, elūsum.

disaster, clād-es, -is, F.; **the disaster at Cannae**, clades Cannensis, or clades apud Cannas.

disband, I, di-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum.

discontented, non contentus, -a, -um (with abl.).

discord, use dissōnus, -a, -um.

discover, I (find out), cognosco; (with effort), repēr-lo, -ire, -i, -tum; (without effort), in-venio, -venire, -vēni, -ventum.

discretion, prudentia; or use adj.

disease, morb-us, -i, M.

disgrace, dēdēo-us, -ōris, N.; turpitudō, -inis, F.; **it is a disgrace to you**, tibi dedecori est (p. 69, 8).

disgusted, I am, me pudet; **I am disgusted with you**, me tui pudet (p. 66, 8).

dismiss, I, di-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum.

displease, I, dis-plīcō, -plīcēre, -plīcūt (p. 71, 6).

displeasure, use vb.; offensī-o, -ōnis

dissatisfied with, I am, me taedet; **I am dissatisfied with you**, me tui taedet (p. 66, 3).

dissent, dissentio (vb.).

distinguished, clār-us, -a, -um; insign-is, -e; **his distinguished father**, pater suus, vir clarissimus.

distress, dolor, ōris M.; or use me piget.

distribute, I, divido, -ēre, divisi, divisum.

district, ager, agri M.

distrust, diffido (dat.)

disturb, I, perturb-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

ditch, fossa, ae, F.

divide, I, di-vido, -vidēre, -visi, -visum.

divine, divin-us, -a, -um.

do, I, faciō, faciēre, feci, factum; ago, agēre, ēgi, actum (pursue a course of action).

doctor, mēdic-us, i, M.

doctrine, use neut. pron.

dog, cān-is, -is, M.

door, osti-um, -i, N.

doubt, I (= I am in doubt), dubit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; **there is no doubt that**, non dubium est quin (with subj., p. 22, 1).

draw (= drag), I, trāho, -ēre, traxi, tractum; elicio; **I draw up a law**, legem scribo; **I draw up soldiers**, milites instruo.

dream, somnī-um, -i, N.

dream, I, somnio (r. 1); **I dream** a dream, somnium somnio (p. 38, 4).

dress, vest-is, -is, F.

drink, I, bib-o, -ēre, -i, -itum.

drive, I, ex-igo, -igēre, -ēgi, -actum; pello, pellēre, pēpuli, pulsum.

drops, it, rōrat (-āre).

drowned, was, say *could not be heard for* (prae, with abl.).

dry (vb.), aresco.

during, expressed either by acc. of time how long or by inter or intra with acc. (p. 85, 1).

duty, a, munus; **it is my duty**, p. 60, 2, note; dēbēo, -ēre, -ui, dēbitum; me oportet, -ēre, -uit (p. 33, 3).

duty of, it is, use genitive (p. 59, 2).

dwelt, I, hābit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
māneo, -ere, mansi, mansum.

dwelling, domicilium, -i, N.

E.

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque or
quodque (p. 93, c).

each (=each and every), unus-
quisque.

each other, they love, inter se
amant; alius alium amat, or (of two)
alter alterum amat.

eager for, cupidus, -a, -um (with
gen, p. 64).

eager to, I am, cupio, -ere, cupivi,
cupitum (with inf.); gestio, -ire, -ivi.

early, mātūr-us, -a, -um; in early
spring, primo vere.

early, mātūr-e, -ius, -rime or -issime.

ear, aur-is, -is, F.

earn, mēr-ēo, -ere, -ui, -itum.

earth, tell-us, -ūris, F.; terra.

ease, with, facile.

easily, fácil-e, -ius, -lime (adv.)

easy, fácil-is, -ior, -limus.

eat, I, ed-o, -ere, edi, esum; vescor.

effect, perficio.

either -or, aut...aut; vel...vel (p.
202, b).

elect, I, cre-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; facio,
facere, feci, factum; I am elected
consul, consul fio.

eloquent, eloquen-s, -tis; the elo-
quent Demosthenes, Demosthenes,
vir eloquentissimus.

else, alius

elude, frustror (r. 1).

empire, impéri-um, -i, N.

employ thought, in guessing,
cogito (r. 1).

encamp, I, consido, -sidere, -sedi,

-sessum; castra loco (-āre, -āvi, -ātum);
castra pono (-ere, posui, positum.)

encounter, I (meet), oc-curro, -cur-
rere, -curri, -cursum (with dat.); obviam
ire (dat.).

encourage, I, ad-hortor, -hortari,
-hortatus sum.

encroach on, &c., say take away
from each his own.

end, fin-is, -is, M.; at the end of
winter, extremā hieme; (vb.), finio.

endeavor, I, cōn-or, -āri, -ātus sum.

endeavor, an, cōnāt-us, -ūs, M.

endowed, praeditus.

endure, I, tōl-ero, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
sustineo, -tinere, -tiniui, -tentum; per-
petior, -petiui, -pessus sum.

enemy (public), host-is, -is, M.;
(private), inimicus, i, M.

engagement, an, proelium, -i, N.;
pugna, -ae, F.

English, the, Angl-i, -ōrum, M. (pl.).

enjoy, I, frū-or, -i, -ctus sum (with
abl., p. 80, 1).

enough, sātis (adv.); enough
money, satis pecuniae.

enquiry, use quaero (p. 48, 6).

enter, I, in-grēdior, -grēdi, -gressus
sum; I enter the house, domum
ingredior.

entrust, mando (r. 1); trado.

enumerate, I, enūm-ero, -āre, -āvi,
-ātum.

envied, I am, mihi invidetur (p. 72,
10).

envoy, legāt-us, i, M.; nuntius, -i, M.

envy, I, in-vidēo, -vidēre, -vidi, -visum.

envy, invidi-a, -ae, F.

Ephesus, Ephēsus, -i, F.

err, I, err-o, -āre, āvi, ātum.

error, err-or, -ōris, M.; or use vb.

escape, I, ef-fūgio, -fūgere, -fūgi,
fūgitum; (noun), fuga; effugium.

estate, fund-us; praedium.

esteem, I, magni aestimo (r. 1).

estimate, I, aestim-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; see **value**.

estranged, ālien-us, -a, -um.

eternal, sempitern-us, -a, -um.

even, etiam; before an adj., **vel**; **not even**, ne...quidem (with the emphatic word between); **not even one**, ne unus quidem; p. 3, 8.

even (level), aequ-us, -a, -um.

even (number), par, pāris; **odd or even**, par vel impar.

evening, vesper; gen. vesp̄eris or vesp̄erī; acc., vesperum; abl., vespere, M.; **in the evening**, vesp̄erī.

events, at all, certe (adv.).

ever (always), semper; (at any time), unquam (adv.).

every (=all; pl.), omnes; **every thing**, omnia; **every day**; see **daily**; **every one**, omnes (pl.).

everybody, omnes.

evident, it is, mānifestum est; apparet, -ēre, -ūit.

evil, māl-um, -ī, N.

exactly, ipse (p. 90, 13); **exactly ten days ago**, abhinc decem ipsis diebus.

examine (ground), I, explōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

exasperate, I, in-cendo, -cendēre, -cendi, -censum.

exasperation, use saevio; say *in proportion as* (p. 113, 5) *they proceed* (ago) *now gently* (leniter), *will they be cruel*.

excel, I, praesto, -stāre, -stīti, -stītum and -stātum (with dat.); antecello, -cellere (with dat., p. 71, 4).

excellent, optim-us, -a, -um; **your excellent father**, pater tuus, vir optimus.

exchange, I, mūto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; commūto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 79, 12).

exclaim, I, ex-clām-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

excogitate, I, comment-or, -āri, -ātus sum.

exempt from taxes, immūn-is, -e (adj.); **exempt from care**, sēcūr-us.

exempt, solvo, -ēre, solvi, sōlūtum (abl.).

exhort, I, hort-or, -āri, -ātus sum.

exhortation, adhortātī-o, -ōnis, F.; or use vb.

exile, an, exul, -is, M.

exile, state of, exill-um, -ī, N.; **I am driven into exile**, in exiliūm pellor; **I am in exile**, exūl-o (r. 1).

exist, I, sum, fūi, esse.

existence of God, **I believe in the**, deum esse credo.

expect, I, expect-o (r. 1); credo.

expedient, it is, expēd-it, -īre, -īvit or say *useful*.

expedition, expeditio; bellum.

expel, I, ex-igo, -igēre, -ēgi, -actum; **after the expulsion of the kings**, post reges exactos.

experience, experientia rerum or usus rerum; **a man of experience**, homo peritus rerum, (p. 64); **experience of life**, rerum peritia.

experienced, (rerum) peritus.

experiment, experimentum.

exploit, res.

expulsion. See **expel**.

extent, often translated by dependent question (p. 32, 1): **I don't know the extent of the damage**, nescio quantum sit detrimentum.

extortion, res repetundae (see p. 65, 1).

eye, oculus; **with my own eyes**, ipse.

F.

face (countenance), vult-us, -ūs, M.; os, ōris, N.

facility, facilitas.

fact, a, res, rēf.

faction, facti-o, -ōnis, F.

faith, fid-es, -ēf, F.; I put faith in you, tibi fidem habeo.

faithful, fidēl-is, -e (adj.).

fall, I, cād-o, -ēre, cēcidi, cāsūm; I fall in battle, pēr-ēo, -īre, -īvi (ii), -itūm; I fall into, in-cīdo, -cīdēre, -cīdi, -casūm; I fall headlong, praecipit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātūm; I fall into ruin, cor-rūo -rūēre, -rūi.

false, falsus.

falsehood, mendāc-iūm, -iī; tell a falsehood, mentior, -īri, -ītus sum; falsehood is base, turpe est mentiri.

family (household), famili-a, -ae, F.; born of a noble family, loco honesto ortus (p. 74, 4).

famous, praecelār-us; insignis.

fancy, I, puto (r. 1); cre-do, -dēre, -dīdi, -dītūm.

far or far away, prēcūl (adv.).

far (by), multo; far better, multo melior.

far, so far from, tantum abest ut (p. 15, 5.)

fatal, funestus.

father, pāt-er, -ris, M.

farewell, bid f. to, salūt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātūm (acc.).

fault, a, culp-a, ae, F.

fault, I commit, pecc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātūm.

favor (kindness), bñēficiūm, -i, N.

favor, I, fāvēo, -ēre, fāvi, fautum (with dat., p. 71, 6); I am favored, mihi favetur (p. 72, 10).

favorable (suitable), Idōnē-us.

fear, timor, oris; for fear that, ne (p. 12, 2).

fear, I, tīm-ēo, -ēre, -īri; mētū-o, -ēre, -īri; vērēor, -ēri, vēritus sum; I fear that, vereor ne; I fear that... not, vereor ut (p. 17, 1).

fearful, timīdus.

fee, merc-es, -ēdis; I teach at a small fee, parvi doceo (p. 63, 4).

feed on, I, vescor, vesci (with abl., p. 80, 1).

feel, sent-i-o, -īre, sensi, sensum; I feel sorrow, dōleo, -ēre; me poenitet; I feel pity, me miseret (p. 66, 3); I feel alone, me pudet.

feelings, animus.

fever, febr-is, -is, F.

few, pauc-i, -ae, -a (pl.); very few, perpauci, -ae, -a; how few there are, p. 110, 6.

fickleness, levis animus; or use levis.

fiction, use fingo; res ficta, F.

fidelity, fid-es, -ēf, F.

field, a, āg-er, -ri, M.

field of battle, acī-es, ēf, F.; on the field of battle, in acie.

fifteen, quindēcim.

fight, I, pugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātūm; fight a battle, proelium committo (-mittēre, -misi, -missum).

figure (shape), form-a, -ae, F.; he sells at a high figure, magni vendit (p. 63, 4).

fill with, I, com-plēo, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētūm.

find, I (by search), rēpēr-i-o, -īre, -i, -tūm; (by chance), in-vēnī-o, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum; find out, cognosco.

fire, multa, ae.

finish, I, con-ficī-o, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum.

fire, ignis; set on fire, incendo.

firmness, use constans.

first, prim-us, -a, -um; I was the first to do it, primus hoc feci; at first, primo; in the first place, primum; the first of January, Kalendae Ianuariae (p. 147, 2).

fit, apt-us, -a, -um; Idōnč-us, -a, -um (with dat. or with ad and acc., p. 69, 9).

fitted, apt-us, -a, -um; Idōnč-us, -a, -um; fitted for, aptus ad; idoneus ad.

five, quinque.

five hundred, quingent-i, -ae, -a.

flag, sign-um, -i, N.

flank, lāt-us, -ēris, M.

flat, plān-us, -a, -um.

flatter, assessor (r. 1).

flee, I, fūg-ō, -ēre, fūgī, fūgitum; I flee from him, eum fugio.

fleet, a, class-is, -is, F.

flesh, caro, carnis.

flight, fūg-a, -ae, F.

fling, iācio, -ēre, iēcī, iactum; impingo (dat.).

flock together, convōl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

flourish, I, flōr-ō, -ēre, -ūi.

flow, I, flū-o, -ēre, fluxī, fluxum.

flower, flos, flōris, M.

fly, I, vōl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

foe (public), hostis, -is, M.; (private), inimicus, -i, M.

follow, I, sēquor, sēqui, sēcūtus sum; following, p. 89, 8.

folly, stultīti-a, ae, F.; or use adj.

fond, be, amo.

food, vict-us, -ūs, M.

fool, stult-us, -a, -um; it is the characteristic of a fool, stulti est (p. 59, 2).

foolish, stult-us, -a, um.

foot, pes, pēdis, -M.; **foot of a mountain**, mons imus (p. 61, e).

foot, set, pedem ponere (in).

foot-soldier, pēd-es, -itis, M.

footstep, vestīgīum, -i, N.

for (of time), acc.; (enough) for, (satis) ad.

for (on behalf of), pro (prep. with abl.); I fight for my country, pro patriā pugno.

for my own part, ego, equidem.

for some time, iamdūdum (p. 34, 2); iampridem.

forbid, I, vēt-o, -āre, -ūi, -itum; I forbid him to go, veto eum ire (p. 16, note).

force, vis (acc., vim; abl., vi; pl., vires), F.

forces (troops), cōpi-ae, -arum, F.

forefathers, maiōres, -um, M.

foreign, ad exteras nationes.

foremost, primus, -a, -um.

foresee, I, prō-spīcō, -spīcēre, -spexi, -spectum; prō-vidēo, -vidēre, -vidi, -visum (p. 72, 7).

forest, silv-a, ae, F.

foretell, I, prae-dico, -dicēre, -dixi, -dictum.

forget, I, obliviscor, -i, oblitus sum (p. 64, 2, note).

forgive, I, ig-nosco, -ēre, -nōvi, -nōtum (with dat., p. 71, 6); I am forgiven, mihi ignoscitur; I forgive you this deed, tibi huius facti veniam do or hoc factum tibi condono (-āre, -āvi, -ātum).

form (shape), form-a, -ae, F.

form a line of battle, I, aciem instrū-o, -ēre, -xi, -ctum.

form a plan, I, consilium cāpiō, -ēre, cēpi, captum; consilium in-eo, -ire, -ivi, (-ii), -itum.

form a partnership with him, I, societatem cum eo in eo.

former (of time), pristīnus, -a, -um; **the former—the latter**; ille—hic (p. 88, 6).

fort, castellum.

fortify, I, mūn-īo, -īre, -īvi, -ītum.

fortress, ar-x, ar, -cis, F.; castell-um.

fortunate, felix, felicitas (adj.); it was very fortunate that, peropportunity accedit ut (p. 15, 5).

fortune, fortūn-a, ae, F.

fortune (good), felicitas, -atis, F.

found, condo, -ēre, -īdi, -ītum.

foundation, use vb.

four, quattuor.

France, use Gallia or Galli.

free, lib-er, -era, -erum; (from), vacuus, a, -um (with abl., p. 74, 4); free from care, secur-us, -a, -um.

free (give freedom to), I, lib-er-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 74, 3).

freed from, I am, lib-er-or, -āri, -ātus sum (p. 74, 3).

freedom, lib-er-tas, -atis, F.; or use adj.

fresh, recen-s, -tis (adj.).

friend, amic-us, -i; a very intimate friend, homo amicissimus.

friendly, amic-us, -a, -um.

friendship, amic-itia, ae, F.

frivolous character, usé levis.

from, a (before consonants), ab (before vowels and consonants); e, ex (with abl.).

front, in, a fronte.

full, plēn-us, -a, -um (with gen. or abl.; p. 64); see utmost.

future, the, futūr-a, -ōrum, N. (pl.); in future, in futurum, in posterum.

G.

gain, lucr-um, -i, N.; emolument-um, -i, N.; utilit-as, -atis, F.; for a source of gain, quaestūi (p. 69, 8).

gain, consequor; gain glory, I, gloriā pārio (-ēre, pēp-eri, partum); gain victory, vinco or victoriā consequi.

gallant Crassus, the, Crassus, vir optissimus.

games, lud-i, -ōrum, M. (pl.).

garden, hort-us, -i, M.

gate, port-a, -ae, F.

gather together, I, convōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; cōgo, -ēre, cōg-ēgi, cōactum; (intr.), con-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum.

Gaul, Gall-i-a, -ae, F.

Gauls, Galli, -ōrum, M. (pl.).

general, imp-erāt-or, -ōris, M.; dux.

general, as a g. thing, vulgo.

generation, aet-as, -atis, F.

generous, bēnign-us, -a, -um; munific-us, -a, -um.

genius, ingenium; or use ingeniosus.

gentle, mit-is, -e (adj.).

gentlemen of the jury, iudic-es, -um, M. (pl.).

gift, dōn-um, -i, M.

give, I, dōn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; do, dare, dēdi, dātum.

give (back or up), I, red-do, -dēre, -didi, -dītum; dēdo, -ēre, dēdidi, dēdītum.

glad, I am, gaud-ēo, -ēre, gavisus sum.

gladly, libenter (adv.); often rendered by the adj.: he came gladly, laetus venit (p. 165, 2, a).

glorious, clār-us, -a, -um; insignis, -e; egrēgius, -a, -um; he won a glorious victory, egregie vicit.

glory, glōri-a, ae, F.; lau-s, -dis, F.

glow, exardesco.

go, I, eo, Ire, ivi (-ii), Itum.

go away, I, ab-ēo, -Ire, -ivi (ii), -Itum; I go forward or forth, pro-grēdi-or, -grēdi, -gressus sum; I go down to meet, obviam (with dat.) descend-o, -ēre, -I, descendum; I go on, pergo, -ēre, perrex-i, perrectum; I go out, ex-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum; ex-ēo, -Ire, -ivi, -Itum.

goad, stimulo (r. 1).

goal, have a g. in view, use aliquid

agere or spectare (*be driving at or looking at something*).

God, dē-us, dēi, M.
goddess, dea.
gold, aur-um, -i, N.
gold, of, = golden.
golden, aurēus; or use tantus.
good, bōn-us, -a, -um.
good-bye, say to, sālūt-o (r. 1).
goodness, probit-as, ātis.
goodness of character, say *goodness and character*.

good-will, feeling of, benevolentia.
govern, I, rēgo, -ēre, rēxi, rectum;
I govern the state, rempublicam gubernō;
govern one's feelings, animo mōdēr-or, -āri, -ātus sum (with dat., p. 72, 7) or tempēro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

government, the, qui reipublicae praesunt; respublica.

gradually, (*step by step*), gradātīm;
 (*little by little*), paulātīm (adv.).

grant, I, do, dāre, dēdi, dātum;
 concedo.

grateful, grāt-us, -a, -um.

gratitude, grātīa, -ae; **I show gratitude**, gratiam refero; **I feel gratitude**, gratiam habeo; **express gratitude**, gratias agere.

great, magn-us, -a, -um; comp., maior; sup., maximus, -a, -um.

greatly, magnōpēre (adv.); comp., māgis; sup., maxīme.

Greece, Graecī-a, ae.

Greek, know, Graece scire.

Greeks, Graecī, -ōrum, M. (pl.).

green, virīdis, -e.

grieve, am grieved, dōlēo, -ēre, -ūi; me piget.

groan, I, in-gēmo, -gēmēre, -gēmūi, -gēmītum.

ground, (soil), solum, -i, N.; (*pleasure grounds*), hortī, -ōrum, M. (pl.).

guard, I, custōdīo, -īre, -īvi, -ītum; **I am on my guard against you**, te caveo (p. 72, 7); **stand guard**, in vigilia maneo.

guard, cust-os, -ōdis, M.; vb., custodio (r. 4).

guest, a, hosp-es, -ītis, M.

guide, dux, dūcis, M.

guile, dōl-us, -i, M.

H.

hair, cāpill-us, -i, M.

half, dimidium, -i, N.

hand, a, mān-us, -ūs, F.

hand, I am at, ad-sum, -esse, -fui. (with dat.)

hand, hand over, I, trā-do, -dēre, -didi, -dītum; man-do, -dāre, -dāvi, -dātum.

handful, pauci.

handiwork, say *by hand and work* (p. 165, b).

Hannibal, Hannib-al, -ālis.

happen, use forte.

happens that, it, accidit (-ēre, accidit) ut; ēvenit (-īre, -vēnit) ut; contingit (-ēre, contigit) ut; (p. 15, 5); **it happened so** (*in this way*), ita accidit.

happily, beate.

happiness, beata vita.

happy, bēāt-us, -a, -um; (*lucky*), felix.

harbor, port-us, -ūs, M.

hard, difficīl-is, -e; **hard to say**, difficile dictu (p. 42, 4); durus, a, um.

hardly, vix.

hardship, labor, ōris, M.; res adversae.

harm, do harm, noceo, -ēre, nocui, nocitum.

harmless, innōcūus.

harry, I, vex-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

harvest, messis, -is, F.

haste, there is need of, opus est properato (p. 81, 4).

hasten, I, prōpēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum ;
contendo, -ēre, contendī, contentum.

hate, I, ōdi, ōdisse ; **I am hated**,
ego odio (dat.) sum (p. 69, 8).

hated, invisus, -a, -um ; see above.

hatred, ōdium, -i, N.

have (possess), I, hābēo, -ēre, -ūi,
-itum ; *often rendered by esse with dat.* :
as, **I have a book**, est mihi liber (see
p. 46, 6).

he, is, ille, hic (p. 88, 3, 5, 6).

heal, mēdeor, -ēri (dat.)

health, be in good, valeo.

heap, vis, F. ; vb., infero, inferre,
intē, illātum.

hear, I, aud-īo, -īre, -īvi, -itum.

hearing, by, audiendo (p. 43) ;
without hearing, use inauditus.

heart (literal), cor, cordis, N. ; (spirit),
animus, I, M. ; **I take it to heart**, id
graviter (or aegre) fero.

hearth, fōc-us, -i, M.

heaven (sky), coelum, -i, N. ; *often
rendered by, di immortales.*

height, altitud-o, -inis, F. ; *or use altus.*

height of folly, to such a,
eo stultitiae (p. 60, 3).

heir, her-es, -ēdis, M.

help, I, iūvo, -āre, iūvi, iūtum (acc.) ;
sub-vēnio, -vēnīre, -vēni, -ventum (with
dat.) ; **I help you**, tibi auxilio sum (p.
69, 8) ; tibi opem fero ; **I can not
help sending**, fieri non possum quin
mittam (p. 23).

hence, inde (adv.).

herb, herba, -ae, F.

here, hic (adv.).

hero (mythical), hērō-s, -is, M. ;
usually expressed by ille or vir fortissimus.

hesitate, I, dubit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

hide, I, cēl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum ; ab-do,
-dēre, -dīdi, -dītum.

high, alt-us, -a, -um ; **the highest
offices**, honores amplissimi.

high-spirited, ānimōsus, ferox.

hill, coll-is, -is, M.

himself, (reflexive), sui ; (em-
phatic), ipse.

hinder, I, prōhīb-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum ;
imped-īo, -īre, -īvi (-īi), -itum.

hindrance, impēdiment-um, N. ; **it
is a great hindrance to me**, mihi
impedimento (dat.) magno est (p. 69, 8).

hire, I, con-dūco, -dūcēre, -duxi, -duc-
tum.

his, su-us, -a, -um ; eius, illius (p. 7, 1,
note) ; **his own book**, suus ipsius liber
(p. 90, 13).

historian, rerum scriptor.

history, matter of, say *it is handed
down to memory.*

hitherto, adhuc (adv.).

hold (possess) I, hāb-ēo, -ēre, -ūi,
-itum ; ob-tinēo, -tīnēre, -tīnūi, -tentum.

hold (think), I, duc-o, -ēre, duxi, duc-
tum ; hābeo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum ; **I hold
him an enemy**, eum pro hoste habeo.

homage, etc., say **I promised that I
would help him with my authority** (p. 1
73, 3).

home, at, dōmī ; **from home**
domo ; **home**, after words expressing
motion, domum (p. 83, 5).

Homer, Homērus.

homicide, guilty of, use hominem
interficio.

honest, prōb-us, -a, -um.

honesty, prōbīt-as, -ātis, F. ; **with
honesty**, probe or summā probitate.

honor (good faith), fides, -ēi ; (dis-
tinction), hōn-or, -ōris, M.

honorable, honest-us, -a, -um.

hope, I, spŕ-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 7, 3); (noun), spes.

horse, ēqu-us, -i, M.

horseman, ēqu-es, -itis, M.

horrible to say, nefas est dictu (p. 42, 4).

hostage, ob-ses, -sŕdis, M.

hostile, hostilis, -e.

hot, I am, cāl-ēo, -ēre.

hour (of time), hŕ-a, -ae, F.

house, dŕmus, -ŕs, F.; at my house, domi meae (p. 83, 5), apud me; **House**, senatus.

how, quī, quemadmodum, quomodo, ut (p. 32, 1).

how great, quant-us, -a, -um; **how long**, quam diu; **how many**, quot; **how much**, quantum; **how often**, quoties.

human, humān-us, -a, -um (adj.).

hundred, centum.

hunger, fāmes, -is, F.

hurry, I, propŕ-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

hurt, I, nŕcŕo, -ēre, -ŕi, -ŕtum (dat.); laedo, -ēre, laesi, laesum (acc.).

hustings, rostr-a, -ŕum, N. (pl.).

I.

I, ego.

ice, glācies, -ei, F.

idea, ŕpīnī-o, -ŕnis, F.

identical, Idem, ēādem, Idem.

Ides, Id-us, -ŕum, F. (p. 147).

idle, vān-us, -a, -um; ignavus.

idleness, ignāvī-a, ae, F.

if, si (p. 120).

if not, nisi, si non (p. 125, 5).

ignominious, turpis.

ignorance, use ignoro (r. 1).

ignorant, ignārus; or use verb.

ill, aeger, -ra, -rum.

illustrate, I, illustr-o (r. 1).

illustrious, praeclār-us, -a, -um; praestantissimus, -a, -um.

image, Imāg-o, -inis, F.

imagine, puto (r. 1).

immediately, statim; **immediately after the battle**, confestim a proelio.

immortal, immortalis, -e.

impediment, use aliquid.

impel, im-pello, -ēre, -pŕli, -pulsum.

impiety, impiēt-as, -ātis, F.

impious, impi-us, -a, -um.

implore. See beg.

importance to me, it is of, mea interest or refert (p. 66, 4).

in, in (with abl.)

inasmuch as, quum, quippe, utpote (p. 106, 2; 113, 3; 113, 4, note).

incendiarism, political, incendium.

inconsistent with, etc., say *such a man can not be fearful or anxious*.

increase, (trans.), augeo, -ēre, auxi, auctum; (intr.), cresco, -ēre, crēvi, crētum.

indeed, vero, profecto.

induce, I, persuād-ēo, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum; adduco, -ēre, -duxi, -ductum.

infant, infan-s, -tis.

infantry, pēditā-tus, -ŕs; pēdītes, -um, M. (pl.)

influence, auctŕit-as, -ātis, F.

influence, to, moveo, movēre, mŕvi, motum.

influential with me, he is very, apud me multum valet.

inform, certiore facere.

information, use vb.

ingratitude, use immemor beneficii.

injure. See hurt.

innocent, innŕcen-s, -tis (adj.); **I am innocent**, extra culpam sum.

inquire, I, quaero, -ēre, quaeŕvi,

quaesitum; rōgo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; interrōgo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

inquiry, quaestī-o, -ōnis; or use vb.

Instead of, pro; instead of doing this he did that, quum hoc facere deberet, illud fecit (p. 108, note).

instigation, at my, me auctore.

instrumentality, through the instrumentality of, per (acc.).

insult, contūmēlia, -ae, F.

insuperable, insuperabilis, -e.

intelligently, use prudentia.

intend, I, in animo mihi est; often expressed by fut. part. (p. 53, 1).

intensity, of such, tantus.

intercept, I, inter-cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum.

interest. How expressed, p. 153.

interest of the state, it is, rei-publicae interest (p. 47); **I consult your interests**, tibi consulo (p. 72, 7).

interfere, ob-sto, -stāre, -stīti, -statum.

interference, use vb.

intervene, I, inter-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum.

interview with one, I have, aliquem con-vēnio (-vēnire, -vēni, -ventum).

into, in (with acc.)

introduction, use introduco.

invading host, use hostes.

invent, invenio; (fabricate) I, fingo, -ēre, finxi, fictum.

inventor, invent-or, ōris, M.

invest (money), I, collōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

investigation, use quaero cur.

iota, add, say *make you more*, etc.

island, insul-a, -ae, F.

issue, event-us, -ūs, F.; or use *happen*.

it. See **he**.

Italy, Itālia, -ae, F.

itself, ipse, -a, -um.

J.

January, Iānūārī-us, -a, -um (adj.).

javelin, pil-um, -i, N.; **lācūl-um, -i, N.**

join, I, iungo, -ēre, iunxi, iunctum; **I join you, me tibi adiungo**.

join battle, proelium committere.

journey, iter, Itinēris, N.

joy, laetitia, -ae, F.; **shouts of joy, clamores laetantium** (p. 48, 6).

joyful, laet-us, -a, -um.

joyfully, laete (adv.); often rendered by the adj. (p. 165, 2, a).

judge, iud-ex, -icis.

judgment, iudiciū; consilium; use iudico; in my judgment, me iudice (p. 51, 1); pronounce *j.*, iudico (r. 1).

Julian, Iulian-us, -a, -um; the Julian law, lex Iuliana.

jump, I, salio, -ire, -ui, saltum.

June, Iūni-us, -a, -um.

Jupiter, Iūpiter, Iōvis, M.

jury, iūdic-es, -um, M. (pl.).

just, acqu-us, -a, -um; iust-us, -a, -um.

just as if, velut si, with subj. (p. 117, 3).

justice, iustitia, -ae, F.

justify, I, prōb-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

justly, iūre (abl. of iūs, right).

K.

Kalends, Kālend-ae, -ārum, F. (pl.), (see p. 147).

Karthage. See Carthage.

keep, servo (r. 1).

keep my promises, I, fidem prae-sto, promissis (abl.) sto; **I keep the soldiers in the camp, milites in castris contineo**; **I keep my word, fidem praesto**; **I keep off, depello** (-ēre

-pāli, -pulsum); **keep out**, excludo;
in keeping with, p. 59, 2.

key, clāv-is, -is, F.

kill, I, inter-ficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum;
occido, -ere, -cidi, -cisum; **I kill** (cruel-
ly), nēco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; trucidō, -āre,
-āvī, -ātum.

kind, bēnign-us, -a, -um.

kind of man he is, I don't know
the, nescio qualis sit homo (p. 32, 1).

kind, of this, huius modi; **of that**
kind, eius modi; **what kind**, qualis.

kindness, benevolentia, bonit-as,
-ātis, F.; **act of kindness**, bēnēficiūm.

king, rex, rēgis, M.

know, (by the senses), sent-io,
-ire, senti, sensum; (a thing), scio; (a per-
son), nōvi, novisse; (find out), cognosco,
-ēre, cognōvi, cognitum.

knowledge (learning), doctrin-a;
scientia, ae, F.

L.

labor, lāb-or, -ōris, M.

Lacedaemon, Lācēdaem-on, -ōnis, M.

Lacedaemonians, Lacedaemonii.

lack money, I, pecunia mihi deest
(p. 70, 1).

lamb, agn-us, -i, M.

lamp, lūcern-a, -ae, F.

lame, claud-us, -a, -um; **lame in**
one foot, altero pede claudus.

land, āg-er, -ri, M.

larger. Say **great**.

last (in order), ultim-us (p. 11, 2);
(of time or position), proxim-us, -a,
-um; within the last few days, his paucis
diebus (p. 88, 3).

last, at, tandem, demum.

lasting, diūturn-us, -a, -um.

late, too late, sēro (adv.).

lately, nūper; superl., nuperrime.

Latin (adv.), Latine.

Latin, I speak, Latine (adv.) loquor.

laugh, I, ridēo, ridēre, risi, risum.

law, lex, lēgis F.; ius, iūris, N.

lay, lay aside, pono.

lead, I, dūco, -ēre, duxi, ductum; **I**
lead across, transduco; **I lead back**,
redūco; **I lead out**, edūco.

leader, imperator; dux, dūcis, M.

leap, I, exsult-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

learn, I, disco, -ēre, didici; cognosco.

learned, doct-us, -a, -um.

learning, doctrin-a, -ae, F.

leave, I (abandon), relinquo, -ēre,
reliqui, relictum; **I leave the camp**,
ex castris excedo (or exeo); **I leave the**
work undone, opus praetermitto.

legacy, use lēgare (*leave by law*).

legate, lēgāt-us, -i, M.

legion, lēgi-o, -ōnis, F.

leisure, otium.

less, minor, -us, comp. of parvus; **at**
a less price, minoris (p. 63, 4).

lest, ne (p. 12, 2; 13, 6; 17, 1).

let, p. 26, 2.

letter, ēpistol-a, -ae, F.; littēr-ae,
-arum, F. (pl.).

levy, delect-us, -ūs, M.; **I hold a**
levy, delectum habeo.

liar, mendax, -acis.

liberty, libert-as, -ātis, F.

lie (tell a falsehood), I, ment-ior,
-iri, -itus sum.

lie down, I, iacēo, -ēre, iacui, -itum.

life, vit-a, -ae, F.

lifetime of my father, in the,
patre meo vivo (p. 51, 1).

light, levis, -e.

light, lūm-en, -inis, N.

light, it is, lucet, -ēre, luxit.

like, simīl-is, -e (p. 64, note 2); (vb.),
volo.

likely, use fut. part. (p. 54, 2).

line, acies; **he drew a line**, etc., say *he thought that the honorable (honestum) was one thing and the useful another*.

linger, cunct-or, -āri, -ātus sum.

listen to, I, audio, -ire, -ivī, -itum acc).

literature, littēr-ae, -ārum, F. (pl.).

litter, lectīc-a, -ae, F.

little, parvus, -a, -um; comp., minor; sup., minimus.

live, I, viv-o, -ēre, vixī, victum; (dwell in), hābit-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

lively recollection, say *memory and recollection* (p. 165, b).

living, use vivo.

London, Londini-um, -ī, N.

long standing, of, use vestustas.

long, long-us, -a, -um (adj.).

longing, cāpīd-us, -a, um.

long time, for a, diu; **long ago**, iam pridem or iam diu.

look for, I, exspecto (r. 1); quaero; peto.

lose, I, a-mitto, -mittēre, -misi, -mis-sum.

loss, damn-um, -ī, N.; detriment-um; **without the loss**, use vb. (p. 139, 1).

lot, sor-s, -tis, F.; fortun-a; or use p. 59, 2; **fall to lot**, contingo.

loud, magnus; **loudly-expressed**, use shout (p. 165, b).

love, ām-or, ōris, M.

love, I, ām-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

lovely (applied to a place), amoen-us, -a, -um: the lovely city of Athens; Athenae, urbs amoenissima; (applied to a person), pulch-er, -ra, -rum; formōs-us, -a, -um.

lover, use amo.

lowest (office), imus (honor).

low price, at a, parvi (p. 63, 4).

loyal, fid-us, -a, -um; fidēl-is, -e; bonus.

lucky, felix; or use opportune.

M.

mad, I am, fūr-o, -ēre.

madman, use furo.

made, I am, fio, fieri, factus sum.

madness, furor; dēmentī-a, -ae, F.

magistrate, magistrāt-us, -ūs, M.

magnitude, magnitūd-o, -inis; often expressed by an indirect question: **I know the magnitude of the danger**, scio quantum periculum sit (p. 32, 1).

maiden, virg-o, -inis, F.

maintain, I, sus-tinēo, -tinēre, -tinūi, -tentum; dico.

majority, use plerique.

make, I, faciō, faciēre, feci, factum; **I make war**, bellum gero, gerēre, gessi gestum or bellum infēro, -ferre, -tūli, illatum; **I make a march**, iter facio; **he makes it shine**, efficit ut splendeat (p. 12).

man, hōm-o, -inis, M.; vir, viri, M.; **a young man**, ādōlescen-s, -tis; **an old man**, sēnex, sēnis, M.

manage, rem gerere.

manner of life, use quemadmodum and vivo.

manumit, manumitto.

many, multi, -ae, -a (pl.); very many, permulti, -ae, -a; **how many?** quot? as many as, tot quot.

Marcellus, Marcellus, -ī, M.

march, iter; **I march**, **make a march**, iter facio; (trans.), duco.

Marcus, Marcus, -ī, M.

mariner, naut-a, -ae, M.

mark of a wise man, it is the sapientis est (p. 59, 2).

market-place, forum, I, N.

marsh, pāl-ūs, -ūdis, F.

marvellous, it is, mirum est.
mass (of the people), vulgus, -i, N.;
 (huge size), mōles, -is, F.

master (of slaves), dōminus, hērus;
 (a teacher), māgist-er, -ri, M.

matter, res, rēl, F.; it **matters**
 little, parvi interest; it **matters not**
 to me, nihil meā interest.

may, I, p. 25; 33; (= can), possum.

May, Maius (adj.).

mean, sordid-us, -a, -um; abieci-us.

mean-minded, say of mean mind.

meanness, use adj.; turpitūd-o,
 -inis, F.; it is the height of mean-
 ness, summae turpitudinis est.

means, use quemadmodum; by this
 means, p. 74, 5; (approach), aditus, ūs.

measure, I, mēti-or, -iri, mensur-sum.

measure, p. 153; res.

Medēa, Mēdēa, ae, F.; the famous
 Medea, illa Medea.

meet, I, oc-curro, -currere, -curri,
 -cursum (with a dat.; p. 71, 6); obviam (with
 dat.) flo.

meeting, concio.

memory, mēmōri-a, -ae, F.

merchant, mercator.

merchant-vessel, nāvis ōnērāria.

merciful, clemen-s, -tis (adj.).

message, nunti-us, -i, M.; a mes-
 sage came, nuntiatum est.

messenger, nunti-us, -i, M.

midday, meridi-es, ēi, M.

middle, mēdi-us, -a, -um; in the
 middle of the road, mediā viā.

midnight, at, mediā nocte.

mile, mille passuum.

million, p. 151, c.

mind, (emotional faculty), ānim-
 us, -i, M; (intellectual faculty),
 men-s, -tis, F.

miracle, miraculum; or say great
 thing.

miser, homo āvārus.

miserable, misēr, -a, -um.

miserly, āvārus, -a, -um.

misery, dolor; miseria.

misfortune, malum.

miss, I (feel loss of), desidero
 (r. 1).

missile, tēl-um, -i, N.

mistake, err-or, -ōris, M; I **make**
 this mistake, hoc erro.

mistress, be, praeesse (dat.).

mix, misceo.

mob, plebs.

money, pēcūni-a, -ae, F.

month, mens-is, -is, M.

moon, lūn-a, -ae, F.

more, plus; māgis; p. 78, 7, note.

morning, in the, mane.

mother, māt-er, -ris, F.

motion, motus, -ūs.

motive, use cur; indicate a
 motive, say show why he committed
 (p. 32); from a motive, use ob (with
 acc.), or causā (with gen.).

mount (a horse), I, equum con-
 scendo (-ere, -scendi, -scensum).

mountain, mon-s, -tis, M.

move, I, mōv-ēo, -ēre, mōvi, mōtum.

much, mult-us, -a, -um.

multitude, multitūd-o, -inis, F.

murder, caed-es, -is, F. Often ex-
 pressed by perf. part. pass.: after Cae-
 sar's murder, post Caesarem inter-
 fectum.

murmur, (vb.), queror, quēri, questus
 sum.

music, mūsic-a, -ae, F.

musical, say musicorum, from neut.
 pl. musica.

must, p. 33

my, mē-us, -a, -um (voc. sing. masc.,
 meus or mi).

myself, use ego or ego ipse (p. 90, 13).

N.

name, nōm-en, -inis, N.; of the **name of**, omit.

namely, omit.

narrate, I, narro-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

nation, populus; (foreign), nāti-o, -ōnis F.; gen-s, -tis, F.

native city, one's **native land**, patria, ae, F.

natural shame, say *nature and shame* (p. 165, b).

naturally, use naturā.

nature, nātūr-a, -ae, F. Often expressed by a dependent question introduced by *qualis* (p. 32): **I don't know the nature of the man**, nescio *qualis sit homo*; **of this nature**, talis.

near, prōpe, (adv. and prep. with acc.); propior, proximus (p. 69, 9); propinquus (with dat.; p. 69, 9).

nearly, prōpe, paene, fere; see *about*.

necessaries, say *what is necessary*.

necessary, necessarius.

necessity, necessitas; p. 84, 1.

need, there is **need**, p. 81, 4; p. 81, 3, note.

neglect, I, negligo, negligere, neglexi, neglectum.

neither-nor, neque-neque; neco-nec; neve-neve (p. 15).

neither of the two, neut-er, -ra, -rum (gen., neutrius).

nest, nid-us, I.

never, nunquam; **and never**, nec unquam.

new, nov-us, -a, -um.

news is brought, nuntiatur.

next, proximus, -a, -um; **on the next day**, die proximo, or die postero.

night, no-x, no-ctis, F.

nine, novem.

no, I **answer no**, p. 28, 2, note.

no, adj., null-us, -a, -um (gen., nullius).

no one, nemo (gen., nullius).

noble, praeclārus, -a, -um; insign-is, -e; egrēgi-us, -a, -um; **his noble father**, pater suus, vir praeclarissimus.

none, nemo (not used in gen. and abl.); null-us, -a, -um (gen. nullius).

Nones, Nonae, -arum, F. (pl.).

noon, mēridi-es, -ei, M.

nor, nec or neque; in final clauses, neve (neu, p. 16, 4).

not, non.

not yet, nondum.

nothing, nihil.

notice, give **notice**, certiorē facere.

novelty, use novus.

now, iam (by this time); nunc (at present); hodie (to-day).

number, nūm-er-us, -i, M. Often expressed by a dependent question introduced by *quot*: **I don't know the number of the enemy**, nescio quot hostes sint (p. 32, 1).

numerous, multi, -ae, -a; permult-I.

nurse, nutr-ix, -icis, F.

O.

O that, utinam (p. 25).

obedience, yield. Use **obey**.

obey, I, pār-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum (with dat., p. 71, 6); **I am obeyed**, mihi paretur.

object, I, rēcūs-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 22).

object, this is **my**, id ago; **accomplish an object**, say *finish the work*.

obscure, obscur-us, -a, -um.

observe, I, cognosco; servo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

obstinacy, pertināci-a, -ae, F.; or use adj. pertinax.

obtain, I, adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus sum; consequor.

occasion, on that, tum.

o'clock is it, what? quota hora est? see p. 144, 5.

occupy, (hold), I, tēno, -ēre, tēni; occupo (r. 1).

occurs, it, accidit (-ēre, -cidit); e-venit (-ire, -venit); contingit (-ēre, -tigit); p. 15, 5; (to the mind), occurro.

odd or even, par vel impar.

off (at a distance), I am, ab-sum, -esse, -fui; disto, -stare; **the town is ten miles off,** oppidum decem millia passuum distat or abest.

offend (annoy) I, offendo, -fendere, -fendi, -fensum (acc.); I offend against the law, legem viol-o (-āre, -āvi, -ātum).

office, magistrat-us, -ūs, M.; I hold office, magistratum obtineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum; (task), munus.

officer, tribunus; legatus; officers (military), tribuni centurionesque.

often, saepe; so often, toties.

old, (in olden times), antiquus, -a, -um; (of persons), senex, senis; comp., senior; sup., maximus natu; when old, senex.

omit, I, o-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -mis-sum.

once (for), semel; (= formerly), once upon a time, quondam; at once, statim.

one (numeral), ūn-us, -a, -um (gen., unus); one of the soldiers, unus ex militibus.

one, no, nemo; (emphatic), ne unus...quidem.

one, the,...the other, hic...ille (p. 89, 6).

one and all, cunct-i, -ae, -a; omnes, omnia.

one by one, singul-i, -ae, -a.

one day (in the future), aliquando.

only, solus, solum, modo, tantum

(placed after the word modified); **not only...but also, non modo (or non solum)...sed etiam (or verum etiam); only ones, see p. 11, 2.**

open (throw open), I, (trans.), patō-facio, -facere, -feci, -factum; **to be open, patēo, -ēre -āi.**

opinion, use sentio (have an opinion): his political opinion, quid de rep. sentit; sententi-a, -ae F.; existimati-o, -ōnis, F.

opportunity, occasio, -ōnis, F.

oppose, I, repugno-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

opposite to, contrarius (quam).

opposition, in spite of your, te repugnante (p. 52, 5).

or, aut, -ve, vel, sive (p. 202, b); neve (after ne).

orator, orat-or, -ōris, M.

oratory, say orator.

orchard, pomarium.

ordain, I, decerno-o, -ēre, decrevi, decretum.

order, give an order, I, imper-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (with dat., p. 71, 6); iubeo, -ēre, iussi, iussum (with acc.); in order that (or to), p. 12, 1.

origin, often expressed by unde, introducing a dependent question: as, I don't know the origin of evil, nescio unde malum oriatur (p. 32, 1).

otherwise than, aliter ac or (before vowels) atque (p. 116, 1).

ought, p. 33.

our, nos-ter, -tra, -trum.

out-do, supero (r. 1).

outside of, e or ex (abl.).

over, it is, actum est de.

overpowering, say could not be borne, or, even, very great.

overthrow, I, e-vertō, -vertēre, -verti, -versum.

overwhelm, I, ob-rūo, -rūere, -rūi, -rūtum.

owe, I, debēo, -ēre, -ui, -itum; it was owing to, p. 22, 2.

own, my own fault, mea ipsius culpa (p. 90, 13).

ox, bos, bovis.

P.

pain, I am in, dōleo, -ēre, dōlui.

pain, dōl-or, -ōris, M.

painter, use pingo.

panic, pāv-or, -ōris, M.

pardon, I, ig-nosco, -nosce-re, -nōvi, -nōtum (with dat., p. 71, 6); venia, ae.

parent, pāren-s, -tis, M. or F.

parliament, sēnāt-us, -ūs, M.

part, par-s, -tis, F.; it is the part of a wise man to do this, sapientis est hoc facere (p. 59, 2); I for my part, ego or equidem; **take part**, intersum.

party, partes.

party policy, say *party and policy*.

pass, let, omitto, -ēre, omisi, omisum; **pass a decree**, say *decree*.

pass (a law), fero.

passion (anger), ira, -ae, F.

passionate (angry), irāt-us, -a, -um (of one act); (of a habit), iracund-us.

past, is, use praetereo.

patriot, vir bonus; homo patriae amantissimus (p. 64, note 1).

patriotism, amor patriae.

pay, I, pendo, -ēre, pēpendi, pensum; solvo, -ēre, solvi, solūtum.

payment, solūtio (ōnis), F.; or use vb.

peace, pā-x, -cis, F.

peace, I hold my, taceo, -ēre, tacui.

peculiar, prōprius, -a, -um (with gen., p. 64, note 2).

pell-mell, temere.

pen, cālū-us, -i, M.

penalty, poen-a, -ae, F.; (punishment), supplicium, -i, N.

penny, use as, assis, M.

people (=men), hōmīn-es, -urr, M. (pl.); (a nation), pōpū-us, -i, M.

perceive, I, (by senses), sent-io, -ire, sensi, sensum; (by the mind), intelligo, -ēre, intellexi, intellectum.

perfect, summus.

perfectly, use superl.

perform, I, con-ficō; fungor.

perhaps, fortasse; p. 31, 4, note 1; p. 33, 2.

perish, I, pēr-ēo, -ire, -ivi (-ī), -itum.

permission, with your, tuā veniā; tuā bonā pace.

person, hōm-o, -īnis, M.; is (qui).

persuade, I, per-suādēo, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsum (with dat., p. 71, 4); I am persuaded, mihi persuasum est (p. 72, 10).

persist, I, persévēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

pestilence, pestis; pestilentia.

phenomenon, use neut. pron.

philosopher, philōsōph-us, -i, M.

philosophical, use gen. of *philosophy*.

philosophizing, philosophāri (inf.)

philosophy, philōsōphīa, -ae, F.

Phocion, Phōci-on, -ōnis, M.

pick out, eligo.

pig, sus, sūs, M.

pirate, praed-o, -ōnis, M.

pitch a camp, I, castra lōco (-āre, -āvī, -ātum); castra pōno (-ēre, pōsi, pōsitum).

pitch of insolence, to such, eo insolentiae (p. 60, 3).

pity, I, misereor, -ēri, miseritus sum; miseresco, -ēre (p. 66, note 2); me miseret (p. 66, 3).

pity, misēricordiā, -ae, F.

place, lōc-us, -i; pl. lōc-i, -ōrum or, more commonly, lōc-a, -ōrum.

place, I, pōn-o, -ēre, pōsi, pōsitum.

plain, planities; campus.

plain, it is, manifestum est ; apparet (-ēre, -ñit ; p. 4).

plan, consilium.

pleasant, iucundus ; or use iucunditas.

please, I, plāc-eo, -ēre, -ñi, -itum (with a dat., p. 71, 6).

pleasing, grāt-us, -a, -um.

pleasure, vōlupt-as, -ātis, F.

plebeian, plēbēi-us, -a, -um.

plough, ārātr-um ; (vb.), āro (r. 1).

pluck, carpo ; vello, ere, velli or vulsi, vuisum.

poet, pōēt-a, -ae, M.

point, use neut. pron.

pointed (sharp), ācūt-us, -a, -um.

point out, ostendo.

policy, consilium, -i, N.

politics, res publica, F. (never pl. in this sense).

Pompey, Pompēi-us, I, M.

poor, pauper, -is, adj. ; sup. pauperri-mus, -a, -um.

populace, vulg-us, -i, N. ; pleb-s.

popular, grātiosus.

populous, frequen-s, -tis (adj.) ; often in superlative : as, a populous city, urbs frequentissima.

position, lōcus, -i, M. ; pl. lōci, -ōrum (M.), lōca, -ōrum, N. ; (of a city), sit-us, -ūs. Often expressed by a dependent question introduced by ubi : I don't know the position of the enemy, nescio ubi hostes sint or castra posuerint (p. 32, 1) ; maintain position, se sustento (r. 1).

positively, p. 177, note.

possession, res, rei, F. ; get pos-session of, potior (abl. or gen.).

possessor, use habeo.

possibility, range of possi-bility, use fieri potest.

possible, it is, potest (only with an inf. pass.) ; it is possible to do this, hoc fieri potest.

possible, as many as, quam plurimi.

possible speed, with all, quam celerrime.

post, desert, praesidium desero.

pour round, circumfundere (se).

poverty, paupert-as, -ātis, F.

power, (civil), pōtest-as, -ātis, F. ; (military), impēri-um, -i ; such is the power, tantum potest.

powerful, pōten-s, -tis (adj.).

practicable, use facio.

practise, I, exercēo, -ēre, -ñi, -itum.

praise, lau-s, -dis, F.

praise, I, laud-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

pray, oro (r. 1) ; tandem (with interrog. words).

precaution, take, provideo, p. 38, 5.

predecessor, say who reigned before him.

prefer, I, māl-o, malle, mālūi (modal verb, p. 18, 3).

prefer him to you, I, eum tibi ante-pōno (-ēre, -pōui, -pōsitum), or ei te posthābeo (-hābere, -hābui, -hābitum).

prepare (make preparation), I, pār-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

presence, use adsum ; in my presence, me praesente (p. 52, 5), or coram me (abl.) ; presence of mind, animus.

present, I am, ad-sum, -esse, -fui (with a dat., p. 71, 5) ; I am present at the battle, pugnae intersum (p. 71, 5) ; at present, nunc.

present, dōnum, -i, N.

presently, mox, brēvi.

preservation, use vb.

preserve, I, conserv-o (r. 1.)

pretend, I, simūl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum ; (claim), dictito (r. 1).

prevent, I, prohib-éo, -ére, -ûi, -itum; **I prevent him from doing this**, eum prohibeo quominus hoc faciat (p. 22, 2).

prevent, to (=in order that... not), ne (p. 12, 2, note).

price, pretium, -i, N.; **at a high price**, magni; **at a low price**, parvi (p. 63, 4); **at what price**, use quantus.

prince, rex, régis, M.

principal, say *best*; princeps, principis, M.; primus, -a, -um.

prison, carcer, -is, M.; vincula, -orum, N. (pl.); **I throw into prison**, in vincula con-icio (-ére, -icēi, -iectum).

prisoner, captiv-us, -i, M.

private person, privāt-us.

prize, praemī-um, -i, N.

proceeding, res, rei, F.

procrastination, use cunctor (r. 1).

procure, I, ad-īpiscor, -īpisci, -eptus

profess, profiteor.

proficiency, make, proficio.

profit, quaest-us, -ūs, M.; emolūment-um, -i, M.

profound, use superl. of adj.

prolong, perfero (ad.).

promise, I, promitt-o, -ére, -misi, -misum; pol-licēor, -licēri, -licitus sum (p. 7, 3).

promise, promissum, -i, N.

proof, indicium, -i, N.; **it is a proof of wisdom to do this**, sapientis est hoc facere (p. 59, 2).

proper, idoneus, p. 111, b.

property, res.

proportion to (as), in, p. 118, 5.

proposal, use propono.

prosecution, use accuso.

prosperity, res prospērae, res secundae.

protection, praesidium (p. 69, 8); or use tueor.

protracted, diutinus.

proud, sūperb-us, -a, -um (adj.).

provide, I, prō-vīdēo, -vīdēre, -vīdi, visum; **I provide for your interest**, tibi prospicio; **I provide against you**, te caveo (p. 72, 7).

provided, p. 104, 6.

providentially, divinitus.

province, prōvincia, -ae, F.

provision, I make, provideo. See **provide**.

provisions, commēat-us, -ūs, M.; frument-um, -i, N.

public, publicus.

public meeting, concī-o, -onis.

punish, I, pūn-io, -ire, -ivi (-li), -itum; **I am punished**, poenas dō (dāre, dēdi, dātum).

punishment, poen-a, -ae, F.; supplī-cī-um, -i, N.

purpose, use cur; or p. 44.

purpose, I, stāt-ūo, ūēre, -ūi, -ūcūm; de-cerno, -cernēre, -crēvi, -crētum.

pursue, I, sēquor, sēqui, sēcutus sum; **some pursue one thing, others another**, alius aliud sequitur.

pursuit, studium.

pursuit, in, etc., say *that they may accomplish what they desire very much*.

put (=place), I, pōno, -ēre, pōnū, pōnūtum; **put at head of**, praeficio (lat.); **put up with**, patior; **put to death**, say *kill*.

Q.

quantity, vis (acc. vim; abl. vi); often expressed by a dependent question introduced by *quantus*; **I do not know the quantity of corn there**, nescio quantum frumenti ibi sit (p. 32, 1).

quarter, from one, etc., *periculum ad alium aliunde venit*.

quarter was given, no, *nulli parcitum est* (p. 72, 10).

queen, *rēgin-a, -ae, F.*

question, *I, interrōgo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*; it is a question (or questioned), *dubitatur*; to my question he gave no reply, *mihi quaerenti nihil respondit* (p. 48, 5); ask a question, *rogo*.

quick, *celer, -is, -e*.

quickly, *cēlērīter, prōpēre* (adv.); as quickly as possible, *quam celerrime*.

R.

rain, *plūvī-a, -ae, F.*

rains, *it, pluit*.

ramparts, *moenia, -ium*.

rapid, say *quick*.

rare, *rār-us, -a, -um*.

rashness, *tēmērīt-as, -ātis, F.*

rather, *pōtius*.

rather, *I had, mālō, malle, mālūī*.

reach, *pervenio ad*.

reach the city, *I, ad urbem pervenio* (-ire, -vēnī, -ventum).

read, *lego*; reading, *by, legendo*; reading delights me, *legere me iuvat*.

ready, *pārāt-us, -a, -um*; I am ready to go, *ire volo*.

rear, *terg-um, -i, N.*; in the rear, *a tergo*.

reason, *ratio, men-s, -tis, F.*; (cause), *caus-a, ae, F.*; for this reason, *quas ob causas*; by reason of, *ob* (acc.); often expressed by an indirect question introduced by *cur, quare*: as, *I don't know the reason for his action, uescio cur hoc fecerit*.

recall, (call back), *I, rēvōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*; (remember), *rēcōrd-or, -ārī, -ātus sum*; *reminiscor, I*.

receipt of the letter, on the, *epistolā acceptā* (p. 52, 5.)

receive, *I, ac-cipio, -cipēre, -cēpi, -ceptum*.

reckless, *temerārius*; or use *temeritas*.

recollect, *I, rēcōrd-or, -ārī, -ātus sum*.

recollection, *recordatio*.

recommend, *I, suadēo, -ēre, suasi, suasum*.

recover, *I, convalesco*; *rēcūpēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*; *re-cipio, -cipēre, -cēpi, -ceptum*.

redress, *remedium, -i, N.*

reduce, *I, sūb-īgo, -īgēre, -ēgī, -actum*; reduce to submission, *redigo*.

refill, *I, rē-plēo, -plēre, plēvi, -plētum*.

refit, *reficio*.

reform, *corrigo*.

refusal, *use nolo*.

refuse, *I, nol-o, -le, -ūi* (p. 18, 3); *recūso* (r. 1).

regard, *I, specto* (r. 1); *hāb-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, Itum*; *duco, -ēre, duxi, ductum*; (value highly), *magnī aestimo*; with regard to, *de*.

regret, *I, me poenitet* (-ēre, -uit; p. 66, 3); feel regret, *use poenitet*.

reign, *I, regn-o, -āre, -avi, -atum*; in the reign of Romulus, *Romulo regnante*.

reject, *reicio, -icēre, -ieci, -iectum*.

rejoice, *I, gaudēo, -ēre, gavīsus sum*.

rejoicing, *laetitia*; or use *vb*.

reliance on you, *I place, fidem tibi habeo*.

relieve, *levo* (r. 1).

rely, *I, con-fido, -fidēre, -fīsus sum* (with dat. of person and abl. of thing; p. 81, 5, note 2).

relying on, *frētus -a, -um* (with abl.; p. 81, 6).

remain, I, mănĕo, -ĕre, mansi, mansum; I remain behind, remaneo; I remain firm, permaneo; it remains, restat (ut).

remarks, use neut. pron. and dico.

remember, I, mēmīni, meminisse (p. 65, 2).

remind, I, com-mōnĕo, -mōnĕre, mōnīi, -mōnitum; commune-fācio, -fācĕre, -fēcī, -factum (with acc. of pers. and gen. of thing; p. 65, 2).

remorse, use poenitet (p. 66, 3).

remote, remotus.

removal, use vb.

remove, I, depello, -ĕre, depūli, depulsum; tollo.

repel, I, propuls-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

repent, I, me poenitet (-ere, -uit); I repent of my folly, stultitiae meae me poenitet.

repetition, use say often.

reply, I, respondĕo, -ĕre, respondi, responsum.

report, nuntio (r. 1).

reputation, aestimatio; (good), fām-a, -ae; (bad), infāmia, -ae.

request, obtain, impetro (r. 1).

requested, without being, say not asked.

require, I, opus est mihi; egĕo, -ĕre, -ui.

requite, repen-do, -dĕre, -dī, -sum.

resignation, with, aequo animo.

resist, resisto, -ĕre, -stīti, -stītum (d).

resistance, use resisto; the resistance ceased, resisti desitum est.

resistance, meet no, say no one opposing (obsto).

resolve, I, stātuo, -ĕre, -tūi, -tūtum; constituo, -ĕre, -tūi, -tūtum; decerno, -ĕre, -crāvī, -crētum.

respect, observo (r. 1).

rest, quies, quĕtis, F.

rest, I, quiesco, -ĕre, quĕvī.

rest of the, cĕtĕr-I, -ae, -a; the rest of the citizens, ceteri cives; the rest of his life, reliqua aetas.

restore, I, reddo; (strength), reparo (r. 1); rĕdintegr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

result, res, rĕi, F.; event-us, -ūs, M.; the result was that he went away, evĕnit ut abiret; he came back without any result, re infectā rediit.

retire, I, cĕdo, -ĕre, cessi, cessum.

retreat, I, me recipio (-cipĕre, -cĕpi, -ceptum); pĕdem rĕfĕro (-ferre, -tūli, -lātum.)

return, I (intr.), redĕo, -ĭre, rĕdīvi (rĕdīi), reditum; (trans.), reddo, -ĕre, reddī, redditum.

return, rĕdit-us, -ūs, M.

revile, I, vitūpĕr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; male-dico, -dicĕre, -dixi, -dictum (with dat., p. 71, 3).

reviler, use rel. clause.

revolt, defecti-o, -ōnis, F.

revolution, res novae.

revolve, moveor circa (acc.).

reward, praemium, -i, N.

Rhodes, Rhod-us, -i, F.

rich, dives, divitis; ōpulent-us, -a, -um.

riches, divitiāe, -ārum, F. (pl.).

ride, I, ĕquĭto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; I ride past, praetervĕhor, -i, -vectus sum.

ridge, iugum, -i.

ridicule, I, ir-ridĕo, -ĕre, -risi, -risum.

right, iūs, iūris, N.

right, rectus, -a, -um.

right hand, dextra, F. (properly an adj. with manus omitted).

ring, orbis, M.; (vb.), persōno (r. 1).

rise (of persons), con-surgo, -ĕre -surrexi, -surrectum; (of things), orior, -iri, ortus sum.

river, flūm-en, -inis, N.; flūvius, -i, M.

road, *via*, -ae, F.
roam, *vagor* (r. 1).
rock, *sax-um*, -i, N.; *rûp-ês*, -is, F.
rôle, *partes* (*dare*=assign; *sustinere*=sustain).
roll, *I, volvo*, -êre, *volvi*, *völütum*.
Roman, *Romanus*.
Rome, *Rôma*, -ae, F.; or say *people of Rome* (*Romani*).
Romulus, *Rômül-us*, -i, M.
room, left no room for doubt, *haud dubium fecit*.
root, say *cause*.
rose, *rôs-a*, -ae, F.
rout, use *vinco* or *fugo* (r. 1); *sträg-es*, -is, F.; *cläd-es*, -is, F.
royal, *regius*.
rude, *rûdis*, -e (adj.).
ruin, *pernicies*, -êi, F.; *exîtium*, -i, N.; (vb.), *deleo*, *perdo*, *evertô*.
rule, *rêgûla*, -ae, F.
rule, *I, rêgo*, *rêgêre*, *rêxi*, *rectum*.
rumor, *rumor*, *ôris*.
rush, *ruo*, -êre, *rûi*, *rûtum*.

S.

sack, *diripio*, -êre, *ripûi*, -reptum.
sacrifice, *posthabere* (p. 72, 9).
sacrilege, *sacrîlêgî-um*, -i, N.
sad, *maestus*, -a, -um.
safe, *tûtus*, -a, -um; *incôlûm-is*, -e.
safety, *sâl-us*, -ûtis, F.
sail, *vêl-um*, -i, N.
sail, *I, nâvîg-o*, -âre, -âvi, -âtum.
sailor, *naut-a*, -ae, M.
sake of, for the, *causâ* (with genitive), usually placed after the word or words governed (p. 43, 9); **for its own sake**, *propter se*.
sally, *eruptî-o*, -ônîs, F.; **I make a sally**, *eruptîonem facio*; **I sally out**, *erumpo*, -êre, *erûpi*, *eruptum*.

salute, *I, salûto*, -âre, -âvi, -âtum.
salvation, *salus*, -ûtis, F.
same, *idem*, *êadem*, *idem*; **the same** . . . **as**, *idem* . . . *qui* (p. 10, 1).
satisfied with, *contentus* (with abl., p. 81, 6).
satisfy, *I, satisfacio*, -fâcêre, -fêci (with dative, p. 71, 3).
save, *I, servo* (or *conservo*), -âre, -âvi, -âtum.
say, *I, dico*, -êre, *dixi*, *dictum*.
saying, p. 89, 8.
scarcely, *vix*.
scare, *terreo*.
sceptre, *regnum*.
scientific inquiry, say *science and inquiry* (*cognitio*; p. 165, b).
scourge, *virgis caedêre*.
scout, *explôrât-or*, -ôris, M.
scruple, *scrupulus*.
Scylla, *Scylla*, -ae, F.
sea, *mâre*, *mâris*, N.
season, *temp-us*, -ôris, N.
second, *sêcund-us*, -a, -um; **altêr**, -a -um.
secret, the secret of, use *idcirco quod* (*on this account because*).
secure, *tutus*; **safety is secured**, use adj. *safe*.
see, *vidêo*, -êre, *vidi*, *visum*; *specto* (r. 1).
seed, *semen*, *inis*, N.
seek, *I, pêtô*, -êre, *pêtivi*, *pêtîtum*.
seem, *I, vidêor*, -êri, *visus sum*; it seems that he is good, *ille bonus esse videtur* (p. 38, 1).
seize, *I, occup-o*, -âre, -âvi, -âtum; *comprehendo*, -êre, -prêhendi, -prêhen-sum; *ar-ripio*, -ripêre, -ripûi, -reptum.
seldom, *râro*.
self-interest, use *utilis*.
sell, *I, vendo*, -êre, *vendi*, *venditum*;
I am sold, *vêncô*, -êre, -îvi (-îi), -îtum.
senate, *sênât-us*, -ûs, M.

send, I, mitt-o, -ēre, misi, missum ;
send away, dimitto ; relēgo (r. 1) ;
send for, arcesso.

sense, good sense, prudentia.

sense of shame, pudor.

sentry, cust-os, -ōdis, M.

serpent, serpen-s, -tis, M.

serve, use utor.

service, meritum (in), -i, N.

sesterce, p. 150.

set out, I, proficiscor, -i, profectus sum ; **I set at liberty**, libēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum ; **set at head**, see put.

several, complures.

severity, use severus, -a, -um.

shadow, umbra, -ae, F.

shake, I, quass-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum ; con-cūtio, -cūtēre, -cūsui, -cussum ; **shake off**, excutio.

shame, pudor ; p. 66, 3.

shameful, turpis.

sharer, partic-eps, ipis, M. or F. (gen.).

she. See he.

shield, scūtum, -i, N. ; clipeus, -i, M.

ship, nāvis, -is, F. ; **a war ship**, navis longa ; **a merchantman**, navis oneraria.

short, brēvis, -e, adj. ; **shortly** (in a short time), brevi.

should, p. 33, 3.

shout, clam-or, -ōris, M.

show, I, monstr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

shut, claudo, -ēre, clausi, clausum.

Sicily, Sicili-a, ae, F.

sick, aeg-er, -ra, -rum (adj.).

Sidon, Sidon, ōnis.

signal, signum, -i, N.

silence, keep, use taceo.

silent, tācit-us, -a, -um ; **I am silent**, tēcō, -ēre, -ūi.

silver, argentum.

sin, peccāt-um ; **I sin**, pecco (r. 1).

since, abhinc ; **ten years since**, abhinc decem annis or annos (p. 86, 3).

since, p. 112 ; 113 ; 114.

sing, cano.

single, not a, ne unus quidem.

sister, sōr-or, -ōris, F.

sit, I, con-sido, -sīdēre, -sēdi, -sessum.

situation, sit-us, -ūs, M. ; often expressed by a dependent question introduced by ubi or quo in loco : **I don't know the situation of the town**, nescio quo in loco (ubi) oppidum sit (p. 32, 1).

size, magnitudo, -inis, F. ; often expressed by a dependent question introduced by quantus : **I don't know the size of the island**, nescio quanta insula sit (p. 32, 1).

skilful, peritus (with gen.).

skill, peritia ; scienti-a, -ae, F.

slaughter, clades, is, F.

slave, servus, -i, M.

slave to, **I am**, servio, -ire, -ivi, -itum (with a dat., p. 71, 6).

slay, I, interficio, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum ; occido, -ēre, occidi, occisum.

sleep, I, dorm-io, -ire, -ivi, -itum.

sleep, somn-us, -i, M.

sleet, say rain mixed with snow.

slight, say small.

slow, tard-us, -a, -um.

small, parvus ; brēv-is (adj.).

snake, serpens, -tis, M.

snatch, (to one's self), ar-ripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum ; (**snatch away from**), eripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum.

snow, nix, nivis, F.

so (=thus), ita ; with verbs, adeo ; with adjectives and adverbs, tam ; see p. 3, 8, note ; **so far from**, tantum abest ut (p. 15).

society, societas, -atis, F.

soldier, mil-es, -itis, M.

solemnly, p. 166, c.

Solon, Sol-on, -ōnis.

some, aliquis (p. 96, 5); nescio quis (p. 96, note 2 [b]); nonnulli, ae, a.

some day, aliquando.

somehow, nescio quo modo (p. 96, 6, b).

sometimes, nonnunquam; interdum.

somewhat, use comparative.

son, filius, I, M.

song, carm-en, -inis, N.; cant-us, -ūs, M.

soon, mox, brevi; 102, 4; **he came sooner than he expected**, celerius suā spe venit; **sooner** (rather), potius.

soothsayer, harusp-ex, -icis.

sorrow, p. 66, 3; dolor.

sorry, **I am**, nōlo, nolle, nōlūi; (**grieve**), dōleo, -ēre, -ūi; me piget (p. 66, 3); me poenitet.

soul, ānīm-us, -I, M.; **not a soul**, ne unus quidem.

source, use orior (rise).

sow, sero, ēre, sēvi, sātum.

spare, I, parco, -ēre, pēperci, parsum (or parcitum) (with dative, p. 71, 6).

spark, scintilla, -ae, F.

Spartan, Lacedaemonius.

speak, I, lōquor, lōqui, lōcūtus sum; dico, -ēre, dixi, dictum.

spear, hasta.

speech (language), lingua; (**discourse**), serm-o, -ōnis; (**oration**), orāti-o, -ōnis, F.

speed, celerit-as, -atis, F.; or use celeriter.

spirit, ānīmus; ferocia.

spirited, ānīmōs-us; ferox.

spite, in spite of, p. 115, 11.

spoil, praed-a, -ae, F.

spring, ver, vēris, N.; **in the beginning of spring**, primo vere.

spring from, I, ōrior, -iri, ortus sum; sprung from a noble father, patre praeclaro ortus (p. 74, 4).

stab, percutio. See *strike*.

stage, theatrum.

stand, I, sto, stāre, stēti, stātum; **I stand by or near**, adsto; **I stand around**, circumsto; **stand for**, peto; **stand ground**, consisto.

standard, sign-um, -I, N.; (standard of the legion), aquil-a, -ae, F.

star, stell-a, -ae, F.

stare, in face, impendeo (dat.).

start (set out), I, prōficiscor, -I, profectus sum.

state (condition), stāt-us, -ūs, M.; (**commonwealth**), civitas, -ātis, F.; res publica, rei publicae, F.; **keep great state**, splendide se gerere.

station, loco (r. 1.)

stationed, use sto.

statue, statua.

stay, I, com-mōror, -mōrārī, -mōrātus sum; māneo, -ēre, mansi, mansum.

steel, ferrum.

step, use *do* and a neuter pronoun.

stick, bacūlum.

still, adhuc; etiam nunc (**of present**); etiam tum (**of past**).

stone, lāpis, Idis, M.; **I throw a stone**, lapidem im-pingo (-ēre, -pēgi, -pactum); **I throw a stone at you**, tibi lapidem impingo (vb.); expugno (r. 1).

stop, I, desīno, -ēre, -sivi, -sītum; **stop talking**, desine loqui (p. 18, 3).

storm, tempestas.

story (narrative), res; fābūla, -ae, F.; **he told many stories to me**, mihi multa narravit.

stranger, peregrinus.

stream, flūm-en, -inis, N.; riv-us, -I, M.; flūvius, -I, M.

strength, *vir-es, -ium, F. (pl.); rōb-ur, -ōris, N.;* or say *how many*.

strengthen, *robōro (r. 1.)*

strike, *I, per-cūtio, -cūtēre, -cussi, -cussum.*

strip, *exuo (abl.).*

strive, *I, nitor, nīti, nīsus sum; cōnor, -āri, -ātus sum; strive to conquer, nitēre ut vincas (p. 16, 5).*

strong, *fort-is, -e; magnus.*

struggle, *contenti-o, -ōnis, F.*

study of literature, *cognitio litterarum.*

study, *I, operam do (dāre, dēdi, dātum); I study Latin literature, litteris Latinis operam do; I study my interest, mihi provideo, or consulo.*

subject, (= thing), *res.*

subjects, say *those she presides (prae-sum), over.*

succeed (of plans), *prō-cēdo, cēdere, cessi, cessum; my plans succeed, consilia mea procedunt.*

succeed (come after in succession), *I, ex-cipio, cipere, -cēpi, ceptum; he succeeded his father on the throne, regnum ex patre excepit.*

success, meet poor, *male succedo.*

succor. See *aid*.

such, *tantus; talis, -e (p. 10, 1).*

sudden, *sūbit-us, -a, -um; rēpentin-us, -a, -um.*

suddenly, *sūbito, rēpente (adv.).*

suddenness. Use *sudden*.

sufficient, *sātis (adv.).*

suggest, suggestion, use *auctor*, p. 52, 5.

suicide, commit, *sibi mortem con-sciscere.*

suitable, *aptus, -a, -um; idōnēus.*

sum, *summa, ae.*

summer, *aest-as, -ātis, F.; at the*

beginning of summer, *primā aest-ate; at the end of summer, extremā aestate.*

summit, of the hill, *collis summus (p. 61, e).*

sun, *sol, sōlis, M.*

sunrise, *solis ortus.*

superior to, I am, *prae-sto, -stāre, stitī (with dat., p. 71, 4); I am s. to all in courage, omnibus virtute praesto.*

superstition, *superstitio, -onis, F.*

supper, *coena, -ae, F.*

supplies, *commēat-us, -ūs, M.*

supply, with, *suppedito (r. 1).*

support, *sequor, sēqui, secutus sum.*

suppose, *crēdo, -ēre, credidi, creditum.*

sure, be, *certo scio.*

surely, p. 121, 7.

surprise (as a foe), *I, op-prīmo, -prīmēre, -pressi, -pressum.*

surrender, *I, trād-o, -ēre, -idi, -itum; dēdo.*

surround, *I, cingo, -ēre, cinxi, cinctum; circum-vēnio, -vēnīre, -vēni, -ventum.*

survive, *I, super-sum, -esse, -fui.*

suspect, *I, suspīcor, -ārī, -ātus sum; I am suspected, in suspicionem venio.*

suspicion, *suspīcio, -ōnis, F.*

sustain (an onset), *I, sus-tīneo, -tīnēre, -tīnūi, -tentum; (defeat), accipio*

swallow, *hirund-o, -inis*

swear, *I, iūro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 7, 3).*

sweet, *dulc-is, -e; (to the smell), suāv-is, -e (adj.).*

swim, *no (r. 1.)*

sword, *glādius, -i, M.; or use bellum; with fire and sword, igni ferroque; put to sword, say kill.*

Syracuse, *Syrācūs-ae, -ārum, F. (pl.).*

Syracuse, of, *Syracusān-us, -a, -um, system, ratio.*

systematic study, say *system and study.*

T.

take, I *cāpio, -ēre, -cēpi, -captum;* (**take a town**), *expugno, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;* **take away, eripio;** **take from,** *abstraho.*

take care that, *curā ut, fac ut;* **take deeply to heart,** *graviter ferre.*

take place, *fio, fieri, factus sum.*

take up arms, I, *arma cāpio.* (*cāpire, cēpi, captum*) or *arma sūmo* (*sūmere, sumpsi, sumptum*).

talent, (ability), *ingēnium, -i, N.;* (**money**), *talentum, -i, N.*

talk, I, *lōquor, lōqui, lōcūtus sum.*

talkative, *lōquā-x, -cis (adj.).*

Tarentum, *Tarentum, -i, N.*

Tarquin, Tarquinius, -i, M.

task, take to, *reprehendo.*

taste for, *stūdium, i, N.;* **a taste for literature,** *studium litterarum.*

taxation, exemption from, *immūnitas, -ātis, F.;* **exempt from taxation,** *immūn-is, -e.*

teach, I, *dōcēo, -ēre, dōcēti, doctum* (p. 39, 6).

teaching, by, *docendo;* **by teaching we learn,** *docendo discimus.*

teacher, *māgist-er, -ri, M.*

teaching of philosophers, *praecepta (-ōrum, N. pl.) philosophorum.*

tear, *lācrima, -ae, F.*

tedious, long-us, -a, -um (adj.).

tell, (bid), I, *iūbēo, -ēre, iussi, iussum* (with acc.); (**narrate**), *narr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;* *dico.*

temper, ānīmus, i, M.

temple, *templ-um, i, N.;* *aed-es, -is.*

ten, decem.

term, condiciō, -ōnis, F.; **on what terms,** *quantū.*

terrible threats, say terrors and threats (p. 165, b).

terrify, terreo, -ēre -tūi, -itum.

territory, fin-es, -um, M. (pl.); āger.

terror, terror, -ōris M.

than, quam; *abl. (p. 78, 1).*

thanks, I return, gratias āgo (-ēre, -ēgi, actum); **receive (th.),** *use ago (pass.)*

thanksgiving, supplicāti-o, -ōnis, F.

that (pronoun), *ille (p. 87); p. 4; 12.*

the, usually not expressed; the city which . . . *ea urbs quae . . . ; the . . . the, p. 78, 6.*

Thebes, Thēb-ae, -ārum, F. (pl.)

theft, furtum, -i, N.

their, p. 7, note; *omitted, when possessor is evident.*

themselves (reflexive), se; (**emphatic**) *se ipsos (p. 90, 13).*

then, tum, tunc; **then and there, illico.**

thence, inde.

theory, say thing.

there, ibi, illic; (*after verbs of motion*), *illuc.*

therefore, igitur, ergo; *itaque (in narrative).*

thereupon, tum.

thief, fūr, furis, M.

thing, res, rēi, F.

think, arbitror; (reflect on), *cōgit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;* (**fancy**), *puto, -are, -āvi, -ātum;* (**believe**), *credo;* *I almost th., p. 31, 4, note 1.*

third, tertius, -a, -um.

thirst, sitis, -is, F.

thirteen, tredecim.

thirty, triginta.

this, these, those, hic, ille (p. 88, 6).

thorough knowledge of, use *per-spectum habere*.

though, *quamquam, quamvis, etsi* (p. 114, 7; 47, 3).

thousand, *mille*; pl., *millia*.

threaten, **I**, *immineo, ēre*; *mīn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum*; **I threaten him with punishment**, *supplicium ei minor*.

threats, *mīn-ae, -ārum*, F. (pl.); or use *minor*.

three, *trēs, tria*.

thrice, *ter*.

throne, *regnum, i*.

throng, *multitūd-o, -inis*, F.

throughout, *per* (prep., with acc.); **throughout the whole city**, *totā urbe*.

throw, **I**, *con-icō, -icēre, -icēci, -iectum*; *impingo, -ēre, impēgi, impactum*.

Tiber, *Tiber-is, -is*, M.

Tibur, *Tibur, -is*, N.

till, *donec* (p. 103, 6).

till, **I**, *cōlo, -ēre, cōlūi, cultum*.

time, *temp-us, -ōris*, N.; **at that time**, *tum*; *eo tempore*.

timid, *timid-us, -a, -um*.

timidity, use *adj.*

tired be, use *taedet* (p. 66, 3).

to, *ad* (prep. with acc.); *in* (with acc.; after verbs of motion).

to-day, *hōdie* (adv.); *hic dies*.

together, *simul*.

toil, *lābor, -is*, M.; *vb., labōro* (r. 1).

tomb, *sēpulchr-um, -i*, N.

to-morrow, *cras* (adv.).

too, (also), *quōque*; with adjectives or adverbs, often translated by the comparative: **too harsh**, *severior*; **too much**, *nimis*.

top of the mountain, *summus mons*.

torture, *tormentum* (rack).

towards, *ad, erga* (prep. with acc.);

expressed simply by acc. with names of towns and small islands (p. 83, 4).

tower, *turr-is, -is*, F.

town, *oppid-um, -i*, N.

townsman, *oppidān-us, -i*, M.

tradition, **I hand down by**, *trā-do, -dere, -didi, -ditum* (p. 38, 1).

train, *exere-ō, -ēre, -nī, -itum*.

training, *disciplin-a, ae*, F.

traitor, *prodit-or, -ōris*, M.

transformation, use *mutare*.

travel, **I**, *iter faciō* (*facēre, feci, factum*.)

treachery, *perfidia, -ae*, F.

treat cruelly, *saevio* (in).

treaty, *foed-us, -ōris*, N.

tree, *arbor, -ōris*, F.

tramble, *trēmisco, -ēre, trēmūi*.

tribe, (political), *tribus, -us*, F.; (nation), *gens, gentis*, F.; *nātī-o, -ōnis*, F.

trifles, *nugae, -ārum*.

triumph, use *exsulto* (r. 1).

troops, *cōplae, -ārum*, F. (pl.).

trouble, *labor*; *molestiae, -ārum*, F.

troublesome, *molest-us, -a, -um*.

truce, *indūtiae, -ārum*, F. (pl.).

true, *vēr-us, -a, -um*.

trust, **I**, *fido, -ēre, fisis sum*; *confido, -ere, confisus sum* (with dat.; p. 81, 5, note 2); *mando* (r. 1).

truth, *vera, -ōrum*, N. (pl.); *vērīt-as, -ātis*, F.

try, **I**, *cōn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum*.

tumult, *tumultus, -ūs*.

turn, **I** (trans), *verto, -ēre, verti, ver-sum*; (intr.), *vertor, verti, versus sum*.

Tuscan, *Tusceus, -a, -um*.

twenty, *viginti*.

two, *duo*.

tyranny, *dōminātio*, -ōnis, F.; *dōmīn-*
āt-us, -ūs, M.

tyrant, *tŕannus*; *rex*.

Tyre, *Tyrus*, -i, F.

U.

unable to, I am, *non possum*.

unavenged, *inult-us*, -a, -um.

unbearable, *intolerabilis*; or *use*
fero.

unbroken, success, *use res ei*
semper succedit.

uncertain, *incertus*.

understand, I, *intellego*, -ēre, *intel-*
lexi, *intellectum*.

undertake, I, *sus-cīpio*, -cīpēre, -cēpi,
-ceptum.

undone, I leave, *praetermitto*.

undoubtedly, *procul dubio*; or *use*
superl.

unendurable, *see unbearable*.

unexpected, *sūbit-us*, *inopinatus*.

unfortunately, *say it happened*
unluckily.

unfriendly, *inimic-us*, -a, -um.

unheard, *inauditus*.

universal, universally, *use om-*
nes, *omnia* (pl.).

universe, *mundus*; *natura rerum*.

unjust, *Iniqu-us*, -a, -um.

unless, *nisi* (p. 120, 3).

unlike, *dissimilis*, -e (with dat.; p. 64,
note 2).

unluckily, *inopportune*, *infelicit*.

unlucky, *infeli-x*, -cis (adj.).

unnatural, *nēfari-us*, -a, -um (adj.).

unnecessary, *non necessarius*.

unpopularity, *invidia*, -ae, F.

unreasonableness, *use vanus*.

until. *See till*.

unwilling, *invit-us*, -a, -um; **be un-**
willing, *nolo*.

unworthy, *indign-us*, -a, -um (with
abl.; p. 81, 6).

use (make a use of), *I, ūtor*, ūti, ūsus
sum (with abl.; p. 80, 1).

use, I am of, *prōsum*, *prōdesse*,
prōfui (with dat.; p. 70, 1); **what is**
the use? *quid refert?*

used, *use impt.*, or *soleo*.

useful, *ūtilis*, -e (adj. with dat. or acc.
with ad; **useful for ruling**, *utilis re-*
gendo or *ad regendum*).

usefulness, *utilit-as*, -ātis, F.; or *use*
adj.

useless, *inutilis*.

Utica, *Utica*, -ae, F.

utility, have, *use adj.*

utmost, *plurimum* (p. 66, 4).

utmost speed, to the, *quam celer-*
rimē (p. 78, 9, note).

V.

vain, *vanus*; **in vain**, *frustrā* (of
the person); *nequidquam* (of the
attempt).

valley, *valles* (or *is*), -is, F.

value, I, *aestim-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
I value (*i.e.*, highly), *magni aestimo*
(p. 79, 12).

vanquish, I, *sūpēr-o*, -āre, -āvi,
-ātum; *vinco*, -ēre, *vici*, *victum*.

variety, *varietas*.

various, *multus*; *varius*.

Varius, *Varius*.

vast, *maxim-us*, -a, -um (*superl.* of
magnus); *vastus*.

vehemence, *use vehemens*.

Veil, *Veil*, -ōrum, M. (pl.).

venture, I, *audēo*, -ēre, *ausus sum*.

very, often expressed by superlative
of adj. or adv.

very glad, I am, *vehementer lae-*
tor.

versed in, peritus, -a, -um; **he was versed in law**, iuris peritus (or peritissimus) erat (p. 64).

veteran, vêtër-ânus (adj. and noun).

victorious, vict-or, -ôris, M.

victory, victoriâ, ae, F.

view, he had this object in, id egit (from âgo, -êre, âgi, actum); **hold a view**, sentio.

vigor, vigor, -ôris, M.

villa, villa, ae, F.

village, vicus, -i, M.

violence, vis (acc., vim; abl., vi), F.

violent, violentus.

virtual, omit.

virtue, virt-us, -utis, F.

virtuously, hōneste.

visit, I, vis-o, -êre, visi, visum.

vogue, in, use sum.

voice, vox.

vote, suffrâgi-um, -i, N.

vote, I, sententiam fero.

voyage, cursus, ūs; nâvigâtî-o, -ônîs, F.; **make a voyage**, navigo (r. i.).

W.

wage war, I, bellum gëro, -êre, gessi, gestum; bellum infero, -ferre, -tûli, illâtum (p. 71, 4).

wait, or **wait for**, I, expect-o, -âre -âvi, -âtum.

walk (take a walk), I, ambûl-o, -âre, -âvi, -âtum.

wall, (generally), mûr-us, -i, M.; (for defensive purposes), moenî-a, -ium, N. (pl.); (garden wall), maceria, -ae, F.; (wall of house), paries, -ietis, M.

want, say *wish*; **be wanting**, deesse.

war, bell-um, -i, N.; **I wage war**, see *wage*.

ward off, defendo, êre, -fendi, -fensum.

warm, câlid-us, -a, -um (adj.).

warn, I, mōnëo, -êre, mōnûi, monitum.

waste, tero; **I lay waste**, pōpûlor, -âri, -âtus sum; vasto (r. 1).

water, âqu-a, -ae, F.

wave, fluct-us, -ûs, M.; unda, -ae, F.

way, via, -ae, F.; iter, Itineris, N.; (a by-path), sēmita, -ae, F.

weaken, debilito (r. 1).

wealth, diviti-ae, -ârûm, F. (pl.); fortun-ae, -ârûm, F. (pl.).

wealthy, div-es, -itis (of persons); (of things) opulētus, -a, -um (adj.).

weapon, tel-um, i, N.

weariness, taedi-um, -i, N.

weary, **I am**, me taedet (êre, -nît); **I am weary with the journey**, me Itineris taedet (p. 66, 3).

weather, tempestas, -atis, F.

wedding, nupti-ae, -ârûm, F. (pl.).

weight, pond-us, -êris, N.

well, a, puteus, i, M.

well, bēne; comp., mēllus; superl., optime; **be well**, valeo.

well-born, parentibus claris ortus (p. 74, 4).

what? quis, quae, quid; p. 10, 10.

whatever, quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque; see p. 115, 11.

when (rel. adv.), quum; (interrog.), p. 2, 6.

hence, unde

whenever, quum (p. 107, 5); quodcumque.

where, ubi (interrog. and rel.); **where in the world are we?** ubi terrarum (or gentium) sumus? **where from**, unde.

whether...or, utrum...an (p. 20, 6).

which, (*rel.*), qui, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid or quod (*adj.*).

while, dum; **for a little while**, paulisper.

white, albus.

whither, quō.

who (*rel.*), qui, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid or quod (*adj.*).

whoever, quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque.

whole, (*entire*), totus, -a, -um (*gen.*, totius); (*safe*), salvus, -a, -um.

wholly, I am wholly devoted to literature, totus litteris incumbō.

why, cur, quāre.

wicked, mālus, imprōbus, prāvus.

wickedness, nefas (*neut. indec. noun*); scēl-us, -ēris, N.

will, vōlunt-as, -ātis, F.; **against my will**, me invito (*abl. abs.*)

willing, volen-s, -tis.

win, (*obtain*) I, consequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum; (*gain the day*), vinco, -ēre, -vici, victum; supēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

wine, vin-um, -ī, N.

wing, of an army, cornu, ūs, N.

winter, hiems, hiēmīs, F.

winter (*wintry*), hibern-us, -a, -um;

winter quarters, hiberna, -orum.

wisdom, sapiētia, -ae, F.

wise, sapien-s, -tis (*adj.*).

wise, I am, sapiō, ēre, sapivī, sapi-tum.

wish, earnest, say *wished very much*.

wish, I, vōlo, velle, vōlūī; (*desire*), cupio, ēre, -ivī, -itum.

with, cum (*prep. with abl.*)

withdraw, abeo; abduco, -ēre, -duxi, -ductum.

within, inter or intra (*with acc.*), or

simply the *abl.*; **within ten days**, inter (*or intra*) dies decem; or decem diebus; **be within a little**, minimum abesse quin (*p. 22, 4*).

without, sine (*prep. with abl.*); or see *p. 130*.

withstand, I, ob-sto, -stāre, -stīti (*with dat.*, 71, 4); sustineo

witness, testis; or use *see*.

woman, mālier, -lēris, F.; fēmina.

wonder, I, mir-or, -ari, -ātus sum.

wonderful, mirus; or use *superl.*

wood, silv-a, -ae, F.; nēm-us, -ōris, N.

word, verb-um, -ī, N.; **word is brought**, nuntiatur.

work, ōp-us, -ēris, N.

world, terra; orbis terrarum; omnes gentes; homines; (*universe*), mundus; **all the world believes this**, nemo est quin hoc credat; **the older world**, illa prisca gens hominum.

worse, pei-or, -ōris (*comp. of malus*).

worth. See *worthy*.

worthy, dign-us, -a, -um (*with abl.*, *p. 81, 6*).

would that, ūtinam (*p. 25, 2*).

wound, vuln-us, -ēris, N.

wound, I, vulnēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

wrest, I, ex-torqueo, -torquēre, -torsi, -tortum.

wretch, use scēlērātus or miser.

wretched, miser, -a, -um (*adj.*).

write, scribo.

writer, scriptor.

writing, in writing letters, in epistolis scribendis.

wrong, iniūria, -ae, F.; I do wrong, pecco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; am wrong, erro (*r. 1*).

Y.

year, annus, -ī, M.

yes, *p. 28, 2, note*.

yesterday, hēri, of yesterday, hesternus, -a, -um.

yet (=nevertheless), tāmen; vero, emphatic).

yet, not, nondum.

yield to, I, cēdo, -ēre, cēssi, cessum.

yoke, iūgum, -i, N.

you, tu (sing.); vos (pl.).

young, (young man,) iūvēnis (iūnior, mínimus natu); adolescens.

yours, tūus, -a, -um (sing.); vest-er, -ra, rum pl.).

youth, iuvent-us, -ūtis, F. (collective noun); (time of), adōlescentī-a, -ae, F.

Z.

zeal, stūdiūm, -i, N.

zealous, stūdiōsus, -a, -um (with gen.).

zealously, use noun.

Zeno, Zēn-o, -ōnis, M.

INDEX.

The numbers refer to pages and sections.

A.

abeo, construction of, 74, 3.

abhinc, constr. and position of, 86, 3.

ablative, *derivation* of the term, 73, 1; *syntax of*, 73-86; *abl. of agent*, 38, 2; 74, 5, note 1; *of quality*, 62, 1; *price*, 63, 4, note; 79, 12; *absolute*, 48, 7; relations expressed by *abl. absolute*, 51, 2; position of the *abl. absolute*, 52, note; examples of *abl. abs.*, 52, 4; 52, 5; equivalents of *abl. abs.* in English, 52, 6; substitutes for *abl. abs.*, 49, foot-note; *motion from*, 73, 2; 74, top of page; *cause, manner, instrument*, 74, 5; 75, note 2; after *comparatives*, 76, 2; *respect*, 79, 11; with *adjectives*, 74, 4; 81, 6; with *verbs*, 74, 3; 80, 1-3 and 81, 4-5; *place* (of towns), 82, 1, 2; (not name of town), 83, 3; *of distance*, 84, 8, 9; with *abhinc*, 86, 3; *of time*, 85, 1; of difference, 77, 6.

abound in, verbs meaning to, with *abl.*, 80, 2.

abstineo, constr. of, 74, 3.

abstract nouns, expressed by *pres. part. act.*, 48, 6; 157, 4, (a)-(c); 158, 159, 160-163; *abstract adjs. and adverbs*, 164, 165, 166.

accusative, with *infinitive*, 4-7; 56, 6, 7; 127, 1, 2, note; with *verbs hope, promise, undertake, swear*, 7, 3; cognate, 38, 4; *vbs. with two acc.*, 39, 6; 40, 9; 40, 8; of *exclamation*, 58, note; 114, 5; *acc. and gen. with verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting*, 65, 1; *motion towards*, 83, 4; extent of space, 84, 9; duration of time, 86, 2;

with *verbs compounded with prep.*, 71, 4; *acc. and dat.*, 71, 4; 72, 7-9.

active periphrastic conjugation, p. 53, 1.

ad Romam, meaning of, 83, 4, note.

adjectival clauses, 98, 3; 100, 9.

adjectives, not common with proper nouns, 3, 8; used *adverbially*, 11, 2; joined to *esse* after *licet*, 33, 6; with *necesse est* in *dat. or acc.*, 33, 6; with *genitive*, 63, 6; 64; *dat.*, 69, 9; *abl.*, 74, 4; 81, 6.

admoneo, constr. of, 65, 2.

adverbial clauses, 98, 3; 100, 10; local, 102, 1.

aeque ac, 116, 1.

affirmative answer, 28, 2, note.

age, how expressed, 86, 4.

agent, case of, 38, 2; 50, 12; 74, 5, note 1; secondary agent, 75, note 1.

ago, how expressed, 86, 3.

agreement, 1-3; 9, note.

aliquis, 96, 5; 60, 3.

aliter ac, 116, 1.

amount. See *Indirect question*, 32.

amplius, plus, minus, with *numerals*, 77, 4.

an, construction of, 29, 6; 29, 7; 31, 4.

and no one, *nec quisquam*, 95, 3, note.

antepono, constr. of, 72, 9.

antequam, constr. of, 104, 7.

any, how translated, 94, 1; 95, 2; 96, 5.

apposition, 2, 5; 9, 8.

as, divisions of, p. 153.
as, idiomatic uses of, 118, 6.
asyndeton, p. 170, 10; 188, 3, *b*.
at (*but*), **at enim**, p. 203.
at a place (name of a town), 82, 1, 2;
 (not the name of a town), 83, 3.
at tamen, joined to single words, 125,
 5, note.
attendant circumstance, in abl.
 abs., 51, 2.
aut, p. 202, *b*.

B.

beginning of spring, how expressed,
 61, (*e*).
bene, verbs compounded with *bene*,
satis, male, gov. dat., 71, 3.
bottom, how translated, 61, (*e*).
but, after neg. verbs of doubting, see
quin.
but if, see *sin*.

C.

Calendar, Roman, 147.
can, 33, 2.
cardinals, declined, 143, 1.
careo, constr. of, 81 (top).
causal clause, 100, 10, 5; 113.
cause, ablative of, 74, 5.
cedo, constr. of, 74, 3.
certe, certo, 89, 7, note 2.
characteristic of, it is the, 59, 2.
chiasmus, p. 179, *g*.
circumdo, constr. of, 72, 8.
classification of clauses, 98, 3.
classification of sentences, 98, 1.
classification of tenses, 19, 1.
clauses, subordinate, 98, 3; consec-
 utive, 14; causal, 113; concessive, 114,
 7; comparative, 101, 7; 116, 117; con-
 ditional, 101, 8; 119-125; final, 12;
 109; local, 102, 1, 2; temporal, 102,
 3, 4.

coepi, 142, 6.
cognate accusative, 38, 4.
coins, Roman, 150.
collective noun, with plural verb, 2, 3.
command, constr. of verbs signifying,
 24, 1, (*b*).
comparative degree, 76, 1.
complex sentences, 98, 2.
compound sentences, 98, 1.
compound numbers, how express-
 ed, 144, 3.
concession, clauses of, 100, 10, 6;
 114, 115.
concord, of subject and verb, 1.
condemn, constr. of verbs signifying
 to, 65, 1.
conditional sentences, 101, 8; 119-
 124.
confido, constr. of, 81, 5.
connection, p. 181.
consecutive clauses, 14; 100, 10, 4.
constituo, when followed by an ut-
 clause, 17, 5, note.
consulo, 72, 7.
contentus, constr. of, 81, 6.
contra quam, 117, 1.
correlatives, 10, 1.
cum, when used with abl. of manner,
 75, note 3.
currency, Roman, 150.

D.

danger, there is, constr. of, 18, 2.
dative, why so called, 68, 1; translated
 by *to* and *for*, 68, 2; dative of possession
 with *sum*, 68, 3; used for English *from*,
 68, 4; of person interested (ethic dative),
 68, 5; used for gen., 68, 6; for abl. with
 prep. *a* or *ab*, 69, 7; of purpose, 69, 8;
 with adjectives, 69, 9, note 1-3; with
 verbs, 70, 1, 2; 71, 3-6; 72, 7-10;
 dative and acc., 72, 7-9; dative after
 compound verbs, 71, 3; 71, 4, note;
 71, 5.

day, before, 86, 4; after, 86, 4; for the following day, 86, 4.

decerno, followed by an *ut*-clause, 17, 5.

definition, genitive of, 63, 5.

demonstrative pronouns, 88; followed by correlatives, 10, 1; cannot be joined with a *part.*, 49, 11; agree with *pred.*, 89, 10.

denarius, 150, 1.

deponent verbs, *perf. part.* with an *act. meaning*, 49, 8.

desisto, construction of, 74, 3.

destination, how expressed, 32, 1.

detached style, when used, p. 188, 3.

dico, use of, 38, 1; 55, note.

dictionaries, use of, p. 156.

dignor, 80, 1.

dignus, 81, 6.

dissimilis, with *gen. or dat.*, 64, note 2.

distributive numerals, 144, 6.

divisions of the as, 153, 1; pound, 153, 2; month, 147; iugerum, 153, 2.

domum, 83, 5; *domi*, 82, 1; *domo*, 83, 5.

donec, 103, 5, 6; 104.

dono, constr. of, 72, 8.

doubting, verbs of, 22, 1.

dum, 103, 5, 6; 104.

dummodo, 104, 6, note.

duration of time, 86, 2.

duty, how expressed, 33, 3; 45, 2; 50, 2.

E.

ecquis, 97, *d.*

efficio ut, 16, 5.

egēo, constr. of, 81, 3, note.

emphasis, p. 176.

end of the book, how expressed, 61, (*e*).

English inf., often expresses a purpose, 110, 3.

English noun, often expressed by *pron.* and *verb*, 38, 5.

equivalent phrases, p. 166, 3.

ethic dative, 68, 5.

etiāmsi, constr. of, 114, 9.

etsi, constr. of, 114, 9.

exclamation, accusative of, 58, note.

exclamation, *inf.* of, 58, 15.

extent, of time and space, 84, 9.

F.

fac ut, 27, 7.

factitive verbs, 40, 9.

fido, constr. of, 81, 5.

fill, verbs signifying to, 80, 2.

final clauses, 12; 13; 109.

first, second, third, 144, 4.

first of the month, 147, 2.

foot of the oak, 61, (*e*).

fore ut, 36, 9.

forget, verbs signifying to, p. 65, 2.

former, latter, 88, 6.

fractions, how expressed, 145, 8, 9.

freedom, from, 74, 4.

fretus, constr. of, 81, 6.

from, with the name of a town, 73, 2; with verbs, 74, 3.

fruo, constr. of, 80, 1.

fungor, constr. of, 80, 1.

future, in Latin for Eng. present, 106, 1, note.

future, 36, 8.

future, in Eng., after verbs of fearing, how expressed in Latin, 18, 1, note.

fut. imper., 27, 8.

fut. part. pass., 142, 9.

future inf. pass., how formed, 41, 3.

future perf., 36, 8; for Eng. pres., 106, 1, note, and 104, 7, note.

fut. subj., *act.* and *pass.*, 36, 10.

futurum fuisse ut, p. 141, 4.

G.

gaudeo, constr. of, 81, 5.

gender, rules for, p. 198.

genitive, of possession, 59, 1; for Eng. adj., 59, note 2; partitive, 60, 3; used with sum, 59, 2; often translated by mark, characteristic, 59, 2 and 158, (h); of quality, 62, 1; subjective, 62, 3; objective, 62, 3; of price, 63, 4; of definition, 63, 5; with adj., 63, 6; with similis, dissimilis, 64, note 2; with verbs, 65; 66.

genitive and acc., after verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, 65, 1.

gerund, 42, 5, 6; often passive, 43, note 1; nom. of gerund, 43, note 2; purpose expressed by, 43, 9; when used, 45, 1.

gerundive, 43, 7; how to change gerund to gerundive, 43, 8; purpose expressed by, 43, 9; when not used, 45, 1.

governing word, often omitted in Indirect Narration, 129, 8.

H.

habeo, with perf. part., 50, 13.

he, she, it, expressed by is, ille, hic, 87, 2.

he came from his home in Italy how expressed, 83, 6.

hendiadys, p. 165, b.

hic, dem. pro., 88, 3, 6.

hic, often used for pers. pron. of 3rd pers., 87, 2.

hindering, constr. of verbs of, 22, 2.

historical inf., 55, 4; pres. indic., 34.

historical tenses, 19, 1.

humī, 82, 1.

I.

iamdūdum, with pres., 34, 3.

iampridem, 34, 3.

idem, use of, 90, 12.

idiomatic, translation, 156, 3; uses of *ut, as*, 118, 6.

idioms, in the use of words, 156; in Latin syntax, 139; in uses of *si*, 141, 5.

Idus (*Ides*), derivation of, 147, 2.

if, introducing an indirect question, 30, 2.

ille, uses of, 87, 2; 88, 5, 6; 89, 7.

imperative future, 27, 8.

imperfect indic., uses of, 35, 4, note.

impersonal verbs, 38, 2, 3; 66, 3; 70, 2; 72, 10.

in, prep., appendix (p. 196); in my house, 84, 7; in the city of Rome, 83, 6.

indigēo, construction of, 81, 3, note.

indignus, construction of, 81, 6.

indirect narration, 127, 1; 131; main verb in inf., 127, 2; pronouns, 128, 3, note and 131, 1, (3); adj. and adv. clauses, 128, 4; 131, 1, (2); tenses of dep. clauses, 128, 4, note 1; imperative of direct=subj. of indirect, 128, 5; 131, 1, (5); rhetorical questions in direct in indic. are in inf. in indirect, 128, 6; 131, 1, (6); other questions are in subj. in indirect, 128, 6.

indirect question, 30; 32.

infinitive, 55, 1; 55, 2; historical, 55, 4; subject of inf., 55, 5; tenses of, 56; of exclamation, 58, 15; in Lat. does not express a purpose, 110, 3; fut. inf. pass., how formed, 41, 3.

inquit, 7, 4.

in spite of, 115, 11.

instead of, 108, note.

instrument, ablative of, 74, 5.

in suspicionem venio, used as the passive of suspicor, 114, 8.

interest, computation of, 154, 5.

interest and refert, constr. of, 66, 4.

interrogative sentences, introduced by -ne, nonne, num, 28; interrog. pronouns and adverbs, 28, 5.

intransitive verbs, how used in passive, 38, 2; 46, 5; 72, 10.

intransitive verbs, compounded with certain preps., become transitive, 39, 7, 8.

ipse, 90, 13; 92, 6.

is, 87, 2.

iste, 88, 4.

it, expressed by *is*, *ea*, *id*, 87, 2.

It is said that *I*, *dicor*, 38, 1.

It is thought that *I*, *putor*, 38, 1.

itur, impersonal, 38, 2.

iubeo, constr. of, 16, 1, note.

iuxta, adverbial in comparative clause, constr. of, 116, 1.

K.

kalendae, 147, 2.

L.

latter, how expressed, 88, 6.

law of sequence of tenses, 19; 20.

leap year, 148, 8.

less than ten years old, how expressed, 86, 4.

levo, constr. of, 74, 3.

libero, constr. of, 74, 3.

licet (conjunction), constr. of, 114, 9.

licet (verb), construction of, 33; 70, 2.

literal translation, a test of Latin, p. 190, 4.

local clauses, 100, 10, 1; 102, 1.

locative case, 82, 1.

M.

means, abl. of, 74, 5.

measures and weights, 153.

memini, with pres. inf., 58, 12; with gen., 65, 2.

metaphor, p. 173.

middle, how transl. in Latin, 60, (e).

mihi in mentem venit, constr. of, 65, 2, note 1.

mille, often used for an indef. number, 145, 7.

minor, constr. of, 72, 9.

minus, indecl. with numerals, 77, 4.

misereor, constr. of, 66, 2, note 2.

miseret, constr. of, 66, 3.

miseror, constr. of, 65, 2.

modal verbs, 18, 3; 18, 4.

months, names of, 147, 3.

more than ten years old, how expressed, 86, 4.

motion along, 84, 8.

motion from, 83, 4.

motion to, 83, 4.

must, how expressed, 33, 4, note 1 and note 2; 45, 4.

N.

names of months, 147, 3.

nature, how expressed, 32, 1.

-ne, use of, 28, 2.

ne, 12, 2 and note.

nedum, p. 203, *g*.

neither... nor; *nec... nec*, or *neque... neque*; but in an *ut*-clause, *neve... neve* (*neu... neu*), 16, 4.

nescio quis, 96, 6, (b).

neu, or *neve*, 13, 6; 16, 4.

nihil, with gen., 60, 3.

nimis, with gen., 60, 3.

nisi forte, 121, 7.

Nones, 147, 2.

non modo—sed ne quidem, p. 202, *d*.

nonne, 28, 3.

non quo, 114, 6.

non quod, 114, 6.

nostrum and nostri, difference, 60, 3, note.

not, in a final clause, how expressed, 12, 2; 16, 3; in a clause of consequence, 11, 4.

notes on tenses, 34.

notwithstanding, 115, 11.
noun or adj., with modal inf., 18, 4.
noun-clauses, 98, 3; 99, 4-7; 100, 8.
num, use of, 28, 4.
number, how expressed, 32, 1.

O.

ob (on account of), prep. with acc., 193, 4.
objective gen., 62, 3.
oblique narration, 4, note 3; virtual, 137. See Indirect Narration.
odio esse, passive of *odi*, 115, 9, note.
of, not sign of gen., 60, 4.
old, how expressed, 86, 4.
one, the, . . . the other, 89, 6, (b).
opus est, constr. of, 81, 4 and note.
or, 29, 6; 16, 4.
oratio obliqua, 4, note 3.
order, rules of, p. 176.
ordinals, 144, 5.
ought, how expressed, 33, 3; 45, 4.
own, 90, 13.

P.

participle, defined and derived, 47, 1, 2.
participle, expresses various relations, 47, 3; 48, note.
participle, often stands for a co-ordinate verb, 48, 4.
participle, present active, 47, 2; gov. gen., 64, note 1; gov. acc., 64, note 1; pres. pass., trans. by rel. clause, 142, 8.
participle, future pass., 142, 9; fut. act., 53.
partitive gen., 60, 3.
parum, with gen., 60, 3.
past part. act., 49, 9.
pello, constr. of, 74, 3.
per, with expression of time, 86, 2, note.
perfect indic., constr. of, 20, note; 35, 5, 6.

perf. inf., after *might*, *could*, *ought*, 33, 5.
perf. part. act., substitutes for, 49, 9; 107, 4.
perfect part. pass., 47, 2, c; 50, 14.
perf. part. pass., with *habeo*, 50, 13.
perinde, 116, 1.
period, the Latin, p. 186.
periphrastic conjugation, 45, 2; 53, 1.
personification, p. 169, 2.
personal pronouns, 87, 1, 2; when expressed, 87, 1.
peto, constr. of, 39, 7, note.
phrases, followed by *quin*, 22, 4.
piget, constr. of, 66, 3.
pity, constr. of verbs of, 65, 2.
plenus, constr. of, 81, 6.
pluperfect indic., 35, 7.
plus, with words of number, 77, 4; distinguished from *magis* and *amplius*, 78, 7, note.
poenitet, constr. of, 66, 3.
posthabeo, constr. of, 72, 9.
postquam, constr. of, 102, 4; supplies place of perf. part. act., 103, 4, note; usually takes perf. indic., 102, 4.
postulo, constr. of, 39, 7, note.
potential subjunctive, 24, 1, c.
potior, constr. of, 80, 1.
praeditus, constr. of, 81, 6.
prepositions, p. 193; with words of time, 85, 1; with noun in *-ing*, p. 193.
pres. part. act., 47, 2; meaning of, 48, 5; equivalent to an abstract noun, 48, 6.
present in Eng. = fut. in Latin, 103, 5, note 2; pres. in Latin = past, in Eng., 103, 5, note 1.
prevent, verbs signifying to, constr. of, 22, 2.
price, how expressed, 63, 4; 63, 4, note; 79, 12.

primary tenses, 19, 1; 20.
priusquam, 104, 7, 8; often separated, 105, note.
probare, constr. of, 72, 9.
pronouns, personal, 87, 1; of third pers., 87, 2.
pronouns, demonstrative, 88, 3; 89; reflexive, 91, 1.
proper names, how rendered, p. 188, 2.
provided that, 125, 4.
provideo, constr. of, 72, 7.
pudet, constr. of, 66, 3.
purpose, with gerund, 43, 9.
purpose, various ways of expressing, 41, 2; 43, 9; 44; 110, 3.
putor, 38, 1.

Q.

qua, difference in qua, quo, ubi, 102, 1.
quaero, constr. of, 39, 7, note.
quality, gen. of, 62, 1; abl. of, 62, 1.
quam, 76, 1; 78, 9.
quam pro, 78, 8.
quamquam, 114, 9; 115, 12.
quamvis, 114, 9.
quantity (or amount), gen. of, 60, 3.
quantum, with gen., 60, 3.
quasi, 118, 4.
question, direct, 28; indirect, 30; 32, 1; in oblique narration, 128, 6.
qui, rel. pronoun, 8, 1; correlative, 10, 1; restrictive, 112, 8; causal, 113, 4, 5; final, 109, 2; consecutive, 110, 5; concessive, 115, 10.
quia, 113, 2.
quidam, 96, 6, note 1.
quidem, 96, 6, note 2.
quilibet, 95, 2.
quin, 111, 7; 22, 1, 3, 4; 23.
quippe qui, 113, 4, note.
quis (any), 94, 1; 28, 5 (interrog.).
quisnam, 97, (e).
quisquam, 95, 3; disting. from ullus, 95, 3.

quisque, 96, 6, c; 93, 7, note.
quivis, 95, 2.
quo, for ut, 12, 3.
quo . . . eo, 118, 5.
quoad, 103, 5, 6.
quod, 99, 6; 113, 2.
quominus, 22, 2.
quoniam, 113, 2.
quum, concessive, 108, 6; causal, 106, 1; 113, 3; temporal, 106, 1; = instead of, 108, note; = although, 108, 6; = quoties, 107, 5; = whenever, 35, 7, and 107, 5.
quum primum, 102, 4.

R.

rather, how transl., 78, 9.
reason, how expressed, 32, 1.
reciprocal pronoun, 93, 9.
refert, constr. of, 66, 4.
reflexive pronoun, 91, 1.
relation, of place, 82; of time, 85.
relative pronoun, use of, 8, 1; not omitted in Lat., 8, 2; agreement with pred., 8, 3; referring to nouns of diff. gender, 8, 4; with verbs of saying, 11, 3; in final clauses, 109, 2; in causal clauses, 113, 4, 5; in concessive clauses, 115, 10.
remember, verbs signifying to, with gen., 65, 2.
remind, verbs signifying to, with gen., 65, 2.
respect, abl. of, 79, 11.
rest, of the troops, how expressed, 61, e.
re-translation, p. 156, 3.
rhetorical character, of Latin, p. 190, 4, c.
rhythm, p. 184, 9.
Roman Calendar, 147; **money**, 150; **weights and measures**, 153.
rure, 73, 2.
ruri, 82, 1.
rus, 83, 5.

S.

satis, with gen., 60, 3.
se, 92, 2; subject of inf., 92, 3; may refer to obj., 92, 4.
second, first, third, 144, 4.
secondary, tenses, 19, 1; sequence, 20, 2.
sentences, classes of, 98.
sescenti, often indef., 145, 7, 8.
sestertia, 150, 3.
sestertius, 150, 1.
she, 87, 2.
should, 45, 4; 33, 3.
si clause, 119; 122; idiomatic uses of 141, 5.
sicut, 117, 3.
similis, with gen. or dat., 64, note 2.
simple sentences, 98, 1.
simul, simul ac., 102, 4.
sin, p. 121, 6.
si non, 120, 3.
sive...sive (seu...seu), 121, 5; 202, b.
so, used with verb, adeo; with an adj. or adv., tam, 15, note.
solvo, constr. of, 74, 3.
space, expressed by acc., 84, 9; abl., 84, 9, note.
special idioms of Latin syntax, 139.
spring from, const., 74, 4.
statuo, when followed by an ut-clause, 16, 5.
strive, verbs signifying to, constr. of, 16, 5.
subject of verb, agreement of, 1.
subjective gen., 62, 3.
subjunctive, in simple sentences, 24, 1; of wish, 24, 1 (a); command, 24, 1 (b); to soften an assertion, 24, 1 (c); deliberation, 24, 1, (d); expressing duty or possibility, 24, 1, (e); in final clauses, 12, 1-4; 13, 5, 6; consecutive clauses,

14, 1-4; 15, 5; with ut-clause after verbs of asking, 16; after verbs of fearing, 17; with verbs of doubting and hindering, 22; with utinam, 25; indirect question, 30; temporal clauses, 102, 3; causal and concessive, 113; comparative, 117, b; conditional, 120; in oblique narration, 128, 4 128, 5; 128, 6; 129, 7; of virtual oblique narration and assimilation, 137.

substitute, for perf. part. act., 49, 9; 107.

superlative, in relative clauses, 9, 7.

supine, in -tum, 41, 1; expressing a purpose, 41, 2; with -iri, forms fut. inf. pass.; in -tu, 42, 4.

suus, uses of, 93, 7.

T.

taedet, constr. of, 66, 3.

tametsi, 114, 9.

tanquam, tanquam si, 118, 4.

tantum abest ut, 15, 5.

tantum, with gen., 60, 3.

temporal clauses, 102, 6.

ten years before, 86, 4.

tenses, classified, 19, 1; notes on, 34; of infinitive, 56; of inf. in indirect narration, 127, 3.

that too, 90, 11.

the...the, 78, 6, note; 118, 5.

time, expressed by abl. abs., 51, 2; when, 85, 1; within, 85, 1; duration of, 86, 2.

to his father at Rhodes, 83, 6.

top of the hill, summus collis, 61, (e).

towns, constr. of the names of, 82, 2; 83, 84.

tu quidem, 89, 7.

two accusatives in act., 39, 6; 40, 9.

two nominatives in pass., 40, 9.

U.

- ubi, quo, quā**, difference, 102, 1.
ubi, constr. of, 102, 2; in final clauses, 109, 2, note.
ullus, after negative, 95, 3, 4; diff. between *quisquam* and *ullus*, 95, 3.
unde, final, 109, 2, note.
unless, *nisi*, 120, 3.
until, 103, 5, 6.
usus est, constr. of, 81, 4.
ut, in noun-clauses, 99, 4; in temporal, 102, 4; final, 12; consecutive, 14; concessive, 114, 9; with verbs of asking, 16, 1; idiomatic uses of, 118, 6.
utinam, 25.
utpote qui, 113, 4, note.
ut primum, 102, 4.
ut quisque, 118, 5, *b*.
utor, constr. of, 80, 1.
utut, 114, 9.
utrum....**an**, 121, 5, note; 29, 6; 30; 121, 5.

V.

- vel**, p. 202, *b*.
velut, velutsi, 118, 4.
ventum est, 38, 2.
verbal nouns, 157, 4.

verbs, gov. gen., 65; dat., 70 and 71; abl., 74, 3; 80, 1-3; 81, 4-5; acc. and gen., 65, 1, 2; acc. and dat., 71, 4; two datives, 69, 8.

very, 78, 9.

vescor, constr. of, 80, 1.

vestrum and **vestri**, distinguished, see 60, 3, note.

veto, with inf., 16, 1, note.

videor, 55, 5, note.

virtual oblique narration, 137.

W.

want, adjs. of, 74, 4; verbs of, 80, 3.

weights and measures (Roman), 153.

what, 10, 10; relating to a whole sentence, *quæ res, id quod*, 9, 9.

whatever, 115, 11.

whether, in indirect question, 30, 2.

whether....**or**, 29, 6; 121, 5.

while, 103, 5.

without, how translated, 139.

who . . . **not**=**but**, 11, 4.

Y.

Yes, how expressed, 28, 2.

PART II.

EXERCISES ON CAESAR, LIVY, AND CICERO.

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.

PART II.

EXERCISES ON CAESAR.

EXERCISE I.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 1 and 2*).

This nation (*hi*) surpasses all its neighbors in courage and love of fighting; and, considering their population and military strength (*copiae*) they carry on very many wars. They are brave because they have never imported those luxuries¹ which tend to effeminate (170, 6); and hence they are able not only to repel an enemy² but as aggressors³ to invade others. They are of the opinion (*vbi.*) that, considering their courage and military reputation, their territory is too confined (78, 9); and this is an abundant source of dissatisfaction to them.

¹*vae res.*; p. 161, 2. ²*hostes suis finibus* (p. 74, 3) *prohibere.* ³*bellum prius finibus* (dat.; p. 71, 4) *aliorum inferre.*

EXERCISE II.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 3 and 4*).

Urged by these considerations (161, 2), he resolved to seize upon the supreme power. He had already held the highest political office for many years in his own country; he was extremely popular (*superl.*) with the lower orders; and there is no doubt that¹ he had very considerable influence among neighboring states. If he had been able to win the army to his support (use *se*), he would have accomplished his object²; but notice of his design was laid before the magistrates, and the guilty wretch³ was condemned⁴ to be burned to death.

¹p. 22, 1. p. 120, 2; 32, 1. ²use pron.; p. 187, 1, end. ⁴say "to condemn a person to the punishment that," *aliquem in poenas condemnare ut....*

EXERCISE III.

(Based on Caes., *De Bell. Gall.*, B. I., cc. 1-4; review exercise, to be done without the book).

These people are very far removed from the culture and civilization of other lands; but they are little resorted to by merchants, who would have imported among them many luxuries¹ which might make them effeminate. As it is (*nunc*), they are pre-eminent for courage and are incessantly engaged in wars, either offensive or defensive. Their territory, as judged by their population,² is small, and they have resolved³ to abandon it with all their forces and to attempt to get possession of the country which lies to the northwest. This design (they declare) will be easily accomplished, because they are superior to their neighbors in courage and military strength.⁴

¹res (161, 2). ²pro numero hominum. ³p. 17, 5, note. ⁴p. 7, 4.

EXERCISE IV.

(Based on Caes., *De Bell. Gall.*, B. I., cc. 5 and 6).

They had formed the resolve¹ of quitting their country, and they now proceeded to prosecute their design. The neighboring towns were induced² to co-operate in the plan and join them.³ These were persuaded to set fire to their private buildings, in order that all hope of returning might be banished for ever and their minds steeled (173, 3) to face⁴ every danger that might confront⁵ them. A general⁶ rendezvous was appointed on the banks of the Rhone, and there, on March 20th,⁷ the gathering took place.

¹p. 157, (c) and 17, 5, note. ²p. 38, 3. ³p. 16, 1. ⁴ad. ⁵170, 8. ⁶say all were ordered to come together to, &c. ⁷p. 148, 5.

EXERCISE V.

(Based on Caes., *De Bell. Gall.*, B. I., cc. 7 and 8).

His answer to the embassy was as follows (use *hic*): "You ask¹ me for permission² to pass through our province, and you assure³ me that, while upon your march, you will abstain from acts

of hostility against our people.⁴ That permission I cannot grant in accordance with the established practice of this country (say *Rome*⁵); nor can I think that people as ill-affected towards us as you are (p. 3, 8, note), will abstain from outrages upon us when opportunity offers.⁶ You will never attempt a passage with my consent; and if you do, I will prevent you, if I can. Desist, therefore, from your undertaking,⁷ and return to your own people."

¹p. 16, 1. ²use *licet* (p. 33, 1; 70, 2). ³p. 6, 1. ⁴p. 62, 3. ⁵p. 162, 4. ⁶abl. abs. ⁷p. 74, 3.

EXERCISE VI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 5-8; review exercise, to be done without the book.*)

This resolution once taken,¹ there were two routes by which² they could leave their country. The first (170, 8) lay across the river; the second, between the river and the mountain. The first was the easier, because³ the river is fordable; the second rather difficult,⁴ because the mountain overhangs the river so close that a mere handful of men (*perpauci*) could hold the pass against them. But the first led them through our province and they were obliged to obtain permission from us before they attempted to march through our territory (104, 7). Accordingly they sent an embassy to us to represent (use *say*) that they intended to quit (53, 1) their home and country, and that, with our leave, they would cross the river and march through our province. We must now decide (they said⁵) whether this permission could be granted or not.

¹p. 157, c and 48, 7. ²p. 74, 5. ³p. 113, 2. ⁴p. 78, 9. ⁵p. 138, 4.

EXERCISE VII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 9-12.*)

Thanks (173, 3) to the lavish expenditure¹ of money, he had great influence among many of the neighboring states, and he had bound them to his interest by many favors. In this he was led on by lust of supreme power, and was aiming at effecting a political revolution among them. But word of his intention (32, 1) was brought to us by the natives (use *barbari* or a proper noun) who represented that it would be attended with no small peril to

our province if we allowed (131, 1, 2) their towns to be sacked and their children to be enslaved before our eyes. Moved by these remonstrances (161, 2), we saw and decided that action should not be deferred² until (104, 6) so signal a calamity should be inflicted upon us; but that we ought to lead out² our army and avenge the wrongs done to allies³ who had always deserved well at our hands (173, 3).

¹p. 157, c; 74, 5. ²p. 45, 2. ³p. 62, 3.

EXERCISE VIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 9-12*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Urged by these considerations, they sent ambassadors to us with a request¹ for aid.² Their towns had been taken by storm; their lands had been ravaged with the sword; and there was no possibility³ of their escaping death themselves, unless we came to their assistance.⁴ They had always (they said⁵) been well-affected towards us, and had rendered us important service; and they should not on that account, before the eyes of our army, suffer punishment at the hands of our enemies. They begged us to undertake² the business, lead forth our army, and avenge their wrongs.

¹p. 157, c and 109, 2. ²p. 16, 1. ³say *nec fieri poterat ut.* ⁴69, 8. ⁵p. 138, 4.

EXERCISE IX.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 13-16*).

Heaven (173, 3) occasionally concedes impunity and prosperity to men, even when it is meditating vengeance.¹ When the vengeance falls, the suffering inflicted is all the greater.² This, people often forget and they boast that they can inflict injury² with impunity. Such is the case now. Our enemies wonder that Heaven is not more indignant at the wrongs they have committed, and they promise themselves that they have no cause for fear (45, 4). They are annoying us and oppressing our allies, who are unable to prevent them from plundering and wasting their territories (22, 2). But do not forget that Heaven will exact vengeance² proportionate to their crimes, and that they will learn, by a sad³ reversal of their fortunes, that God is not to be mocked (*decipio*).

¹p. 54, 2 and 157, c. ²157, c. ³omit, as being implied; 187, 1.

EXERCISE X.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 13-16*; review exercise to be done without the book).

He saw that we would have to come up¹ with the enemy at once (*statim*). So, throwing (p. 49, 10) a bridge across the river—a work² of the greatest difficulty³—he led all the forces over. Next day he sent out a body of cavalry to discover⁴ the direction⁵ the enemy had taken; and it was soon ascertained that, in dismay at our sudden approach, they had suddenly, upon (use *quum*) our crossing the river, decamped. After a pursuit⁶ of about fifteen days, we came up with them at last (*demum*), and delivered an attack upon their rear. But the ground was unfavorable, and boldly facing us, they repulsed our attack without difficulty.⁷

¹p. 45, 2. ²p. 9, 9. ³p. 62, 1. ⁴p. 109, 2. ⁵p. 32, 1; 157, 4, (a).
⁶p. 102, 4, note. ⁷say *easily*.

EXERCISE XI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 16-18*).

There is no doubt that,¹ if Rome² triumphs, she will rob us also of our liberty. We shall not be able to restrain her. Our commons, therefore, hate those who favor her and favor those who hate her. They complain bitterly that their own chiefs have played them false in this matter (173, 3); they complain that they should be collecting corn and maintaining cavalry for men who will soon have power of life and death over them. Many among us have a revolutionary tendency, and these have more influence with the lower orders than the magistrates themselves. With a view to maintaining this influence, they have amassed a large amount of property to spend in bribery; and, owing to their generosity, they enjoy great popularity with the people.

¹p. 22, 1. ²p. 162, 4.

EXERCISE XII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 16-18*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Now that the council is dismissed¹—for I did not wish to have this matter canvassed in the presence of so many witnesses (*abl.*

abs.)—I will declare boldly in your ear alone what I have so long buried in silence. All that² goes on (173, 3) in this camp is betrayed to the enemy; the common people accuse their magistrates of diminishing³ the power of the state and of favoring Rome; and none of our chiefs dare to supply you with the corn which they promised. They are putting us off day after day, pretending⁴ that the corn is being collected, nay (*atque*; 201, *a*), that it is just⁵ at hand. Meanwhile, the day when you engaged to distribute provisions to the troops is drawing on apace, and what to do (24, *c*; 30, 1) we know not. But if you make inquiry, you will find that this story (*res*) is literally⁵ true.

¹use *quum*, 106, 2. ²p. 30, 1; 32, 1; ³p. 99, 6. ⁴use *dictito*; 173, 3. ⁵p. 177, 4, note.

EXERCISE XIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 19-22*).

If any misfortune happens¹ my brother,² every one will feel that I have been a consenting party, and we shall estrange all his friends in consequence. His influence is very great indeed, while mine is very small. Avoid, therefore, I beseech you³, taking severe measures against him; pardon him⁴ what is past, out of consideration for me; warn him that you disapprove of his conduct, and set a watch upon him to ascertain⁵ what measures he takes.⁶ To this advice I am determined not only by (*propter*) my friendship for you but also by my regard for public opinion.⁷ Do not⁸ shock men's minds by ordering a brother to punish a brother; do not order a friend, whose zeal and honor you have long tried, to put less confidence in you than he has been in the habit of doing.

¹p. 120, 2. ²p. 70, 2. ³p. 138, 4; 16, 1. ⁴p. 71, 6. ⁵p. 12, 1. ⁶p. 30, 1, and 32, 1. ⁷p. 62, 3. ⁸p. 24, 1 (*b*), note, and p. 26, 3.

EXERCISE XIV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 19-22*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Learning these facts,¹ we sent forward the horse to reconnoitre³ the mountain, and word was brought that the enemy had taken up their position right under it. From inquiries made from some prisoners,³ too, this report (161, 2) was found to be correct. The general,

therefore, summoned into his presence a member of staff (*legatus*) in whom⁴ he reposed perfect confidence and who was reputed to have an extensive acquaintance (*adj.*) with the art of war. To him he explained that it was his intention to seize⁴ the top of the hill with two legions and with these legions and his own army to make a simultaneous attack (157, *c*) from all sides upon the enemy. At daybreak, however, word was brought that the enemy had been seized with a panic and had decamped.

p. 48, 7. ²p. 109, 2, 3. ³p. 157, *c*. ⁴dat. ⁵p. 53, 1.

EXERCISE XV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 23-26*).

After collecting the baggage into a single place and fortifying it (53, 6), he drew up his forces in three lines and then delivered his attack. The battle raged (157, *b*) from noon until far into the night, and no one¹ saw the back of an enemy. The horse, which had been thrown forward to bear² the brunt of the attack, after suffering severely, were driven in. But the infantry at once advanced, and, after hurling their pikes from above,³ drew their swords and cut their way through the enemy's line. The enemy in their turn now began to give ground and retreated, some of them to their baggage, others to the nearest hill. At each of these points the battle was renewed, but, after a long struggle, the enemy's camp was carried and they changed their line of march and withdrew from the scene.⁴

¹p. 95, 3, note. ²p. 110, 3. ³p. 48, 7. ⁴say *place*; 173, 3.

EXERCISE XVI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 23-26*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Observing¹ that we had changed our line of march, the enemy ascribed our action to fear and started in pursuit. When they came up, they began to harass our rear, flattering themselves (say *because they thought*) that they could cut off² our supplies. We faced about and received their attack and they immediately began to give ground, and at last (*postremo*) withdrew to a neighboring

hill, taking up a position³ upon the top of a ridge. There we surrounded and attacked them.⁴ A long and fierce engagement took place;⁵ but, in spite of⁶ the shower of pikes which they poured upon us from the higher ground, we carried the hill and captured their camp.

¹p. 49, 10. ²p. 74, 3. ³use finite vb. ⁴p. 48, 4. ⁵p. 157 (top).
⁶p. 52, 5; 115, 11.

EXERCISE XVII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 27-30*).

To these, at our request,¹ they gave lands and equal liberty and equal rights with the natives; but all the rest were ordered² to give hostages and return to their homes. The burnt towns and villages they soon after restored; the corn which, under the pressure of extreme necessity, they had begged from us in such suppliant terms, was sent them. So the war ended; the aggressors³ were severely punished; those who were aiming at sovereignty had to give⁵ up their arms; those who thought to make other states tributary, had themselves to give hostages; and satisfaction was obtained for wrongs of long standing which had been heaped upon this nation. The submission of those who complied with the order to surrender their arms; all the rest were treated as⁵ belligerents.

¹p. 48, 7. ²p. 168, 1. ³p. 159, (*k*). ⁴p. 45, 4. ⁵use prep. *pro*.

EXERCISE XVIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 27-30*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Having ascertained these facts,¹ our leader sent ambassadors to them to treat² for peace. These represented to the enemy that he had taken this step because³ he saw that it was for the good⁴ of the country to end the war. That he would retire, if they would give hostages and return to the homes and lands they had left (135, 2, 2). That he wished to congratulate them upon the conspicuous valor they had shown in the war, and to say that he had no desire to punish their states. Such were the representations made by the ambassadors, who then immediately quitted the enemy's camp.

A day was afterwards fixed for a general meeting. The submission of the enemy was accepted; they returned to their burnt towns and villages and we immediately withdrew from the country which they had invaded.

¹p. 48, 7. ²p. 44, note. ³p. 113, 2. ⁴p. 69, 8.

EXERCISE XIX.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 31 and 32*).

The reign of this monarch was stained¹ by the grossest cruelty. He took the children of all the noblest in the land as² hostages. Tears could not protect them from outrage; in his presence (52, 4) they sat silent, in the deepest melancholy, with bowed heads and eyes fixed upon the ground. At times (*interdum*) he actually went so far as to put them to the torture, and his tyranny seemed to be almost intolerable. Everything must be done³ at his nod and beck. Many sought aid in flight and emigrated to other lands; but from this relief he attempted to deter them by the severest punishments; and, if their intention (53, 1) to quit the country was betrayed to him, their condition was more terrible than before. They would have gone and asked assistance from our parliament; but he had bound all the nobles by oath not to ask⁴ assistance from any one; and his own influence with us at that time was very considerable.

¹p. 173, 3. ²p. 2, 6. ³p. 45, 2. ⁴p. 12, 2.

EXERCISE XX.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 31 and 32; review exercise, to be done without the book*).

At this assembly he made the following remarks (157, c): "We have lost by our defeat all our nobility; we have given hostages; we have bound ourselves by oath to supply the victors with lands for settlement. They can not possibly be induced¹ not to ask more. Those who have settled here will become enamored of our mode of living and of the resources of our country—and these² are not to be mentioned in comparison with their own—and they will summon others to cross the river and settle by their side. Shall³ we, who

have already been vanquished two or three times in the field, whose spirits are broken by misfortune, be able to deter them from crossing⁴ or refuse perpetual submission to their dominion? We must do—I doubt not⁵—what others have done; we must leave the country, while the opportunity offers (*abl. abs.*)."

¹say *nor can it be persuaded to them.* ²use relative. ³p. 24, 1 (d). ⁴p. 22, 2. ⁵p. 138, 4, and 22, 1.

EXERCISE XXI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 33-37*).

It would have been a menace to the safety¹ of the Roman Empire if large bands of Germans had crossed the Rhine and settled in Gaul. They were almost invincible in the field, highly trained in the exercise of arms, and so uncivilized that they had not slept under a roof for fourteen years together; they would soon have taken possession of the whole country and made it tributary. An invasion (use *vb.*) of the Roman province would soon have followed and a hasty march into Italy itself. The Roman Senate had previously passed a decree² ordering the Governor of Gaul, for the time being, to defend the allies of Rome in Gaul from outrage. It was felt to be a dishonor to the empire, and not very advantageous either, to wink at their wrongs. It was the universal³ opinion that the Germans would reach an intolerable pitch of presumption.

¹say *it would have been dangerous to.* ²p. 16, 5. ³use *omnes*, and a verb.

EXERCISE XXII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 33-37*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

The answer given to this request¹ was as follows: "If I had wanted you, I would have come to you (120,2); if you want me, you must come to me (24, 2, 3). I would not venture to come to you without an army; and I can not collect an army without great difficulty." To this we sent the following answer: "You have received considerable kindness at the hands of the Roman people; is this the requital you make? We invite you to a conference to discuss

matters of the highest moment to the country ; you decline and think that you have nothing to learn. These, then, are the particulars (p. 161, 1) we require of you (p. 8, 2) : In the first place, not² to harass our allies with your bands ; in the second place, not to occupy any more land ; in the third place (*tum*), to restore all your hostages ; and in the last place (*postremo*), not to hamper us in the exercise of our just rights. If you refuse these demands, you must try the fortune of war.

¹p. 48, 6. ²p. 16, 1.

EXERCISE XXIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 38-41*).

Here a sudden panic completely demoralized the army. It originated¹ in the following manner : Certain parties who had followed us from the capital out of friendship for some of the officers, and with no great experience of campaigning, begged permission to leave² the camp. Different reasons were alleged. They were afraid, they said (138, 4), of the enemy whom we were soon to engage ; we had never made trial of them in battle before. They had ascertained from our merchants that they were men of giant stature, and of inconceivable eagerness for war. Their scowling faces and fierce glances were enough to daunt³ any foe. They confined themselves to their camp in the swamps for a long time without giving any one a chance at them (139, 1) ; and then, making a sudden onslaught (49, 10), they routed their adversaries not more by courage than by admirably-devised strategy.⁴ Between us and them intervened narrow defiles and far-stretching forests through which provisions could not conveniently be carried ; and the men would mutiny and refuse to advance.

¹use *orior*. ²p. 16, 1. ³omit the adjs., as implied (187, 1). ⁴by *reason and policy* (165, b).

EXERCISE XXIV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 38-41* ; review exercise, to be done without the book).

On receiving this intelligence,¹ our veteran² commander was a good deal disturbed. He saw that immediate action must be taken

and at once summoned a council of his officers, admitting to it both captains of foot and captains of horse. When all had entered his tent, he rebuked them sharply in these words: "I am afraid that some of you have wandered from the line of your duty³ and are guilty of gross presumption (use *arroganter facere*) when you dictate to your general. I will take charge of those concerns which cause you so much doubt. Every preparation has been made. A supply of corn has been obtained. To-morrow night I will break up camp and begin the march. I wish to see, as quickly as possible, if⁴ cowardice or a sense of duty will weigh with you most." The delivery of this speech was followed by a remarkable change in the hearers. They thanked the general for the confidence he reposed⁵ in them; they declared that they had never felt any doubt as to his doing his duty; and they begged him to accept their apologies for the cowardice they had shown.

¹p. 48, 7. ²p. 169, 4. ³omit *line*. ⁴p. 30, 2. ⁵use *quod*.

EXERCISE XXV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 42-47*.)

At about equal distances from the two¹ camps there was a level plain of considerable length, in the midst of which stood a rising knoll of ground. This was the scene of the meeting between the Roman and German leaders. A body of ten² picked horsemen was in attendance upon each general and two larger bodies of horse were stationed at a distance of two hundred yards. The interview was held on horseback and the matters in debate³ between the two nations were discussed at length. But while the conference was in progress, word was brought that the German horse were approaching the knoll and using their lances upon the Romans. The Roman leader had perfect confidence in his men, because, in fear of treachery, he had mounted certain private soldiers of the tenth legion on horseback and knew that an engagement might be hazarded without risk. Still, he gave the order to retreat, for fear that—in case of the enemy's defeat—he might be charged with having betrayed them. So the conference ended.

¹p. 145, (c). ²p. 144, 6, (a). ³p. 169, 3.

EXERCISE XXVI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 42-47*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Learning of our arrival, he sent envoys to make¹ the following representations on his behalf: "I have crossed the river (he said)² not of my own motion but at the request of this nation. They have assigned me a settlement and given hostages of their own free will. If I have demanded tribute, it is only what the victor usually demands of the vanquished.³ Your friendship should be an honor and protection to me instead of⁴ an injury. If I bring over a large following, it is in self-defence (157, c) and not with the intention of acting on the offensive. I am not invading; I am defending. I was the first-comer; why, then, are you encroaching on my territory? I shall not desist from this enterprise. I have defeated these men; and, if you wish to bring the matter to an issue, I can defeat you."

¹p. 109, 2. ²p. 7, 4, note. ³p. 166, d. ⁴use *non*.

EXERCISE XXVII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 47-54*).

At a given signal (52, 6), therefore, our whole front line advanced at a run to attack the enemy's left; this was the point at which¹ he showed the least strength. But such was the suddenness and rapidity of his advance (*vb.*) that there was no possibility of our using our pikes. It was simply (177, 4, note) a hand to hand engagement and contested with the utmost desperation on both sides. The enemy's left was beaten and completely routed; but his right—owing to² their numerical superiority—pressed us hard, and it was not till the third line was advanced to our relief³ that he gave way. The rout then became general and the flight was uninterrupted until the river was reached. Over this a small number swam; a few more crossed in boats; the remainder were cut down by the swords of our cavalry.

¹use *ubi*. ²use *quod*; 113, 2. ³p. 105, 8, note; 69, 8.

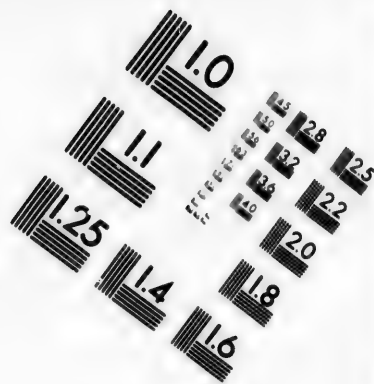
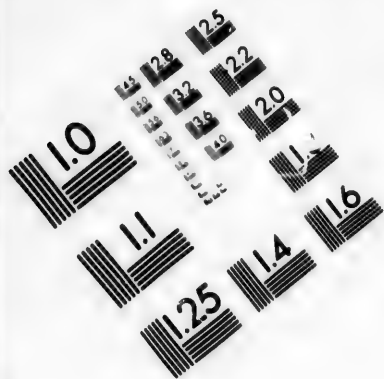
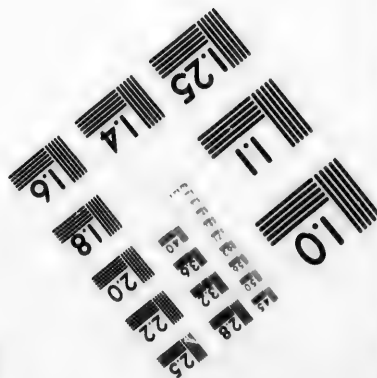
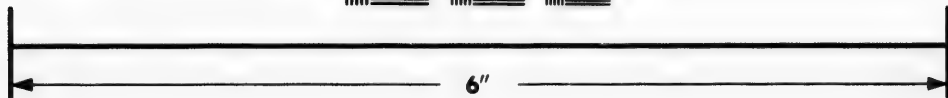
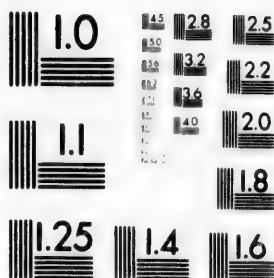


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

18 20 22 25
28 32 36 40

10
11

EXERCISE XXVIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 47-54*).

On the same day at sunset some of our cavalry, in pursuit (*vb.*) of the German horse, fell in accidentally¹ with the general's friend, who had been taken prisoner by the enemy—a rescue (161, 2) which caused us as much satisfaction as did the victory itself. In the presence of all (52, 4), he told the story of his escape from death (32, 1). When the party in charge of him observed that their army was in full flight, they dragged him away—ironed as he was—from the field; and they did not pause in their flight until intercepted by our cavalry (105, 8, note). His life had been spared² in the first instance by the kindness of fortune. Three times had his captors (159, *k*) cast lots to determine whether³ he should be burned at the stake or granted a reprieve; and three times had he found deliverance (157, *c*) by the favor of the lot.

¹say *it happened that*; p. 166, *d*. ²p. 72, 10. ³p. 30, 2.

EXERCISE XXIX.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 47-54*).

For five successive days (86, 2, note) the German leader kept his army in the camp under the hill, and refused to fight. The reason was this: The Germans, in accordance with their custom, had consulted their women as to whether¹ it was to their advantage to engage the enemy or not. The answer came (157, *c*) that it was not the divine will that their army should win, if it engaged before the new moon (135, 2, note 1). On the sixth day, however, our general drew up his troops in three lines in the face of the enemy, and then, and not till then—when there was no escape—the reluctant chief² moved out his army from the camp.

¹p. 30, 2. ²p. 187, 1, end.

EXERCISE XXX.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. I., cc. 47-54*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

He commissioned the envoy to take the following message to the King: "You have received from our government the most munificent gifts and the style and title of king; but your coming here

with such a large following must lead us¹ to suspect that your purpose is to invade (54, 2) our territory and crush us. Retire, therefore, from this country. Withdraw your army and do not allow it hereafter to cross the river. Restore these people their hostages and, in return for our many good offices to you, treat them as² friends and not as enemies. What do you mean? It is not our way to abandon our allies, and I do not think that we shall allow them to pay tribute to you. They have lent assistance to us in times gone by and they may now avail themselves of our assistance, if they will."

¹use *quod* (158, f). ²use *pro*.

EXERCISE XXXI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. II., cc. 1-5*).

After an earnest exhortation,¹ he dismissed the envoys. He had learned the following² particulars from them: That their neighbors, who possessed³ great influence and great military strength, were forming a confederacy (157, c) against Rome,⁴ partly because they were⁵ of a fickle and changeable disposition, partly because they were indignant⁶ at the sight of a Roman army wintering within their borders; that they were hiring troops, mustering their bands and drawing their forces to a general rendezvous; and that even their own kinsmen had joined the league. He saw therefore that it was no time for hesitation; and that, unless he could divide the enemies' forces,¹ he would have to engage them in overwhelming numbers (173, 3).⁵ The necessary supplies were soon collected, the camp was struck, and in fifteen days he was in their territory. Summer had just commenced and there was an abundant supply of forage in the fields—a fact of the utmost importance to the general safety.⁶

¹use vb.; p. 49, 8. ²p. 88, 3. ³p. 128, 4. ⁴p. 16, 4. ⁵p. 5, 2; 124, b; 131, 2. ⁶p. 66, 4.

EXERCISE XXXII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell., Gall., B. II., cc. 1-5*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

They conferred upon the King himself the supreme command and promised¹ to raise him a levy of one hundred thousand men. This could easily be effected if all the states supplied the quota each

had engaged to send (8, 2). Scarcely was² the muster complete, when the King made all haste to lead his army over the river; and he pitched his camp upon the extreme confines of his kingdom. He said that it was of the utmost consequence³ to all that the forces of the enemy should be kept apart⁴ and that he himself should not be reduced to the necessity (*vib.*) of engaging at one time such a powerful force. He therefore ordered one of his kinsmen—a man who by reason of his courage enjoyed great influence with him—to lay⁵ waste the enemies' land, drive out the inhabitants and prevent them from fortifying a camp—a thing⁶ which the uniform tenor⁷ of the rumors showed they intended to do (53, 1).

¹ p. 7, 3. ² p. 102, 4. ³ 66, 4. ⁴ inf.; p. 4 (examples). ⁵ p. 16, 1. ⁶ p. 9, 9. ⁷ say *all*; 173, 3.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. II., cc. 6-10*).

Upon this town they immediately began¹ a furious assault,² with the intention of carrying it³ by storm—if they possibly could—and putting all the inhabitants to the sword.³ They had already devastated the surrounding country; supplies had begun to fail the defenders,⁴ and the enemy had some hope,⁵ by a short delay, of winning⁶ the place. Their numbers were very great and, when they had surrounded the town, their encampment—as indicated by the smoke of their camp-fires,—was eight miles⁷ broad. They began the assault (157, *c*) with a shower of stones and spears⁸ directed against the wall, which was soon stripped of defenders; then, locking their bucklers, they advanced to the rampart and endeavored to undermine it. Night at last put an end to the assault, but it was with the greatest difficulty that the town held out against it. Next day the enemy departed and hastened with all their forces to the river.

¹ p. 142, 6. ² p. 157, 4 (*c*). ³ p. 53, 1. ⁴ 70, 1. ⁵ 68, 3. ⁶ p. 7, 3, note. ⁷ p. 84, 9. ⁸ p. 50, 14; 173, 3.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. II., cc. 6-10*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Our lines were drawn up on a hill where there was just room enough for the army to take up its position (157, *c*). On each side of

the hill was a ditch, and a fort was built at the end of each ditch. The intention of these last was to guard¹ against our being surrounded. Between our camp and the enemy lay a marsh of inconsiderable extent and we waited under arms to see if² they would attempt to pass it, intending, if they did so, to attack³ them on ground so unfavorable for forming⁴ an order of battle. Meanwhile the king resolved to test at once the military efficiency of the enemy and the confidence of his own troops. Accordingly, he led all his horse across the marsh and drew them up before the enemy's camp. Seeing this,⁵ the enemy also drew out his forces and a sharp engagement ensued.⁶ But they soon found that they were inferior to us and led their forces back to camp.

¹p. 12, 2, note. ²p. 141, 5. ³p. 53, 1. ⁴p. 69, 9, note 2.
⁵p. 49, 10. ⁶p. 157, 4, (b).

EXERCISE XXXV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. II., cc. 11-15*).

Word of their departure was brought¹ the King by² scouts, but he refused to stir that day from his trenches. Next day, at the first streak of dawn, he sent out the cavalry to ascertain³ the motive⁴ of the enemy's departure and to harass⁵ the rear of the fugitives. This was done and a considerable slaughter was made as long as daylight lasted. At sunset, in accordance with their instructions, they returned to the camp. Meantime siege-engines were being collected and we were determined to take some of their towns by storm. But these, thoroughly alarmed by the speed of our movements, next night sent envoys to us to state⁶ that they were willing to surrender their arms and give hostages. They inveighed bitterly against the ring-leaders of the conspiracy who, seeing (A. 10) what utter ruin they had brought upon themselves and their friends,⁴ had fled the country. They begged the King to show⁵ his usual (use *soleo*) humanity and not reduce them to servitude.

¹p. 157, c. ²p. 74, 5, note 1. ³109, 2. ⁴p. 32, 1. ⁵p. 16, 1.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. II., cc. 11-15*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Next night, in order to prevent¹ them from recovering their presence of mind, we followed them up² and fell upon them as they were pitching³ their camp. They stood their ground and bravely received our attack. Thereupon it was resolved to carry⁴ their camp by storm. So a mound was raised, towers planted, and all the engines useful for a siege were prepared. When all was ready,⁵ the enemy, now in the greatest alarm, sent forth from the camp all their old men and all their women and children, to beg that they might be spared⁶ and their submission accepted. Issuing from the camp (49, 10), they spread out their hands and begged for peace. One of their number acted as spokesman, speaking as follows: "We cannot contend with the armies of Rome;⁷ our hearts are weak before them and our courage is unstrung. We have heard of your honor and humanity; do not put to the edge of the sword those who plead for quarter."

¹p. 17, 2, note. ²p. 48, 4. ³47, 3. ⁴p. 17, 5, note. ⁵p. 107, 3. ⁶p. 72, 10. ⁷p. 162, 4.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. II., cc. 16-20*).

The order of march on this occasion—and the usual one when the enemy was known to be approaching—was as follows:¹ The cavalry were in advance;² then followed the infantry who had knowledge and experience of the art³ of war; then came all the baggage; while the recent levies closed the column. We had ascertained from our prisoners that the enemy had taken up their position on the other side of the river, at a distance of not more⁴ than ten miles; and there a few pickets of their cavalry could be seen. Whatever⁵ military strength⁶ these people have, is in their infantry. Their policy⁷ is to rush with all possible speed⁸ upon an enemy and charge him before he is aware of their approach; and they can advance with almost incredible rapidity, so that they seem, at the same moment nearly, to be a mile away and upon an enemy's hands. They are easily repelled, however, and easily thrown into confusion;

and, when they have once retired, they do not advance again with the same speed.

¹ use *hic*. ² use *praemitto*. ³ *res* (p. 161, 2). ⁴ p. 77, 4; 84, 9.
⁵ use *quidquid*. ⁶ p. 60, 3. ⁷ use *consilium*. ⁸ p. 78, 9, note; use adv.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. II., cc. 16-20; review exercise, to be done without the book*).

Our cavalry had been sent ahead and had already crossed the river. The enemy kept to the woods, but a few pickets of their horse had been stationed along the bank.¹ These at once withdrew, the moment² our signal for advancing³ was given. Scouts were then thrown forward to pitch⁴ upon a suitable place for a camp, and these were followed by the main body in order of battle. As soon as⁵ we had reached the hill which had been chosen for our encampment, the enemy delivered his attack, advancing (*co-ord. vb.*) up-hill to the charge with inconceivable rapidity.⁶ In this emergency, the knowledge and experience of our army stood them in good stead.⁶ They had had an excellent training in the battles of the past and they knew their duty as well as⁷ their commanders. These latter, again, had—owing to the proximity of the enemy—to give directions on their own responsibility.

¹ use *in* with abl. ² p. 102, 4. ³ p. 42, 6. ⁴ p. 110, 3. ⁵ p. 74, 5.
⁶ use *subsidium*; p. 69, 8. ⁷ use *aque ac* (p. 116, 1).

EXERCISE XXXIX.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. II., cc. 21-25*).

Our camp was exposed in front¹ and on the left¹ and, through this gap, the enemy did not hesitate to advance and renew the fight. The camp-servants, to whose charge the camp had been committed, were surrounded and scattered (48, 4). The cavalry, which—as already related (138, 4)—had pursued the enemy's horse to the river, on looking behind them (use *quum*), saw the enemy swarming² in our camp, which was now all but in their possession. They at once began a retreat to the camp, where they found matters reduced to the last straits, and almost despaired of the day.³ The

standard was lost, the standard-bearer had been cut down, most of the officers were either killed or wounded, and the troops were so huddled together that they prevented each other from using¹ their swords. By the arrival of the horse, new hope was infused into our troops and, facing about, they advanced upon the enemy from the lower ground. These in their turn now began to give way and were driven back to the bank of the river where our attack was checked.

¹ p. 195 (under *a* or *ab*). ² p. 173, 3. ³ p. 22, 2.

EXERCISE XL.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. II., cc. 21-25*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

After making the necessary dispositions,¹ our leader proceeded to (*omit*) encourage his troops, speaking² as follows: "The proximity (159, *j*) of the enemy, soldiers, will prevent me from³ using many words. Show⁴ the courage you have shown in the past and you will soon be pursuing them across the river. Their battle is drawn up on disadvantageous ground; hold out against their first attack and they will be unable to withstand you; keep cool; all exigencies have been provided against; remember that each man will fight under his general's eye." After this exhortation, he gave the signal to engage. Seeing (49, 10) us in motion, the enemy advanced upon us at full speed and in such close order that they could not use their swords. When they came to close quarters, they were out of breath and did not long maintain their ground, but began to retire upon their camp. To this we followed them only (use *ita ut*; 142, 7, *a*), upon our arrival, to see them fly from it with the utmost precipitation.⁵

¹ p. 157, *c*; 48, 7. ² use co-ord. vb.; the pres. part. is often used in Eng., where a co-ord. vb. is required in Lat.; p. 48, 5. ³ p. 22, 2. ⁴ p. 24, (*b*), note. ⁵ use adv.; p. 78, 9, note.

EXERCISE XLI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. III., cc. 1-3*).

On receipt (52, 5) of this news, he determined to winter¹ in the village which he began² now to fortify. The village was situated in a small valley, surrounded by hills, and was divided into two parts

by the river. The higher levels of the hills,³ which overhung the valley, were still held by the natives. Several reasons had induced them to renew the war.⁴ In the first place, they were of the opinion that the village could not hold out against their attack; in the second place, they had been informed that no sufficient provision⁵ had been made by us with regard to supplies; and there was the additional reason⁶ that we wished to deprive them of the taxes which the merchants paid (*pendo*) who were in the habit⁷ of travelling through their valley. They had therefore formed the design of crushing us.

¹ p. 17, 5, note. ² p. 142, 6. ³ use *superiora loca*. ⁴ say *several reasons were to them of renewing the war*. ⁵ p. 38, 2, note; 157, 4, (b). ⁶ p. 100, 7. ⁷ use *consuesco*.

EXERCISE XLII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. III., cc. 4-6*).

The battle had now raged (38, 2) for six hours without intermission. More than one-third¹ of our number had fallen; several of the officers were disabled by their wounds; and ammunition² was beginning to run short. Our only hope of safety depended on a sudden sally from the camp. During a brief space, we stood upon the defensive to allow us time to recover from our exertions; then, at a given signal (51, 2), we sallied forth, surrounded the enemy, and cut them down on every side.³ The rout was complete; fortune had suddenly changed; and now there was nothing for us to do but to strip the dead and to return to our camp. Soon after, we fired our camp⁴ and marched without interference⁴ into our province.

¹ p. 77, 4. ² use *tela*. ³ p. 48, 4. ⁴ p. 52, 5.

EXERCISE XLIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. III., cc. 1-6*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

We were firmly convinced that the enemy had occupied the heights in the hope of getting possession¹ of our camp. We knew that, owing to the weakness of our force, they regarded us with contempt,² and that they were of the opinion that, as far as fighting went, they had³ no reason for⁴ apprehension. Still, they were unwilling to tempt the caprice of Fortune, as, after frequent engagements, they had always come off the losers. Accordingly, we called

a council of war, in which the majority decided⁵ to abandon the camp and the baggage, and, making (49, 10) a sally, to attempt to march to our winter quarters. The soldiers were quickly informed of the resolution of the council and they carried out their instructions with the utmost dispatch.⁶

¹ use *potior*; p. 45, 1, (a); 80, 1. ² p. 69, 8. ³ p. 111, a. ⁴ p. 32, 1. ⁵ use *placet*; p. 70, 2. ⁶ adv.; p. 78, 9, note.

EXERCISE XLIV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. III., cc. 7-10*).

Mankind are naturally anxious for liberty and detest slavery, preferring¹ to endure any wrong whatever² rather than submit to the yoke of servitude. These people also felt that they had³ considerable naval strength, naval science and naval experience, and that we would be unable to march against them with our army by reason of the difficulties of the land route on the one hand⁴ and of our ignorance of navigation and our lack of ships on the other.⁴ It was well known also that we had neither sailors nor pilots, and they did not know that we, who were accustomed to sailing only in a land-locked sea, would be able⁵ to sail in the vast and open sweep of the ocean. Accordingly they suddenly formed the design (their resolutions are always precipitate) of stirring up the other states along the coast to build⁶ ships and prepare for war against Rome.⁷

¹ p. 106, 2; 113, 3. ² use *quivis*. ³ p. 68, 3. ⁴ *et-et*. ⁵ pres. inf.; the pres. inf. of *possum* does duty also for the fut. ⁶ p. 110, 3. ⁷ p. 162, 4.

EXERCISE XLV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. III., cc. 7-10*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

To prevent¹ the maritime states from joining² the league, we sent an army with all speed to the sea-coast. The sea-faring people of these parts have a revolutionary tendency, and are easily stirred up to conspiracy or defection. They knew what a serious crime they had committed in flinging⁴ our envoys into prison—the name of envoy has always been respected—and they were prepared to face any issue of fortune. They accordingly summoned auxiliary forces from Britain, admitted their neighbors into alliance, mustered every

available ship, built others, collected rowers and pilots, conveyed all their corn from the fields and fortified their towns. They held many states in subjection by reason of their command of the sea, and they easily managed to stir them all up to a renewal⁵ of hostilities against Rome.⁶

¹p. 12, 2, note. ²p. 22, 1. ³p. 78, 9, note. ⁴p. 99, 6. ⁵p. 16, 1. ⁶p. 162, 4.

EXERCISE XLVI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. III., cc. 11-14*).

There was great difficulty in¹ capturing their towns. They were situated, as a general thing, upon head-lands, inaccessible by land at high-water—a phenomenon which (9, 9) occurs twice in every twenty-four hours—and inaccessible by ships at ebb tide. The tides there are very high, and, when they ebb, a ship is often left high and dry. Our ships² were almost constantly being dashed upon the rocks or stranded upon a shoal. Harbors there are practically (*paene*) none, and when the wind blows fiercely,³ it has a tremendous sweep from the open sea; there is no safety in running before it or in coming to anchor in shallow water. The ships of the natives have⁴ flatter keels than ours and are not hurt so much if they strike a rock. They are better adapted too for standing wind and sea, being built of oak⁵ throughout⁶ and high at the bow and stern. Moreover, their anchors are secured by iron chains instead of ropes. Owing (*prep.*), therefore, to the favorable position of their towns, they defended themselves without difficulty, and, owing to the number of their ships, our admiral despaired⁶ of being able⁷ to sustain their attack.

¹p. 43, 7. ²48, 7; 51, 2. ³p. 68, 3. ⁴*ex robore*. ⁵use *totus*. ⁶p. 6, 1. ⁷pres. inf.

EXERCISE XLVII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. III., cc. 11-14*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

At this point,¹ therefore, all the troops received orders to assemble.² Reinforcements were summoned from the Rhine and ordered to start³ with all possible dispatch.³ The land force reached its

destination without difficulty ; but the fleet found great difficulty in sailing through the open sea, owing to⁴ the roughness of the water. There are no harbors, the tides are high, and the sweep of the wind is irresistible. Our ships are not well adapted to cope with⁵ the violence of either sea or wind. The natives manage better. They build their ships throughout⁶ of oak ; and the timbers are a foot thick and put together with iron spikes an inch broad ; but, owing to their ignorance of linen, they have to use skins for sails. Their ships are large and of great bulk, easily steered, and, when running before the wind, outstrip ours in point of speed. We were detained also by stress of weather, but at last reached the point at which we had been ordered² to muster.

¹ use *eo*. ² p. 16, 1, note ; 99, 4. ³ p. 78, 9, note. ⁴ p. 113, 2.
⁵ p. 69, 9, note 2. ⁶ use *totus*.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. III., cc. 15-18*.)

The battle had now raged¹ from six in the morning,² and the enemy had already lost several ships and perceived that they would soon lose all they had. So they turned their ships down the wind and sought safety in flight. Very few ever reached land. This battle closed the war ; every available ship had been mustered in the fight, and all their young men were on board the fleet ; and, when the battle was lost, they had no longer any refuge or means of defence left. In such straits and urged by these considerations, many exclaimed that such an excellent³ opportunity of closing the campaign should not be thrown away ; that they had never recommended the war ; that they had only revolted in the hope of defending themselves ; and that they ought⁴ to march to the camp of the commander-in-chief and offer their submission. Lack of supplies (very inadequate provision in this respect had been made) induced⁵ their senate to adopt⁶ this resolution—and they marched accordingly to our camp and submitted.

¹ p. 38, 2, note ; 157, 4, (*b*). ² 144, 5. ³ use *tantus*. ⁴ p. 33, 3, note ; 45, 2. ⁵ change to passive. ⁶ p. 16, 1.

EXERCISE XLIX.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. III., cc. 15-18*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

The legate now marched with all his forces into the enemy's territory and encamped at the distance of two miles from the hostile army. For several days, he confined his men to the lines¹ and refused to fight, though the enemy led out his forces every day and offered him battle. The reason for this proceeding (161, 2) was as follows: ² As³ the enemy's numbers were so considerable, he was of the opinion that an engagement should not be risked (157, c) unless when a favorable chance offered. Men are always ready to believe what they wish to believe and the enemy accordingly believed that our general had closed the gates of his camp through cowardice. Every day they had the audacity (*vb.*) to approach the rampart and to call out to us that we should not let slip so excellent a chance of finishing the campaign. "Take up your arms," they exclaimed,⁴ "and meet us in the field." Our general, accordingly, was not only despised by the enemy, but he was carped at by the tongues of his own troops.

¹ use *castris* (abl.). ² p. 88, 3. ³ p. 106, 1; 113, 2, 3. ⁴ p. 7, 4; use *hortor*.

EXERCISE L.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. III., cc. 19-23*).

The governor saw that he would have to exercise great care.¹ He had introduced his army into a country which had a large population; the people of which—if somewhat effeminate—were always ready to go to war. A few years before,² they had defeated one of our armies, and killed the general at its head. They had already attacked a Roman column on the march, and put it to flight with the loss of its baggage;³ and he saw that their resistance now would be long and fierce. When the natives heard of our arrival, they were somewhat disturbed; but they at once began to muster their forces. They sent ambassadors in every direction to summon reinforcements to their side, and all their cavalry, in which they have great strength, they placed in ambush, intending to attack us on the march. News

of these preparations was brought us, and we pushed forward with all dispatch to the point at which the cavalry were posted. Here a spirited engagement took place,⁴ and the enemy were driven back into the town.

¹ p. 45, 2. ² p. 86, 4. ³ p. 48, 7 ; 51, 2. ⁴ p. 38, 2 ; 157, 4 (*b*).

EXERCISE LI.

(Based on Caes., *De Bell. Gall.*, B. III., cc. 19-23; review exercise, to be done without the book).

The matter was then referred to a council of war, and it was the general¹ opinion that there should be no delay² in engaging the enemy. The enemy's numbers were increasing every day³; they were mustering their troops and summoning reinforcements to their aid; they were sending ambassadors to neighboring states with requests for men and leaders; they had appointed as commander-in-chief one who was generally supposed to possess a thorough acquaintance with the art of war, one who knew how to fortify a camp, run a mine, or storm a town. It was felt also that the enemy would soon be in a position to beset the roads and intercept our supplies. We had ascertained that their cavalry had already been ambushed in a valley through which we had intended⁴ to march. It was decided, therefore, that, on the following day, the matter must be brought to an issue.

¹ *omnium*. ² p. 46, 5. ³ use *in dies* with words of increase and diminution, *quotidie*, with words of repetition. ⁴ p. 53, 1.

EXERCISE LII.

(Based on Caes., *De Bell. Gall.*, B. III., cc. 24-29).

These people make war very differently¹ from other states. They have in their territory long stretches of swamp and forest and when an enemy advances against them they retreat and confine themselves to these.² Notwithstanding the fact that³ powerful nations had proved inferior in their conflict with us, these were of the opinion that they could engage us with safety. They fancied that, owing to a short supply of provisions, we would soon have to withdraw⁴ from the country and that they would be able to attack us upon the

march with our knapsacks on our backs.⁵ They accordingly laid waste their land in every direction, fired all their villages (this in the hope of cutting off our supplies) and then led their forces into the thickest part of the forest and waited to see what course we would pursue.⁶ For many days in succession⁷ our army was led out of camp and drawn up in front of the wood; but, in accordance with the instructions they had received from their leader, they made no attack.

¹use *longe alia ratione*; 116, 1. ²use *adv. eo*. ³use *quamquam*.
⁴p. 46, 5. ⁵*sub sarcinis*. ⁶p. 32, 1; 31, 3, note 1. ⁷use *deinceps*.

EXERCISE LIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. III., cc. 24-29*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Summer was now almost past and winter was approaching; so the enemy confined his troops to his lines,¹ trusting that we would soon have to retreat. Every day² at dawn our forces were led out in front of his rampart, but no enemy could be seen. His intention³ was not to attack until⁴ we began to retire, and then to beset the roads, cut off our supplies, and try to win the victory without loss. Perceiving⁵ this intention, our leader proceeded⁶ to attack the enemy's camp. The horse, after making a long detour,⁷ were stationed on the flanks; and then all the cohorts advanced upon the works, some to fill up⁸ the trench, others to dislodge the defenders from the walls with their darts. The rampart was soon levelled, and the enemy, completely surrounded, sought safety in flight. It is well known that scarcely one-fourth⁹ of their number escaped.

¹use *castris*. ²*quotidie*. ³*ei in animo erat*. ⁴p. 105, 8, note.
⁵p. 102, 4; 103, 4, note; 51, 2; 52, 2, note. ⁶p. 142, 6. ⁷use *circuitus*, p. 48, 7; 51, 2. ⁸p. 110, 3. ⁹145, 8; 2, 3.

EXERCISE LIV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. IV., cc. 1-4*).

These people are of gigantic stature¹ and more warlike than² any of the others who live on either³ bank of the river. Daily exercise keeps⁴ up their strength and makes them capable of great exertion.

They have no pleasure in wine and do not import into the country any luxuries which they think tend to effeminacy (157, c; 170, 6). Many large and flourishing states on the other side of the river they have reduced and made tributary, and they often sell the spoils of battle to the French traders who resort to them. They prefer a milk or flesh diet and are greatly addicted to hunting. Private property is unknown among them. No one ever remains at home to till the soil more than one year;⁵ next year he is drafted off to serve in the army. Those that are at home support those that are in the field.

¹ p. 62, 1. ² p. 95, 3, 4. ³ use *uterque*. ⁴ say *they keep up* . . . and *make themselves*. ⁵ *plus uno anno*.

EXERCISE LV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. IV., cc. 1-4*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

These people, in spite of¹ their warlike character, had been driven from their own country, and, after roaming about for three years, had at last reached the Rhine. But, after trying every expedient,² they failed to effect the passage of the river, because they had no³ ships. So,⁴ seizing all the dwellings and supplies of those who lived on the other side, they maintained themselves there the rest of the winter. They use horses in battle, though they often dismount and fight on foot.⁵ They take the greatest pride in their horses which they buy up at a high figure from the merchants who visit them. In order to make trial of their strength in war, we ventured to cross the river and attack them with all our cavalry. Many of them were killed and, in thorough alarm, they returned with all speed to their own homes where a year afterwards⁶ they were made tributary by the Germans whose attacks proved irresistible.

¹ p. 115, 11. ² *omnia*. p. 68, 3. ⁴ p. 48, 7; 51, 2. ⁵ p. 74, 5. ⁶ use *anno postero*.

EXERCISE LVI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B., IV., cc. 5-10*).

These envoys made the following¹ representations: "We have not come here to pillage;² we have come on invitation. If you march into the districts³ we have taken possession of, you will be the

aggressors⁴ and there can be no friendship between us and you.⁵ If you allow us to retain our lands, we can be very useful to you; but, if you attack us, we will resist you; and most countries regret when they resolve to make war upon us." To this we answered that we had heard that they were unable to defend their own country, but had been evicted from their homes by others; that we would not allow them to approach our lands or remain in them. Let them ask the barbarians, who lived beyond the river, for lands to settle in; that we would give orders that such a demand should be granted. When they received this answer, they carried it back to their camp, promising to return the next day but one.⁶

¹ say *said these things*. ² p. 44, 6, note. ³ use *regiones*. ⁴ to be an aggressor=*to attack first*. ⁵ say *to us with you*. ⁶ say *on the third day*; 147, 2.

EXERCISE LVII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. IV., cc. 5-10*: review exercise, to be done without the book).

The river here makes several large islands which are inhabited by barbarous tribes whose diet consists¹ of fish. They are, however, very fierce and consider themselves equal in battle even to the gods, claiming (*co-ord. vb.*) that no one on earth can vanquish them. It is said² that they are a match for the picked cavalry of Germany, all the states of which are anxious to have them as friends. Many, accordingly, seek their aid in making war and they have no objection to having recourse to arms. For they not only protect their own territory but, if invited, will invade others. They extend their incursions all over the country. They are, however, rather fickle³ and unreliable and, when concerting important measures, they are often the mere slaves of rumor.

¹ use *vescor*. ² p. 38, 1; 55, 5, note. ³ p. 78, 9.

EXERCISE LVIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., IV., cc. 11-15*).

All the cavalry had pushed ahead. Their orders were¹ not² to act on the offensive, but, if attacked, to hold their ground until our column arrived. As soon as³ they came in sight, the enemy led out

his forces against them. Their cavalry charged at full gallop and caused some confusion in our ranks; then they dismounted and, stabbing our horses in the belly, spread such terror among the rest that they began to fly in every direction. The enemy followed slowly and did not desist from the pursuit⁴ until⁵ they came in sight of our camp. Then they retired again to their own camp. The following morning, they sent an embassy to apologise⁶ for taking the offensive, contrary to the arrangement made the day before. They would accept peace, they said (138, 4) and the terms we had offered; they earnestly begged us not to advance further into their territory or lay waste their lands. We had nothing to fear; the prestige we had gained in the country would prevent any one from making war upon us again. Such were the representations they made in apology for their attack.

¹p. 72, 10. ²p. 12, 2, note; 16, 1, note. ³p. 102, 4. ⁴say *nor did they make an end of pursuing*. ⁵p. 104, 8. ⁶p. 109, 2.

EXERCISE LIX.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. IV., cc. 11-15*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Thinking that it would be the height of madness¹ to wait till² the cavalry, which had gone across the river to forage, should return, and delighted that at last he had the enemy in his power, he gave the order to engage. For a short time they offered a stout resistance (157, c); but, owing to the absence³ of their cavalry, they were quickly surrounded and thrown into confusion and soon retired in panic⁴ from the field. Our horse were sent in pursuit, but it would have been better if they had not been. For, the enemy, facing about once more, charged our cavalry which, coming on without any apprehension, was quickly thrown into confusion⁵ and driven back to the main body with considerable loss.⁶ This was a lucky accident for them; for by the interposition of this delay, the enemy were enabled to cross the river in safety.

¹p. 59, 2. ²subjunctive; p. 104, 6, note. ³p. 48, 7; 51, 2. ⁴p. 50, 14. ⁵p. 48, 4. ⁶49, 9.

EXERCISE LX.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. IV., cc. 16-19*).

And so the war was over¹ and the enemy had withdrawn from their territory and hidden themselves in the depths of their forests. All their villages had been burned and all their corn cut down. After this battle, the Rhine became the boundary of the Roman Empire. Most of the neighboring states now submitted, seeing that² they could not carry on the struggle against us. Those which sought an alliance, received a generous³ response.⁴ A council of war was then called⁵ at which it was resolved that a bridge would have to be built and the army led over the river in order that all Germany might understand that we had both the courage and ability to cross their river when⁶ we wished. Many urged that the army could be ferried across by means of boats ; but it was decided that it was more in keeping with the dignity⁷ of Rome⁸ to lead it over by means of a bridge. The work was completed within ten days.

¹ p. 48, 7 ; 48. 4. ² 106, 1 ; 113, 3. ³ use *liberaliter respondere*.
⁴ p. 72, 10. ⁵ p. 48, 7 ; 51, 2 ; 48, 4. ⁶ p. 107. 5. ⁷ p. 59, 2 ; 158, (h). ⁸ p. 162, 4.

EXERCISE LXI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. IV., cc. 16-19*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

So great, after the rout of the Germans, was the reputation of our army that the remotest nations sent envoys to us with an earnest prayer¹ for aid. They said that many tribes who had retired into the wilderness were now gathering² to a general rendezvous³ and had decided to fight it out⁴ with Rome⁵ to the end ; that these declared they would never surrender or give hostages, and that unless we crossed the river and chastised them, they would spread universal⁶ terror among those who had entered into alliance with us. Many (they said) had already migrated from their towns and deposited their wives and children in the woods. They begged us to deliver⁷ them from this dread, to carry over an army, and leave several strong garrisons on their side of the river. They averred that we had no

reason⁸ to fear for our own safety and that we had both the strength and daring needed to render them all the aid they asked.

¹p. 166, 2 (c). ²p. 131, 1 (1). ³say *at a place where all were assembling*; p. 131, 1 (2). ⁴*depugnare*. ⁵p. 162, 4. ⁶say *passim* or *inter omnes*. ⁷p. 16, 1. ⁸use *cur*; 32, 1.

EXERCISE LXII.

(Based on Caes., *De Bell. Gall.*, B. IV., cc. 20-23).

This island lies in a northern latitude, but if¹ you had visited it you would have found there, upon the sea coast, a nation of traders who own² both men-of-war and fleets of merchant-men. They are not barbarians or unacquainted with the art of war and navigation. They use their ships for sailing³ to ports that lie opposite the island and for making war upon neighboring states. They have harbors, also, adapted for the largest ships. If any one had a thorough knowledge of the institutions under which they live,⁴ it would stand him in good stead. I have heard that both their courage and their good judgment are held in the very highest esteem⁵ by their neighbors. It would be a lucky accident¹ if such a nation would submit to our rule.

¹p. 123, III., (b). ²p. 68, 3. ³p. 42, 6; 43, 9. ⁴say *quibus utuntur* ⁵p. 63, 4. ⁶use *contingit*.

EXERCISE LXIII.

(Based on Caes., *De Bell. Gall.*, B. IV., cc. 20-23; review exercise, to be done without the book).

On the fifth day the member of staff¹ who had been sent ahead in a galley to ascertain the size² of the island and the character³ of the tribes that inhabited it, returned to us. He had not dared to leave his ship or to entrust himself to men who³ were strangers to him and unacquainted with our ways; but he had found a suitable place for disembarkation. We waited, accordingly, till⁴ the rest of the ships assembled at the rendezvous and then at a given signal⁵ all the regiments embarked. Wind and tide were both

favorable, so we weighed anchor at once and set sail. The first ships of the fleet touched the shore of the island about ten o'clock and were brought to upon a smooth shore where the hills come down to the sea.

¹say *unus ex legatis*. ²p. 32, 1. ³p. 113, 4, and note. ⁴subjunctive; p. 104, 6, (top). ⁵p. 48, 7; 51, 1, 2.

EXERCISE LXIV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. IV., cc. 24-27*).

When¹ the natives saw our ships approaching, they showed some excitement;² but when our troops began to disembark, they were thoroughly alarmed. The sight, indeed, was an unusual one;³ ships of war of great size coming to anchor on an unknown coast; soldiers in heavy armor leaping into the waves from the ships with alacrity and advancing towards the enemy. They would have retreated at once without⁴ attacking us, but their chiefs, flinging themselves among them, exhorted them not⁵ to incur such a disgrace, saying: "Stand your ground, boldly comrades; do your duty to us and your country." With this exhortation, they encouraged them to stand⁶ their ground and they began to discharge their spears upon our men, advancing through the waves and endeavoring to prevent the disembarkation. As soon, however, as⁷ we reached the land, they were put to flight and moved up the country.

¹p. 107, 3. ²p. 60, 3. ³use compar. of *inusitatus*. ⁴p. 139, 1. ⁵p. 16, 3, note. ⁶p. 16, 1. ⁷p. 102, 4.

EXERCISE LXV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. IV., cc. 24-27*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

The engagement was well contested¹ by both the contending parties,² the enemy's cavalry coming³ up to the attack at full gallop⁴ and standing their ground boldly. This was the one disadvantage we had:⁵ Our cavalry had not been able⁶ to reach the island. Our artillery, however, stood us in good stead.⁷ This arm the natives were quite unfamiliar with, and its strange appearance filled them with dismay. When orders were given⁸ to dislodge the enemy by a

discharge from the engines, they at once began to give ground ; and, when a general charge followed, they were put to flight. They laid the responsibility for this misfortune upon their lack of foresight. They begged that we would condone their attack upon us and grant them peace.

¹p. 38, 2; 157, 4, (b). ²say *ab utrisque*. ³use co-ord. vb. ⁴use *admissis equis*, p. 48, 7. ⁵say *this one thing was to us for a disadvantage*; p. 69, 8. ⁶change to a *that* clause; p. 100, 8. ⁷say "for a great assistance to us"; 69, 8. ⁸p. 72, 10.

EXERCISE LXVI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. IV., cc. 24-27*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

After this battle, the enemy sent an embassy to us to say¹ that they would give hostages and commit themselves and their states to our mercy. They acknowledged that they had arrested and thrown into prison the envoy whom we had sent ahead in a ship, charging² them not³ to go to war with us or attack us without good reason. They begged pardon for this act, the responsibility for which they laid at the door of the mob who are always inspired by over-zeal against those whom they fancy are the public enemies. They asked us to grant them⁴ peace, promising that they would never make war⁵ upon us again. Our general ordered them to give⁶ hostages, to summon all their chiefs from the remoter parts of the island, and to assemble within six days in our camp. He said that he would grant them peace, and he added a prayer to Heaven⁷ that the arrangement might redound (173, 3) to the prosperity of all.

¹p. 109, 2. ²co-ord. vb. ³p. 16, 3. ⁴p. 16, 1. ⁵p. 6, 1. ⁶p. 16, 1, and note. ⁷use *deos immortales contestari*.

EXERCISE LXVII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. IV., cc. 28-32*).

Up to this time there was no suspicion. Many of the native population were still in the fields and many were passing to and fro every day to the camp. It is well known that these people are always concerting new measures, but no one as yet suspected that they had actually formed a conspiracy to renew hostilities¹ and

prevent us from⁷ returning again to the island. They were confident that, if they could intercept our supplies and prolong the struggle to the winter, not a single³ man of us would ever leave the camp. We ascertained that there had been a conference between their chiefs, as soon as they had heard of the wreck of our ships; and we saw that the best thing to do⁴ was to prepare to meet⁵ any contingency. Men were sent every day into the fields to collect⁵ corn; the ships that had been knocked about by the high tides were refitted, the timber and iron of those that were of no use being applied to the purpose; and all our men were gradually withdrawn from the fields into the camp.

¹p. 12, 1; 44, 9, note (a), (c), (d). ²p. 22, 2. ³*ne unus quidem*.
⁴p. 42, 4. ⁵*use ad*.

EXERCISE LXVIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. IV., cc. 28-32; review exercise, to be done without the book*).

And now it was full moon and the eighteen ships, which were carrying the cavalry, weighed anchor and put to sea. When they left the harbor, the wind was light; but they no sooner approached Britain than¹ a storm arose which carried some of them back to the continent and the rest to the lower end of the island to the westward. These latter² came to anchor, but could not hold their ground. They would have been swamped, if they had not put out again to sea and made for the continent (123, iii, *b*). The same night, owing to the height of the tide—it is always highest at full moon—the galleys, which had been drawn up on the shore, and the merchantmen, which were riding at anchor, were so damaged by the waves that³ they were quite unseaworthy.

¹say "as soon as they approached;" use *quum primum* (p. 102, 4). ²*use hic*. ³p. 14, 1.

EXERCISE LXIX.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. IV., cc. 28-32; review exercise, to be done without the book*).

The consternation¹ of the army—the inevitable result²—was universal. When we came to the island, we had no intention of

wintering there. No provision of corn had been made and no baggage had been brought across by us. All the soldiers knew that several of the ships, which had carried over the army, were wrecked and that the rest were disabled, having lost their cables, anchors, and rigging. The native chiefs observed our alarm. They had heard of the wreck of our ships. They fancied that, if they could prevent us from returning³ to the continent, no one would ever invade them again. Accordingly, they began to collect cavalry and chariots to use⁴ in war against us. There was one field in which the corn had not yet been cut; and, thinking that we would come there soon to collect it, they hid themselves in a wood, which was near the field, intending to attack us, as soon as⁵ we began to reap.

¹p. 38, 2; 157, 4, (*b*). ²say "which thing, or a thing which, inevitably happened," p. 9, 9. ³p. 22, 2. ⁴p. 109, 2. ⁵p. 102, 4.

EXERCISE LXX.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. IV., cc. 33-38*).

Meanwhile their envoys rode in every direction, proclaiming our numerical inferiority¹ and showing what a glorious opportunity of deliverance was now presented. They stated that our army would be easily overpowered by the multitude of the enemy; that we had in camp only two legions and about thirty horse; that we could not any longer sustain their attack in the field, and that if we were once defeated,² we had no place of refuge to which to retreat.³ By these representations, they quickly collected a large number of horse and foot and chariots, and these took up their position before our camp. At first they sent a messenger to say that if we wished to escape with our lives, we must lay down our arms; but, when we disregarded this order, they formed a circle round our camp⁴ and discharged a shower of spears upon us.

¹say "the fewness of our soldiers"; co-ord. vb. ²p. 135, 2, note 1. ³p. 109, 2, note. ⁴p. 48, 4; 51, 2.

EXERCISE LXXI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. IV., cc. 33-38*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

The Romans had formed a circle¹ and were defending² themselves to the best of their ability. The unusual nature of the enemy's plan of attack caused us some confusion.³ Their infantry had completely surrounded us,⁴ and were pouring their darts upon us. Their cavalry were dashing about in every direction, causing alarm by the mere speed of their movements. But what caused most apprehension was their chariots.⁵ With these, on a field of battle, they perform wonders, possessing, as they do,⁶ the activity of horse and the stability of foot. Our men for more than six hours offered a brave resistance;⁷ but they would not have escaped the danger, if our cavalry had not most opportunely come up to their assistance.⁸ As soon as they came in sight, the enemy began slowly to retreat; our men left the field with all speed⁹ and were led back to camp. Their loss had been considerable (157, c).

¹p. 48, 4; 51, 2. ²78, 9, note. ³p. 60, 3. ⁴p. 48, 4. ⁵emphatic position; p. 177, 4, note. ⁶p. 106, 2; 177, 4, note. ⁷p. 38, 2; 157, 4, (b); 72, 10. ⁸p. 69, 8. ⁹p. 78, 9, note.

EXERCISE LXXXI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. IV., cc. 33-38*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

The equinox was now near and our ships (as has been stated) were rather unseaworthy and unfit to be exposed to wintry weather. We were all therefore of the opinion that we ought to set sail¹ at once, if we wished² to reach the continent again in safety.³ On the following day, therefore, at midnight we set out, after burning our camp. The same misfortune overtook us as before. Some of our ships were unable to make the same port as the rest, but were carried down the coast. The troops on these ships landed safely; but they would have fallen into the enemy's power, if we had not marched to their aid⁴ with all speed. A public thanksgiving in honor of our achievements was voted by parliament. But of all the states which had been required to send hostages, only two in

all complied with the demand. The rest were of the opinion that our withdrawal was final.

¹p. 45, 2. ²p. 135, 2, (1). ³p. 165, 2, (a). ⁴p. 69, 8.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 1-3*).

That winter we had¹ a large number of new ships built. They were all broader than the kind we use (8, 2) on our own seas, and lower in the gunwale, because the waves in those parts are not so high as in other seas. The material needed² for rigging them was brought from Spain. All the states, which had been ordered³ to furnish ships showed great zeal; and, by the day appointed, they all reached the rendezvous.⁴ Those who were in charge of their construction,⁵ received high praise⁶ from our chief. He said that as soon as the ships were loaded (128, 4) we would start from the continent, and that in a few days all preparations would be made.

¹p. 46, 6. ²p. 161, 1. ³p. 16, 1 and note; 72, 10. ⁴use adv. *eo* (to that place) *quo*...; 32, 1. ⁵157, c.

EXERCISE LXXIV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 1-3*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Some of the chiefs were filled with alarm (157, c) at our arrival and hid themselves in¹ a neighboring wood, from which they wasted the province by their forays. When word of this was brought us,² we sent an envoy to them to ascertain³ the motive⁴ (use *cur*) of their revolt and to tell them that unless⁵ they continued in their allegiance, we would harass them with war. They declared that they were ready to make amends in every possible (use *possum*) way; that their error (use *vb.*) had been due to lack of foresight, and that they would entrust themselves—if we wished⁶—to our honor and come into camp.

¹in with acc. ²p. 48, 7; 51, 2. ³p. 109, 2. ⁴p. 32, 1. ⁵p. 131, 1, (2); 135, 2, note 1.

EXERCISE LXXV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 4-7*).

These chiefs are very fond of power and always eager for political change. We decided therefore to take¹ them with us. Many of

then were indignant ; but none of them ventured to utter a protest (157, *c*) though some of them had no friendly disposition towards us. Some said that they were unused² to sailing and afraid² of the sea ; others that they were citizens of a free country and ought³ not to be compelled to go on board ships unless they wished.⁴ Entreaties,⁵ however, were of no avail ; we decided that⁶ all must embark, and embark they did. We were afraid to leave⁷ them behind, thinking that,⁸ in our absence (*abl. abs.*), their infatuation could not be kept within bounds.

¹p. 17, 5, note. ²p. 48, 4. ³p. 33, 3, note. ⁴p. 131, 1, (2).
⁵*preces* ⁶p. 17, 5. ⁷p. 18, 3, note 2. ⁸p. 49, 10 ; 113, 2, 3.

EXERCISE LXXVI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 4-7* ; review exercise, to be done without the book).

And now our preparations¹ were complete and the ships were all ready for sailing. Our chief, though he saw the good-will of the soldiers towards himself, thinking (49, 10) that they ought to receive some exhortation,² called both horse and foot together and addressed them as follows (use *haec*): "You will find, soldiers, that I have taken precautions to prevent³ any harm coming to you. You are embarking in summer and in most favorable weather. All the states have sent us the ships⁴ they were ordered to send us ; all the chiefs of an unfriendly turn⁵ I have decided to take along with me. So I have no fear of any disturbance¹ during our absence.⁶ Let no one fear⁷ the sea ; I will take care that all your ships reach the harbor and that you are taken across in safety (use *adj.*)."

¹p. 157, 4 (*c*). ²p. 33, 3, note. ³p. 12, 2, note ; 13, 5. ⁴p. 8, 2. ⁵p. 62, 1. ⁶p. 52, 4. ⁷p. 26, 3.

EXERCISE LXXVII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 8-11*).

The enemy then fled from the place and hid themselves in¹ a wood which they at once proceeded (say *began*)² to fortify that night, cutting down (*co-ord. vb.*) a number of trees³ and with them closing all avenues of approach to the wood. These preparations (161, 1) our

general heard of from the prisoners of war and ascertaining⁴ the enemy's position,⁵ he made all haste (*vb.*) to dislodge them from their works. He landed his army in front of their fortifications (48, 4) and raised a mound against it. This they endeavored to prevent⁶ and they defended themselves with admirable courage, fighting from their works and seeking to repulse the legions. We spent a great part of the day in fighting, but at sunset we carried the position and the enemy once more fled and dispersed to their homes.⁷

¹use *in* with acc. ²p. 142, 6. ³p. 48, 7; 51, 2. ⁴p. 49, 10. ⁵p. 32, 1. ⁶p. 18, 3. ⁷p. 83, 5.

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 8-11*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

There he learned to his alarm¹ that about forty ships had been stranded by a violent storm during the previous night (85, 1) and he saw that he must desist from his advance (45, 4) and return to the shore. On his return (*vb.*), he ascertained that many of the ships could be repaired, but that, though it would be an undertaking² of enormous labor, many new ones would have to be built.³ He made his preparations (157, c) at once. All the ships that were lying at their moorings he ordered⁴ to be beached and strongly fortified, and all the forces, foot and horse, to be recalled to camp. Bands of mechanics were summoned from the maritime states to cut down⁵ trees and to begin operations. A member of staff was put in charge of the whole work.

¹use *perterritus*. ²p. 59, 2; 158, (*h*). ³p. 45, 4. ⁴p. 16, 1 and note. ⁵p. 110, 3.

EXERCISE LXXIX.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 12-15*).

Most of the people in this island are dressed in skins and stain their bodies with woad which gives them a more terrific appearance in battle. They sow corn, but their diet is¹ mainly flesh and milk. There is fine timber on the island; and tin and iron occur in small quantities. They export large numbers of cattle. The climate is milder and the cold less intense than in Gaul. Several smaller

islands lie near, both towards the south and towards the north. In these latter, as some writers assert (132, 4), it is dark in midwinter for thirty days at a time ;² but whether this is true or not (30, 1), I have not been able to ascertain. Of all the people in the island—and the population is very large—those that inhabit Kent are said to be the most civilised. The ships of all nations touch here.

¹p. 157, 4, (c). ²use *continuus*.

EXERCISE LXXX.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 12-15*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

In battle they show great spirit and daring (157, c) and often broke through the middle of our line. They used to station themselves on hills or in the wood and then, suddenly dashing out¹ and charging us, they often inflicted considerable loss upon our men who were a good deal intimidated by the novelty of their attack. When we retired, they followed us with great eagerness, and though we always repulsed them, in the end we were not superior in every particular.² Those that inhabit the inland parts show more boldness in action than those who live upon the sea coast.

¹p. 49, 10. ²say *in omnibus partibus*.

EXERCISE LXXXI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 16-21*).

Not far from this was a spot which had already been fortified by them with a rampart and ditch and lay (use *sum*; 170, 8) in the middle of a wood. This was their rendezvous¹ and to it they drove a large number of cattle. Such a place is what they call a "town" in those parts. Here, after a short delay (157, c), we slowly followed them, plundering² and devastating the country as much as possible on our march and inflicting great injury upon the people, many of whom were put to the sword. They did not venture to engage us, for they would not have been able to sustain the attack of the legions (120, 2). They betook themselves to flight and with so much alarm that they did not halt till³ they reached the river. This they at once crossed.

¹say *all assembled to that place (eo)*. ²co-ord. verb. ³105, 8, note.

EXERCISE LXXXII.

(Based on Caes., *De Bell. Gall.*, B. V., cc. 16-21; review exercise, to be done without the book).

(a) To them we sent an envoy who made the following representations (use *dico* and *pron.*); "Unless you surrender, nothing will prevent us from laying (22, 2) your country waste. You will not be able to sustain our attack and you: will not escape death by flight. If you lay aside all hope of carrying on the struggle, if you surrender and give hostages, we will not storm your towns or injure your lands; and, as far as possible, we engage to protect you from the violence of the soldiery. If you refuse (*nolo*), we can ford your streams and march through your most impassable woods and nothing shall prevent you all from being put to the sword."

(b) Put in oblique narration from "Unless"; p. 127-134.

EXERCISE LXXXIII.

(Based on Caes., *De Bell. Gall.*, B. V., cc. 22-26).

Word was brought to the King, who had now been three years upon the throne,¹ that his enemies had resolved to take his life. He had been compelled to pay tribute and give hostages to Rome²; he had seen his territory devastated, ships sailing from the continent and landing troops before his towns, and an enemy wintering on his borders. And now he was informed that the states considered him the author³ of all these evils and they had resolved to heal them by taking his life. Fearing (49, 10), therefore, that the insurrection was wide-spread, and that the troops he commanded (8, 2) would revolt, he despaired of success; and ordering a galley to be launched, he sailed the same night for the continent. The ship was cast away in a storm and never came to land.

¹say *who was now reigning the third year*. ²p. 162, 4. ³use *causa*.

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

(Based on Caes., *De Bell. Gall.*, B. V., cc. 22-26; review exercise, to be done without the book).

That year, owing to the drought¹ of the summer, the corn crop was short, and how to find a remedy against the scarcity of supplies

(45, 4 ; 30, 1) was not very easy to see. He sent out envoys with orders² to the states to collect as much corn for him as they possibly could ; and, at the same time, he made ready to transport some of the legions back to the continent. The equinox was approaching and very little of the summer remained. But it so happened that some of the ships had been lost in a storm and he had to wait until twenty-five new ones were built (45, 4 ; 104, 6). When they saw that we intended to go into winter quarters, the enemy made a sudden attack upon our camp ; but we made a sally upon them, and, after³ the loss of their King, they withdrew their forces.

¹use pl. *siccitates*; 163, 6. ²p. 109, 2. ³p. 52, 6.

EXERCISE LXXXV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 27-30*).

The matter was laid before a council of war at which he made the following address : " I am under the deepest obligation¹ to Rome² and I wish to show my gratitude. She has freed me from the tribute I was in the practice of paying my neighbors. I am not so destitute of experience as³ to trust that I can overthrow her armies. That is scarcely credible. She has made war upon all Gaul and upon all Germany and no one is able to resist her or sustain the attack of her legions. I satisfied my love for my country when I attacked your camp ; I now wish to consult for the safety of your soldiers. I promise that they shall have a safe conduct through my territory. The time for consultation is brief. What can be more frivolous than, by neglecting this danger,⁴ to perish in the end either by the sword or by hunger?"

¹use *plurimum debere*. ²p. 162, 4. ³p. 14, 1 ; 15. ⁴p. 48, 7 ; 51, 2.

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 27-30* ; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Turn into oblique narration the address given in Exercise LXXXV.

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

(Based on Caes., *De Bell. Gall.*, B. V., cc. 31-35).

At midnight the council of war broke up and orders were sent through the whole camp¹ to march at dawn. No precautions were taken, but rather every device employed to increase the danger. The natives² showed no such lack of judgment. When, from the din borne upon the night air, they observed that we were on the point of evacuating our camp, they placed an ambush in a suitable position and awaited our arrival. No sooner³ had our column disappeared in the valley through which the route lay, than³ the enemy showed themselves on every side and attacked us both in front and rear. The order was given to abandon the baggage—an order⁴ which was attended with unfortunate results.⁵ It made the enemy more eager for the fray and caused our men to leave their standards that they might secure their valuables.

¹p. 83, 3. ²use *barbari*. ³*quum primum*; p. 102, 4. ⁴*id quod* or *quae res*; p. 9, 9. ⁵say *happened unluckily*

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

(Based on Caes., *De Bell. Gall.*, B. V., cc. 31-35; review exercise, to be done without the book).

When the enemy appeared, our general showed a good deal of perturbation,¹ hurrying¹ hither and thither and making¹ what seemed to be the necessary dispositions. He gave orders that no one should leave his post; he said that we were a match for the enemy whether² in courage or² numerical strength; Fortune (he averred)³ had not deserted us; that there was still a field left for valor to display itself. He exhorted the men merely to hurl their spears and not come to close quarters with the enemy and to attend to all orders with care. The battle raged⁴ from early dawn till night. Every soldier did his duty; but we were compelled at last to abandon our camp and baggage

¹use historical infinitive; p. 55, 4. ²*et et*. ³p. 138, 4. ⁴p. 157, 6.

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 36-40*).

After gaining this victory, the insurgents (use *hostes*) were confident that they would be able to effect their own freedom and take vengeance upon Rome for all the wrongs they had received at her hands.¹ Envoys were sent to all their bands who had taken refuge in the forest, with the announcement² that the Roman army which was wintering among them could be surprised and cut off without difficulty, and to exhort all to collect³ and take vengeance upon Rome. The bands were easily persuaded⁴ and a great force was assembled in front of our camp. They made an instant attack upon us, calling out, as they approached, that, if we laid down our arms, quarter (157, *c*) would be given to all.⁴ Some, in despair, rushed from the camp and were cut down by the enemy. The rest offered a brave resistance and maintained their position till night-fall.

¹ say "done by the Romans": subjective genitive, p. 62, 3.
²p. 109, 2. ³p. 16, 1. ⁴p. 72, 10.

EXERCISE XC.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 41-44*).

One of these chiefs addressed our general in the following words: "You have made a brave fight and it is impossible to decide (*III, b*, note) which of our armies is to be preferred to the other as far as courage goes (*abl.*; 177, 4 note). But many of your men have fallen; nearly all are wounded; you are surrounded and no one can possibly¹ bring you aid. Why wait (*pres. ind.*) till all have fallen? We will allow you to leave your camp unharmed and to march where you will." To this our general made the following brief reply (157, *c*): "It is not our custom² to accept terms of peace from an enemy with arms in his hands; if you will desist from hostilities and depart to your homes, I promise that all your demands shall be complied with. But you must give up (*reddo*) all your prisoners of war, as a guarantee of good faith."

¹ use *nec fieri potest ut quisquam*. ²p. 59, 2; 158, (*h*).

EXERCISE XCI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 41-44*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Turn into indirect narration the speeches of Exercise XC.; see p. 131 and 134.

EXERCISE XCII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 45-49*).

Matters had now reached such a pitch that there were not men enough to man the walls. The enemy's attack was becoming more and more dangerous every day, and we began to be afraid that we should not be able to get a letter to the general in his winter quarters (83, 6) to inform him of our danger. There was in the camp a Gallic slave who had often before proved his fidelity to us and was known to be possessed of great courage. This slave was induced by the promise of freedom, to carry a letter through the hostile lines, although the envoys, who had already been sent out, had without exception,¹ been taken and tortured to death. The letter was written in Greek characters, with the idea of preventing² the enemy from learning our plans in case he intercepted the envoy. The messenger passed through the besiegers'³ camp without exciting suspicion; and, within five days, we saw from our camp by the smoke of the conflagrations they spread,⁴ that our army was marching towards us.

¹*omnes ad unum.* ²p. 12, 2, and note. ³*rel.*; 159, *k.* ⁴omit; p. 187, 1, end.

EXERCISE XCIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 45-49*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

About five o'clock in the afternoon, word was brought him of the massacre of our army (157, *c*). On the following day at dawn, he set out from his camp and advanced by forced marches into the enemy's territory, marching at the rate of twenty miles every day.¹ He sent an envoy to the besieged with the news that he was on his way and would soon come up to their aid.² When the enemy ascertained information of his advance, they at once raised the siege and turned

all their forces upon him, thinking that they ought not to delay till³ all the legions should collect. They were descried in the morning from our camp. They were not less than sixty thousand strong and had taken up their position on the other side of a valley, where it would have been a somewhat hazardous proceeding for us, considering the unfavorable character of the ground, to make an attack upon them. Our men, when they saw them, at once withdrew behind the rampart with great affectation of alarm. Inside the camp all might be seen hurrying to and fro. Some were advancing (55, 4) to fortify the rampart, others hastening to deliberate what plan⁴ of defence (use *defendo*) they should adopt. The enemy accordingly were filled with contempt for us, and allured by these artifices, they crossed the stream at dawn and drew up their forces before the gates of our camp. But, before they hurled a spear, they sent a crier round the camp to proclaim that, if any one wished to come over to them, he was free to come till nine o'clock. When this hour had passed, they began their attack. We held out till midnight and then they beat a retreat. But the courage with which they managed the affair may be inferred from the fact that every⁵ tenth man was left dead upon the field.

¹say "a journey of twenty miles every day being completed" (*conficio*). ²p. 69, 8. ³p. 104, (top). ⁴p. 32, 1. ⁵p. 96, 6, (c).

EXERCISE XCIV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 45-49; review exercise, to be done without the book*).

When he reached the camp, he was filled with admiration and praised all—both commander and soldiers—as their gallant conduct had deserved. Thereupon, he called a meeting of the whole army at which he told them that their valor had been most conspicuous and that, through the kindness of Heaven, both their own sorrow and the rejoicing of the enemy had not been of long duration. All the Roman forces (he said)¹ would at once be led back into winter quarters; the uprising had been so serious that he himself would have to winter with them without² returning as usual that year to Italy. No day passed without some message of an uprising being brought to him. On the following day (he

said) he would pursue the enemy, as he had just learned from the prisoners of war that they were now twenty miles away.

¹p. 138, 4. ²p. 140, 1.

EXERCISE XCV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. V., cc. 54-58*).

After the completion of this business, they sent ambassadors to the nations across the Rhine. These proclaimed everywhere that we had lost the friendship of all their states ; that a great part of our army had been cut to pieces ; that the reinforcements we had sent for had not arrived and that without them we would not tempt Fortune again in the field. At the same time, they promised large rewards of money to all who should cross the river and join them. Not a single state yielded to their persuasions (157, c) and the ambassadors returned to their states. These states, though baulked in their expectations, resolved nevertheless to prepare for war with Rome (162, 4). They had been the first to make war¹ upon her before, and they enjoyed great influence with their countrymen in consequence,² being considered superior in courage to all the rest of the states that lie beyond the Rhine.

¹p. 11, 2. ²use *itaque* or *quamobrem*.

EXERCISE XCVI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. VI., cc. 1-6*).

That winter a levy of troops was held in the city and four new legions were organized.¹ It was of the utmost importance to the country (64, 4) that the loss we had sustained should be repaired ; and we felt that, in order to teach the barbarians what wonders (169, 2) the resources of Rome could achieve, the number of cohorts should be doubled or at least increased. We knew that they would not soon desist from their preparations and we were determined to march against them before² they could muster their forces. We hoped in this way to be able to fire their villages and, getting possession of their cattle, to force them to surrender, or at any rate,³ despairing of safety, to take refuge in their swamps and woods. Accordingly, our army entered their territory by forced marches in three divisions and

before they could send word to their troops to assemble at the rendezvous (use *eo quo*), we began to lay waste their lands, firing (*co-ord. vb.*) their houses and slaughtering their cattle. The enemy sent an embassy to pray⁴ for pardon⁵ and were ordered to furnish hostages. The soldiers made an enormous amount of booty.

¹use active : p. 168, 1. ²p. 104, 8. ³*certe*. ⁴p. 109, 2. ⁵p. 72, 10.

EXERCISE XCVII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. VI., cc. 1-6*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Word was brought us that all these states were making preparations for war and plotting with their neighbors. It was ascertained that they intended (53, 1) to meet us in battle and that they had promised money and booty to all who would join them. But, before¹ their arrangements were completed, we suddenly marched into their territory. Some of their forces took refuge (157, c) in the towns; others sought the protection of the forest. The rest asked for and obtained peace. No state ventured to meet us in the field. The whole business was pushed through with such speed that our army was led back into winter quarters before some of the insurgent² states had received word that we had reached the point at which they had been ordered to assemble.

¹p. 104, 8; 157, c. ²say "the states which had renewed the war,"

EXERCISE XCVIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. VI., cc. 7-10*).

The enemy's strength was such that our general did not wish to fight, unless he could catch them on disadvantageous ground. But he hoped that their rashness would soon give him an opportunity of engaging them in such a position. Between the two armies lay a river with steep banks;¹ here he pitched his camp and waited, in the hope that the enemy would cross. At the same time, in order to inspire them with the suspicion that we were afraid, he resorted to the following stratagem: He announced in camp that he would not expose himself to risk by attacking such a large force with such a small one. Word of this was at once

carried to the enemy's chieftains and, next morning at dawn, raising² a loud shout, they drew up their line in front of our camp, intending to attack us with all their forces.³

¹use *abl.*; p. 62, 1. ²p. 51, 2. ³p. 53, 1.

EXERCISE XCIX.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. VI., cc. 7-10*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Our general had suspected that such would be the result,¹ and, after a brief exhortation¹ to the army, he led all his forces out of the encampment. Two squadrons of horse were detached to guard the baggage²; the rest of the cavalry was posted on the wings. Though the ground was so unfavorable to the enemy, they did not hesitate to engage us; but calling out (*clamo*) to each other that we were on the point of retreating and that all preparations had been already made for decamping, they attacked us, foot and horse. We calmly advanced, hurling our spears.³ They were at once put to flight, and, retreating, sought the shelter of the adjacent⁴ forest. The innocent and guilty alike were punished. We gave no quarter. Their loss was enormous.

¹use *verb.* ²p. 69, 8. ³p. 51, 2. ⁴p. 169, 4.

EXERCISE C.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. VI., cc. 11-14*).

Held in high honor by all, these clergy¹ see large numbers of young men flocking to them from all parts for education—some voluntarily, others sent by their parents or guardians—and they often remain under instruction for twenty² years. The young men obey the decrees of the priest while they remain under his instruction. He teaches a good deal about the world and the stars, and the universe, thinking that from this subject the young men will learn much of the power of God. They are persuaded,³ too, to give some attention to literature and to learn by heart verses of poetry in their youth. They must learn the verses by heart on the ground that if you trust too much to the written letter, you will weaken your memory. It is supposed that their system of education was invented

in Britain and transplanted to the continent. Those who seek a thorough acquaintance with it, resort to the former country.

¹use *druides*. ²use distributive numeral. ³p. 72, 10.

EXERCISE CI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. VI., cc. 11-14*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

The rights of the commons in this country are not highly regarded. The common people are found in the army and are not excused¹ from military service; but they are not admitted to the council of the nation. They pay taxes and are almost crushed by them; but if they venture on any enterprise on their own responsibility, they are considered to have committed² a crime. A noble has nearly the same power over them that a master has over his slaves. They have therefore been in the habit, from time immemorial, of joining themselves to some of the greatest of the nobles that they may not be altogether without assistance. When they are loaded with debt, they are often made over to him like slaves. When a dispute arises between the commons and the nobility, it is decided by the nobility; and, if the commons do not submit, they are excluded³ from the religious functions of the nation.

¹say, "nor do they have exemption." ²use *admitto*. ³use *interdico*.

EXERCISE CII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. VI., cc. 15-20*).

Every knight, in proportion to his rank, surrounds himself with a large number of retainers.¹ These all take part—as is well known—in war, which is an event of almost yearly occurrence. But they have instituted the monstrous practice of human sacrifices and the knights often offer up their retainers¹ alive as victims to the gods. When a man is very ill² or when he is about to be exposed to serious danger,³ he vows to offer life for life, it being thought that such a gift is pleasing to Heaven—though how they can imagine such a thing, I do not know. The victims are placed in images of wicker-work and burned to death. At the decease of any personage of dis-

tinguished rank, they usually pile upon the flames not only other living things which the dead man loved in life, but also certain of his slaves and retainers.

¹*clientes*. ²use *morbo affectus* (*afficio*, put in a state). ³*in gravioribus periculis versaturus* ; 78, 9.

EXERCISE CIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. VI., cc. 15-20*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

One good custom that they have established by law, is this: No one is allowed to speak on politics unless in the national assembly. The reason they give is, that (as they say)¹ men are often driven to crime when they hear others discussing political subjects; and they consider it a scandal (adj.) that this should be a matter of constant occurrence. If any one lays² before a magistrate any information he has received from hearsay, that magistrate may either conceal it, if it seems good to him, or bring it before the assembly. These people do not neglect commerce; they believe that it brings in large returns to a nation, and tends (*est* with gen.; 59, 2) to the acquisition of wealth,³ making⁴ it possible to bear the burdens of war. Accordingly they hold that Mercury, the god of trade, is supreme among the gods.

¹p. 138, 4. ²*referre*. ³157, c; 43, 7. ⁴co-ord. vb.

EXERCISE CIV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. VI., cc. 21-29*).

These people differ considerably from others. They have no clergy to preside at religious functions; and they do not believe in any gods they cannot see. War is the only thing they give any attention to. They do not care for agriculture. No man has land of his own; every year the chiefs assign a definite allotment to each individual; but, a year after, he must go elsewhere. The rich have no thought of acquiring large estates or of evicting the humble from their holdings; and the humble are kept in contentment¹ because they cannot see wealth greater than their own. These men do not build cities, though they use small houses as a protection² against cold. They train their young men for war from

childhood¹ by the hunt and the foray, excellence (157, c) in which is a great source of credit.

¹*animi aequitas.* ²use *causā* with gerundive. ³*a pueris.*

EXERCISE CV.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. VI., cc. 21-29*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

This fertile track (he said) extends¹ a nine days' journey parallel with the stream; then it runs for the same distance to the left. In it dwells a nation well known to fame and enjoying a high reputation for justice and rugged endurance. These men think that it is the chief part of virtue to live in poverty and contentment; they have no wealth and no desire for it. They have no knowledge of the luxuries² that come from over sea, and are the occasion of so much dissension among other nations. They are never the aggressors in war, though they can defend themselves when war is made upon them. But from the fact that a vast wilderness surrounds (say *is round*) their territory, they enjoy considerable immunity from war.

¹use *patere.* ²*res*; 161, 2.

EXERCISE CVI.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. VI., cc. 21-29*).

From childhood¹ they are inured to toil, it being thought (say *thinking*) that toil increases the strength and stature and steels the sinews. They dress in skins and live mostly on flesh and milk. Once they used to send out colonies beyond the Rhine, but now they see the colonies of other races settling among them. Their chief delight is hunting and they have a wood there which surpasses in size all woods we know. It is the haunt of many species of wild beasts, many of which differ in form and habits from those known to us. The stag seen in this wood has taller antlers than our stag. It can not lie down; if it is knocked² down by any accident, it cannot rise. There, too, dwells the wild ox, which is as large as an elephant and has the strength of the bull and the speed of the stag.

¹*a pueris.* ²use *affligo.*

EXERCISE CVII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. VI., cc. 29-34*).

And now the enemy were dispersed in every direction and were unable to defend themselves. Most of them had sought refuge (157,c) in the forest, retreated into impassable morasses, or concealed themselves in islands formed by the tide. They no longer had any thought¹ of settling the issue in the field;² all their hopes of inflicting injury on us were now centred in laying secret ambuscades and in preventing us from entering their woods in a solid body and surrounding their scattered bands. This was the only plan they could form for escaping death and extirpation. The minds of all our soldiers (especially the recent levies) were burning for revenge, and precaution had to be exercised to prevent³ their eagerness for slaughter from luring them too far into the woods. The hope of booty called out many of the natives themselves from the adjacent states. These surrounded the woods in large numbers and plundered all of their countrymen who were killed.

¹use *cogitare*. ²say *to fight it out in battle*. ³p. 12, 2, note.

EXERCISE CVIII.

(Based on *Caes., De Bell. Gall., B. VI., cc. 35-44*).

Fortune has a wonderful influence¹ in war. The enemy—as already shown—had dispersed in every direction, and our legions were marching through the land, laying waste their fields. Word of this was carried to the Germans beyond the Rhine, and, lured by the hope of booty, one of their band crossed the river, some thirty miles below the bridge. There they secured a large number of cattle which they hid in a wood.² Thence they at once advanced upon the Roman camp before which they suddenly appeared at a time when most of the men were three miles away collecting corn. The camp was defended with the greatest difficulty, and it was not till after many of them had fallen that they abandoned the attack. Thus these Germans, who had crossed the river to invade Gaul, really conferred a kindness upon the Gauls by almost destroying a Roman camp.

¹*multum valere*. ²use *in* with acc.

EXERCISES ON LIVY.

EXERCISE I.

(Based on Livy, B. XXI, cc. 1 and 2).

When the African war was over,¹ Carthage (p. 162, 4) transferred her army to Spain, where, under the generalship of the high-spirited² Hamilcar, she extended her dominions, not by arms, but by policy. She did not attack the Spanish nations but won them over through the friendship of their chiefs. Thus new tribes joined her empire and increased her power and resources. It was clear, however, that all those years she was meditating war with Rome. The loss³ of Sicily and the cession of Sardinia galled her rulers who knew (*scio*) that she had been subjected to rapacious and tyrannical exactions (use *imperito, order*; p. 38, 3) by Rome. The imposition of the tribute and the seizure of Sardinia were especially galling to Hamilcar who would have,⁴ at the earliest opportunity, invaded Italy himself, if his death had not postponed the war.

¹p. 52, 6. ²p. 3, 8; 62, 1. ³p. 50, 14. ⁴p. 123, III.

EXERCISE II.

(Based on Livy, B. XXI, cc. 3-5).

The senate appointed Hannibal to the command of the army in Spain after the assassination¹ of Hasdrubal. The aristocratic party had however exerted themselves to prevent (*ne*) the command from being conferred upon him; they were afraid that² he would succeed to all his father's influence. Numbers, however, as usual carried the day (173, 3). Hannibal was manifestly destined to be a great leader. He won the veterans at once; they saw his father in him: he had the same animated expression and the same piercing eye.³ They felt the utmost confidence in him. He was the best foot-soldier and the best horse-soldier in the army; and when he gave an order,⁴ it was obeyed.

¹p. 50, 14. ²17, 1. ³omit the adjs., as implied; p. 187, 1, end.
⁴p. 161, 1.

EXERCISE III.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 1-5; review exercise, to be done without the book).

There is a story that the father bound the son by an oath to invade Italy at the earliest opportunity and that, on the same occasion, the son declared that he would be the eternal (use *semper*) enemy of Rome. When sent to Spain after his father's death—not indeed (89, 7) with the consent of the rulers—it could not be without difficulty (use *facile*) decided¹ whether general or common soldier put more confidence in him. He had wonderful² skill in winning men's hearts, a wonderful genius for command, and a wonderful power of enduring hardship. Historians state that it was only the time that remained after doing his work³ which he gave to sleep.

¹p. 170, 7. ²say *very much*; Latin constantly uses colorless words like this, instead of the more picturesque or specific English phrase. ³p. 43, 7.

EXERCISE IV

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 5-7).

Between him and the enemy lay a river and this he believed the latter would soon cross. Accordingly, he posted his cavalry on the bank with instructions (*vb.*) not to attack until the enemy were in the stream. They had not long to wait (45, 4); the enemy were naturally high-spirited; and thinking¹ that they were already victors and that the Carthaginians would retreat before them, they raised a shout and rushed pell-mell into the river. The fight was not an equal one or very successful for them. Some were trampled down by the cavalry; others were carried away by the current and drowned; few found a safe retreat to their own bank.

¹49, 10.

EXERCISE V.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 5-7; review exercise, to be done without the book).

The envoys were introduced to the senate by the consuls, who then moved that the House consider the political situation. It was clear to all that Hannibal had determined to make war upon Rome.

He was sowing seeds of strife by attacking¹ her allies, laying waste their lands, and storming and plundering their towns. Everybody saw that, without doubt, war was impending. The opinion was expressed by some that he ought to be attacked at once both by sea and land. Others thought that action should not be taken rashly in so important a matter. So it was resolved² that an embassy be sent to warn³ Hannibal to abstain from attacking the allies of Rome.

¹ p. 43, 7. ² p. 16, 5. ³ p. 16, 1.

EXERCISE VI.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, c. 7; review exercise, to be done without the book).

In the midst of these preparations and deliberations¹ at the capital (say *city*), the enemy began his operations, attacking (use *co-ord. vb.*) the place in three divisions and planting his batteries opposite an angle of the wall where the ground sloped down into the open valley. His first attempts met with poor success. The point attacked was defended by a large fort, a great height of wall, and a picked body of troops. The besieged² were even encouraged to make a sally upon the enemy's pickets and siege-works; and in the skirmish that ensued, their loss (*vb.*) was not numerically greater (use *plures*) than that of the enemy. The general, himself, incautiously approaching (use *dum*) too near the wall, received a spear wound in the thigh³—a disaster which (161, 2) almost led to a general⁴ abandonment⁵ of the works.

¹ p. 161, 1. ² p. 142, 8. ³ acc.; this is a poetical construction used by Livy with adjs., but not by Caes. or Cic. It is called the *acc. of specification*. ⁴ say *all*. ⁵ p. 50, 14.

EXERCISE VII.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 8-10; review exercise, to be done without the book).

From Spain the embassy went straight to Carthage, to plead¹ the Roman cause in the Carthaginian senate. They represented² that Hannibal had already broken the treaty by capturing the towns of

the allies of Rome, and tampering with peaceful states. They warned the senate that it was the walls of Carthage that he was battering with his engines. It was clear that, if the senate wished to please Rome,³ they must⁴ surrender Hannibal. Some were of the opinion that an embassy should be sent to apologise to the Roman senate; but it was thought by the majority that such an embassy would be unsuccessful.

¹p. 44, note. ²use *say*. ³p. 135; p. 162, 4. ⁴p. 45, 4.

EXERCISE VIII.

(Based on *Livy*, B. 21, cc. 8-10; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Meantime the people of the town had offered a brave and unexpected resistance,¹ and their spirits rose accordingly. But there was no cessation¹ of hostilities (*arma*). One side (*hi*) was fired with hope; the other with despair. The one party believed that if they put forth some effort, they would take the town; the other would not give ground, because it was seen² that, if they allowed them to enter the place,³ the Carthaginians would take vengeance upon the town for its brave resistance (use *quia*; 113, 2). The defenders,⁴ however, were unable to defend their whole wall because of the superiority of the enemy in numbers (use *plures*); and it was soon battered down at many points by the ram.

¹p. 157, c. ²use *appareo* for pass. of *video*. ³p. 135, 2, 2, (a); get the direct narration first. ⁴use *townsmen*; p. 187, 2.

EXERCISE IX.

(Based on *Livy*, B. 21, cc. 11-15).

The ramparts resounded with confused cries, but no one knew in what direction to carry assistance.¹ The engines stripped the walls of their defenders, and, on the side where they had not been cemented with mortar, the pick-axe was slowly undermining them from below. Seizing² an elevated position inside the city, the enemy had surrounded it with a wall; and thus they had a fort in the heart of the town. Scarcity of supplies was growing greater

every day, and the prospect of help from abroad³ was growing every day less. Their only hope was far away. Thinking that there should be no longer delay, Hannibal gave the signal for a general attack, and in a moment carried the city. No quarter⁴ was given. All the booty fell to the soldiers.

¹ p. 24, *d*; p. 30, 3. The subjunctive here must do double duty : it expresses (*a*) the indir. ques., (*b*) the delib. ques. ² p. 49, 10. ³ adj.; Eng. phrases of place and time are often expressed by adjs. ⁴ use *parco*; 72, 10.

EXERCISE X.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 11-15; review exercise, to be done without the book).

There was one man among Hannibal's soldiers who thought that he ought (45, 4) to try and realise (*tempto*, *make trial of*) this hope of peace. He knew that tears would have no influence¹ with the cruel Carthaginian; but he hoped that the Saguntines, seeing² their town almost in the hands of the enemy, would accept even the severe conditions of peace offered them. He accordingly approached the town before the eyes of all, gave up his sword to the sentry, and crossed the lines. He told the senate, before which he was conducted, that resistance¹ was no longer possible (111, 6, *c*, note), and he stated the demands¹ the enemy made. "He asks you," he said, "to make restitution to the Turdetani; to give up all your gold and silver, and to leave your city and build another where he shall bid you" (*fut. perf.*)

¹ p. 157, *c*. ² p. 49, 10.

EXERCISE XI.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 16-20).

When word was brought to Rome of the sack of Saguntum, there was universal (use *omnes*) excitement and confusion.¹ Rome had never met a more warlike enemy than the Carthaginians. They had been trained by military service of more than twenty years duration; they had an active leader of the most spirited temper; and all the nations of Spain were paying them tribute. The Romans were filled with shame,² too, at the destruction of their allies. The ruins of Saguntum were a mournful object-lesson to Spain not to

put any further faith in Rome (use *ne*). When she had once taken that city under her protection,³ she should have assisted it and not betrayed it to the enemy. All the allies were tired² of such friendship.

¹p. 157, c. ²p. 66, 3. ³p. 107, 3.

EXERCISE XII.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 16-20; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Receiving these instructions,¹ the venerable ambassadors departed for Carthage.² No sooner³ had they reached that city than a hearing was given them by the senate, from which they inquired whether⁴ or not Hannibal's attack upon Saguntum had been made with the authority of the state. "If it was made upon your authority," they said, "we must demand satisfaction." To this the following answer was given: "It is our business to punish our own citizens; the question for you to settle is, whether, in accordance with the treaties between us, the attack was justifiable." The ambassadors returned to Rome, where they found that all preparations⁵ had been completed for making war with both land and naval forces.

¹p. 49, 10; 157, c. ²p. 83, 4 ³p. 102, 4. ⁴p. 30, 2. ⁵p. 157, c.

EXERCISE XIII.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 21-25).

At the beginning of spring, therefore, the forces assembled. The rest had been very grateful; almost all the soldiers had gone to see (44) their friends. It was generally known that the army was likely¹ to invade Italy; but precautions had also to be taken for keeping the enemy from Africa and Spain. A fleet was given to Hannibal's brother for the protection of the sea-coast, under the conviction² that the war would be carried on by both sea and land. Envoys were sent to the Gallic chiefs to ask them to allow³ the army to march through their territories, and to say that the Carthaginian was not coming as an enemy, but as a friend; that he did not wish to draw the sword until⁴ he reached Italy.

¹p. 54, 2. ²p. 157, c. ³p. 16, 1. ⁴p. 105, note.

(Based on

One of
me, chief
lands (3)
not your
is of long
our town
distributed
slavery
to attack
you to tr
We do n
arrive in

¹p. 54,

(Based on

It is h
youth of
by Heav
youth, "
followed.
(deinde)
looked b
of trees
youth wh
Italy."

¹use v

On th
Rome h

EXERCISE XIV.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 21-25; review exercise, to be done without the book).

One of these ambassadors spoke as follows :—" You have asked me, chieftain, why we wish to lead this large army through your lands (30, 1). I will tell you. We are going to invade¹ Italy. We are not *your* enemies; we are the enemies of Rome.² Our resentment is of long standing. Rome has tampered with our allies, conquered our towns, placed garrisons and planted colonies in our midst, and distributed our lands among her citizens. We are more afraid of slavery than of war; and, therefore, we have crossed the mountains to attack our enemy and besiege her cities. We have come to you to treat of peace, and to ask a passage through your territory. We do not wish to begin the war until, with Heaven's good help, we arrive in Italy."

¹p. 54, 2. ²p. 162, 4.

EXERCISE XV.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, c. 22; review exercise, to be done without the book).

It is here, according to the tradition,¹ that he saw in his sleep a youth of angelic beauty (62, 1), who announced that he had been sent by Heaven to guide him to Italy. "Fix your eyes on me," said the youth, "and follow." At first (so the story says) he was afraid, and followed, looking neither behind nor around. But, after a while (*deinde*), when he began to wonder what the marvel could be,² he looked back and saw a huge serpent moving along amid the crash of trees. A storm-cloud and thunder followed. He asked the youth what it meant (30, 1), and he said, "It is the devastation of Italy." He was much cheered, the story says, by the vision.

¹use *vb.*; p. 138, 4. ²see Ex. IX., 1.

EXERCISE XVI.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 26-30).

On this occasion his words were as follows :—"The senate of Rome has heard, soldiers, that you have crossed the Pyrenees, and

that you are now about to cross the Alps (53, 1). They are filled with wonder and fear, and all is excitement (use *trepido*) in that city. But, for my part,¹ I wonder that the same fear should have assailed you. You have conquered all the tribes of Spain ; you have crossed mountains ; you have subdued the might of rivers ; and you have marched here to deliver (44) the world from slavery, and to blot out the name of Rome. Why do you halt before her very gates ? No obstacle² is insurmountable to the human race. Men have crossed these mountains before ; why cannot we cross them now ? We must not yield in valor to the tribes³ we have so often conquered. We have come here to attack the capital of the world ; let not fear delay our enterprise (26, 3)."

¹*ego*; p. 87, 1. ²p. 161, 2. ³p. 8, 2.

EXERCISE XVII.

Turn into indirect narration the speech of Exercise XVI.

N.B.—Turn the vocative into the accusative before *inf*.

EXERCISE XVIII.

(Based on *Livy*, B. 21, cc. 31-34).

Their march often lay through deep valleys or under ridges upon which the brave mountaineers had taken up their position.¹ These attacked the column in front and rear, both hand to hand and with missiles ; they even rolled down rocks upon it from the hills. Again it often lay² along defiles with precipices on both sides, from which men and horses and beasts of burden continually fell. The woods, echoing with the discordant shouts of the natives,³ increased the confusion and alarm. They had some experience, too, of treachery. One day at dawn some venerable chieftains met them and offered them guides. These were accepted at once. But a number of armed men had been posted on a height that overhung the road, and there is no doubt that, if the army had not advanced in fighting order, it would have been brought to destruction.⁴

¹p. 157, c. ²p. 170, 8. ³use *barbari*. ⁴p. 22, 1 ; 140, 3.

EXERCISE XIX.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 31-34; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Next day at dawn, they decamped and retired further from the sea, advancing in a straight line (*recta regione*) along the river bank. Though it carries a large volume of water, this river is not navigable; nor does it offer any safety for crossing.¹ After a three days' advance,² they arrived at the mountains. The mountaineers are uncivilized but kind, and they assisted the army with clothes and food. They also offered hostages, and stated that they would guide the column through the defiles. Blind credence² was not put in their word, but the general availed himself of the services³ of the guides. Rumor usually exaggerates; but the ice and snow of the mountains were frightful to see. The army was ordered to halt;⁴ and the camp was pitched in a deep valley.

¹p. 48, 6. ²p. 157, c. ³utor. ⁴p. 16, 1.

EXERCISE XX.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 35-39).

And now the time for the setting¹ of the Pleiades was near and snow was beginning to fall. Soon the whole route was blocked with it and the advance of the column was extremely slow. Despair appeared on every face. But just² here Hannibal showed what an admirable general he was.³ The whole army was exhausted with fighting and the toil of road making (use *munitio*), but they had at last reached the summit, and now Italy was almost in sight. A rest of two days was allowed to recruit, and the camp was pitched upon the top of the ridge. During these two days, he drew up the lines on a height, which commanded a distant view, and pointed out the level plains of Italy, stretching beneath the mountains. "These mountains," he said, "are the ramparts of Italy; when they are once⁴ scaled, the Roman citadel will soon be in our power." In this way he encouraged the soldiers before they left their camp.

¹i.e., their setting at sunrise; Oct. 26. ²p. 177, 4, note. ³p. 30, 1. ⁴p. 106, 1, note.

EXERCISE XXI.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 35-39; review exercise, to be done without the book).

It is generally agreed that he lost many men in crossing the mountains. There is no doubt¹ that some were carried off by starvation, some by cold, and many by the sword of the mountaineer. Some writers state that, after he crossed the Rhone and before he arrived in Italy, he lost thirty-six thousand men. There is no agreement, however, among the authorities (157, c) as to what his numerical strength was (use *quot*; 32), when he descended from the Alps. Some say he had one hundred thousand foot and thirty thousand horse; and the statement of these writers is more probable than that of those who say that he had only twenty thousand foot and six thousand horse. The route, also, by which he crossed the mountains is uncertain. Authorities, who usually have much weight with me, are not worthy to be believed² with regard to this matter.

¹p. 22, 1. ²p. 111, b; 38, 3.

EXERCISE XXII.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 40-43).

When Rome (162, 4) saw the Carthaginians taking up arms once more against her, she well knew that they were not to be despised. They had conquered Spain and Gaul; they had made the high-spirited tribes of these lands tributary; they had crossed lofty mountains and rapid streams; they had an army which had been hunting cattle and campaigning for twenty years among the hills of Lusitania; and they had an illustrious general who was the foster-child, as it were,¹ of the camp, to whom not a single soldier in the army was unknown. This dreaded enemy had to be met with an army of recruits, which had been beaten in the field the previous summer. The Roman general was unknown to the army, and the army was unknown to its general. He was, however, a man of high spirit,² and he advanced with all possible speed³ to meet the enemy, encouraging his men to fight (16, 1) as if they were fighting against their own slaves.⁴

¹p. 173, 5. ²p. 62, 1; p. 190, 4, c. ³78, 9, note. ⁴117, 3, b.

EXERCISE XXIII.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 40-43; review exercise, to be done without the book).

When the army was in this state of mind, he addressed them as follows :—"You are going to engage (53, 1) an enemy, soldiers, whom you have frequently conquered both by sea and land. They are indeed (*quidem*) our slaves, and have paid us tribute for twenty years. Fight, therefore, with the feeling that ¹ you are fighting against your slaves. You will say ² that we might, ³ had we wished, ⁴ have destroyed them by starvation; by merely taking our fleet to Africa, we might have blotted out both their city and their name. We might, indeed. And would to Heaven ⁵ that we had taken this course, instead of making peace with them and granting them pardon! Let each of you remember that he is fighting not merely for himself, his wife and his children, but also for his country. You are going to fight before the ramparts of Rome; and, remember that the eyes of the country will be upon you."

¹p. 117, 3, *b*. ²p. 203, *f*. ³p. 33, 5. ⁴p. 123, III. *b*. ⁵p. 25, 2.
⁶use *quum*.

EXERCISE XXIV.

Turn into indirect narration the speech of Exercise XXIV.

EXERCISE XXV.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 44-48).

With a view to ¹encouraging the soldiers, he spoke on this occasion as follows :—"The day of battle, soldiers, is approaching, and I see that the enemy will give us an opportunity of meeting them in the field. We shall soon be in sight of their camp. Their allies have been stirred up to revolt, and will fly to arms and desert to us, that their lands may escape devastation. ² Spare them in the fight; we will show no cruelty ³ towards those of them ⁴ we take prisoners. All the needed (142, 8) supplies have been secured; we have captured the granary where the Roman general had stored his corn. The general himself has taken up his position beside the stream, where we will soon attack and vanquish him. I now wish to pro-

claim the rewards in expectation of which you will fight. I will give land, exempt from taxation, to any who wish land ; money, to those who prefer money. To those of our allies who wish to become citizens, I will afford the opportunity of becoming citizens."

¹p. 12, 1. ²p. 12, 2, note. ³p. 157, c. ⁴p. 8, 2.

EXERCISE XXVI.

Turn into indirect narration the speech of Exercise XXV.

EXERCISE XXVII.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 44-48; review exercise, to be done without the book).

At first neither army saw the other ; but, after a little, a dust arose from the advance of such a large number of men and it was clear to us that the enemy were approaching. Orders were at once given to halt and prepare for battle. Great eagerness for the fight was shown in our army. The infantry raised a shout,¹ as they advanced in close order upon the enemy. The cavalry had been ordered to make a short detour and show themselves on the enemy's rear ; and no sooner² had they appeared than the enemy were thrown into confusion³ and began to fly. The reserves had fled almost before our shout was raised. These latter retired, in broken order, to their camp, where they told the story⁴ that the whole army had been cut off. There were some, however, who showed more courage than the reserves⁴ ; and these preferred to find death on the field rather than in flight. Many retired without disorder, and, advancing to the river, loosed the raft with which they had spanned the stream, and crossed in safety.

¹p. 38, 2. ²p. 102, 4. ³p. 157, c. ⁴p. 110, 6.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 49-53).

No sooner¹ was word of Hannibal's arrival² carried to Rome (use *nuntio*) than despatches were sent to the other consul in Sicily ordering him to reinforce his colleague at his earliest opportunity.

Successful operations had been carried on in that island even before the consul's arrival. The Carthaginians had sent a fleet to ravage the coast of Sicily and the adjacent islands and to stir up their old allies. But the fleet was scattered by a storm, and some of the vessels were captured, without opposition,³ by King Hiero and towed into port. A second fleet had been put to flight, with the loss of seven ships, by the praetor Aemilius, the Roman governor of the province. As the consul sailed into the strait, King Hiero met him and promised him his support.² He said that the maritime states were in great danger; that there were certain parties in them who hoped that there would be a political change. A few days after, they received word of the rout² of the Carthaginian fleet. Thereupon the consul took his departure² and joined his colleague.

¹p. 102, 4. ²p. 157, c. ³p. 52, 5.

EXERCISE XXIX.

(Based on Livy, B. 21. cc. 49-53; review exercise, to be done without the book).

The admiral (**imperator**) had intentionally delayed the advance of the fleet so as to approach the town before daylight. But the moon shone all through the night and the fleet, as it approached, was at once seen from the watch-towers. A call to arms was raised¹ and seamen and marines embarked without delay. The enemy, seeing² that we were not unprepared, did not hold on his course, but began to clear his ships for action. No sooner³ had day dawned, than we put out against him. The battle did not last long. Seven of his ships were surrounded and taken; and, perceiving this, the rest turned to flight. Our fleet returned in safety to the harbor. All the marines and seamen taken in the battle were sold as slaves.

¹p. 38, 2. ²p. 49, 10. ³p. 102, 4.

EXERCISE XXX.

(Based on Livy, B. 21, cc. 49-53).

In this battle they had been successful with the very arm (use *pars*) with which they had been beaten before. The general was elated accordingly and thought that there should be no further post-

ponement or delay.¹ The day of the elections was approaching and he was afraid that,² by postponing the engagement (*abl. abs.*), the glory of victory might be turned over to others. "Why are we wasting time?" he said; "why must we delay longer? The empire must either be defended with the troops we have³ or there is no hope of defending it at all. We have come here to liberate our country. Why, then, are we standing in inactivity within our lines? The⁴ longer the battle is postponed, the more inactive we shall become. The enemy's camp is pitched on our native soil; the time for action has come; let us drive him before us, as our fathers were wont to do." By such short-sighted importunity (use *ago*),⁵ he compelled his colleague to order the army to prepare for battle.

¹p. 45, 4; p. 157, c. ²p. 17, 1. ³p. 8, 2. ⁴p. 118, 5. ⁵157, c.

EXERCISE XXXI.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 1 and 2).

That spring, he moved his army earlier than usual¹ from its winter quarters. The Gauls began to assail him with secret plots,² and he had constantly to protect himself against them. They saw that their country had become the seat of the war, and it was not pleasing to them. However, after forming a conspiracy against him,³ they usually betrayed it; they are characterized by great fickleness.⁴ These attacks (*insidiae*), at any rate (*certe*), were one reason for his moving early. A second reason was the rumor of the arrival (use *vb.*; 157, c.) of the consul at Arretium.⁵

¹p. 77, 5. ²p. 74, 5. ³p. 49, 9; 157, c. ⁴p. 62, 1. ⁵p. 83, 4.

EXERCISE XXXII.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 1 and 2; review exercise, to be done without the book).

The march lay (use *sum*; 170, 8) across a swamp, which the water had completely covered. The guides went first; then followed the veterans; then, in the centre, came the Gauls; the Numidians marched last and closed the column. No hardship was wanting. They could not halt, because the mud was so deep. There was no

dry land on which (110, 6) they could stretch their weary bodies when seeking a little repose ; they had to pile (45, 4) the baggage in the water and lie on that ; or else¹ they had to find a bed on a heap of cattle, many of which had fallen all along the route. Lack of sleep killed many ; this they had to endure for four days and three nights.² The chief himself could hardly stand the inclemency of the weather and even lost the use of one of his eyes.

¹ omit. ² p. 86, 2.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 3 and 4).

No sooner¹ had he cleared the swamp and pitched his camp than he ascertained, through the instrumentality of² his scouts, all that it was for his advantage to ascertain. It was quite clear that the enemy would not remain inactive, and that they felt it a personal (use *suus*) dishonor that³ the Carthaginians should be roving through Italy, besieging their towns, and wasting their land with fire and sword and all the horrors of war. The enemy's general, he ascertained,⁴ was a man of the most spirited temper, and rather prone to precipitate action ; and good fortune had fed his natural recklessness with success in war. All this showed quite clearly that he would not wait for his colleague, but would order the army to attack⁵ immediately.

¹ p. 102, 4. ² p. 75, 5, note 1. ³ inf. ; p. 4 and 55, 1. ⁴ p. 138, 4. ⁵ p. 16, 1, note.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 3 and 4 ; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Reaching¹ the lake at sundown, they pitched their camp at the very mouth of the pass, and next day entered the defile. They saw some of the enemy in front of them, but they did not know that others had taken up their position in the rear and over-head ; and that, in fact (use *atque* ; 201, a) they were completely surrounded. A thick mist from the lake now settled down upon the pass. Between the hills and the lake is a narrow plain, and on this the line was drawn up ; but before a shout² arose or a sword was drawn,

the enemy began to advance in even order upon them. At the same time, fighting began² on both flanks, where the enemy's horse had taken up their position.

¹ p. 49, 10. ² p. 38, 2.

EXERCISE XXXV.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 5 and 6).

The general, in view of the alarm,¹ showed considerable resolution,² and encouraged the troops to stand their ground; but the word of command was drowned by the shouts of panic (173, 3; 48, 6); and so thick was the mist that the eye could not see which way they ought to turn (Ex. IX., note 1). Some writers state that an earthquake occurred at the same time as the battle; but, if it did (use *flo*), none of the combatants observed it; such was the din and confusion that the use of both eye and ear were snatched from them. And now the battle had raged fiercely³ for three hours, and it was clear that there was no hope of safety. Then their courage failed them, and all turned to flight. Some rushed into the lake and were drowned; others, swimming back to land, were cut down by the cavalry; a few made a sally, and cut a path through the enemy with the sword.

¹ p. 118, 6, *f*. ² use *adv.* ³ p. 38, 2, note.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 5 and 6; review exercise, to be done without the book).

His words on this occasion were as follows (use *hic*):—"You are shut in, soldiers, on all sides; on your flank are the lake and the mountain; in front and rear are the enemy's lines. But the less fear you have, the less danger there will be (118, 5); you must win your way out, not by prayers to Heaven, but by strength and courage." After this exhortation, he put spurs to his horse, and dashed into the thick of the enemy, wherever² he saw his men hard pressed. But it was soon clear that there was no hope of escape. The tide of battle³ turned against him; and when the sun had dispelled the mist and cleared the sky, it revealed to mountain and lake utter ruin and a Roman army cut to pieces upon the plain.

¹ p. 157, *c*; p. 49, 8. ² p. 107, 5. ³ p. 173, 3; use *inclino*,

EXERCISE XXXVII.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 7-9).

Such was the celebrated defeat of Rome¹ beside Lake Trasimenus. The loss on both sides was enormous, and many died of their wounds after the battle. The Roman prisoners of war were thrown into chains. The Carthaginian dead were buried; the body of the consul, who had fallen on the field, was carefully sought for by the victors, but it could not be found. Although successful in point of issue, the battle had not been an easy one to win for the enemy. A rest of several days had to be given the soldiers to recruit. They were still exhausted from their march across the swamp. After their rest, they marched straight into Umbria; and, after laying waste the land, attacked some of its towns. A successful resistance² was offered by them to the victorious Carthaginian, who was thus able to form a guess as to what he had to hope for³ from attacking the towns of Italy.

¹ p. 162, 4. ² p. 157, c; p. 38, 3. ³ see Livy, Exercise IX., 1.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 7-9; review exercise, to be done without the book).

When word of the disaster reached Rome, a multitude of men and women rushed tumultuously into the market-place, inquiring of all they met the meaning¹ of the rumors which had been brought to the city. At first they could get no definite information²; but at last, when they had waited all day long for the news, it was announced that the consul had been killed; that few of the army survived and that these were either scattered in flight or prisoners of war. The terror was overwhelming;³ no one knew what to hope for or what to fear (24, d). The senate-house was thronged; and the senate sat for several days from daylight to sunset, considering what was to be done.⁴ After the loss of such an army, there were no forces with which resistance⁵ could be offered to the victors.

¹ say *what were*; p. 30, 1. ² p. 161, 1. ³ say *very great*; Livy, Ex. 3, 2. ⁴ p. 30, 1; p. 45, 4. ⁵ p. 157, c; p. 38, 3.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 10-12).

Then, and not till then (*tum demum*) Rome was taught a lesson by her misfortunes, and she sought out a leader of courage¹, firmness, and discretion. This was Fabius who was called (*appello*), because of his sober counsels, "Cunctator." Having brought² the political condition of the country before the House, they voted that Fabius was to take such action as seemed to him to be for the advantage of the nation. He said that he would enrol two new legions and that he would appoint a day for a general rendezvous. On the day appointed, the new legions assembled at Tibur.³ Some of these soldiers he sent to act as a garrison⁴ for the city; with the others he advanced against the enemy. Hannibal at once began to sound his temper and to test his firmness. He wasted the land of the allies⁵ and burned their dwellings; then he would suddenly decamp⁶ and retire from sight or send an envoy to announce⁷ that he would meet the Romans in the field.

¹p. 62, 1 and 2. ²p. 49, 9; use *respublica*. ³p. 82, 2. ⁴p. 69, 8.
⁵p. 48, 4. ⁶*imperf. ind.* ⁷p. 109, 2.

EXERCISE XL.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 10-12; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Meantime a despatch was brought to Rome stating that certain merchantmen carrying corn to the army in Spain had been captured by the enemy. Without delay, orders were sent to¹ the consul to man all the ships in Ostia with seamen and marines and to go at once in pursuit. The order was obeyed; and a large number of men were put on board the ships, which at once set out in pursuit of the enemy's fleet. They had also orders to protect the coast of Italy. The fleet afforded a fine spectacle as it sailed (*navigo*) from harbor; it showed that the state had not yet forgotten to protect² her armies and to afford complete safety to both citizen and ally.

¹p. 157, c. ²p. 18, 3.

EXERCISE XLI.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 13-15).

He made the following representations (use *dico*) to the officers: "The enemy has long¹ been laying waste our lovely fields, storming our cities and colonies, and burning our villas. He is now by gifts and promises winning over our allies, sending men to announce² that they will be under a juster rule³ than ours. We can see him, before our eyes, shut in by hills and streams on every side, and his cavalry are far off on a foray. Why do we hesitate? Let us engage him before the horse can return (104, 8); let us cut his army to pieces before they can retreat. He must return⁴ by the same pass by which he came; he has therefore no hope of escape; we can crush him as he leads the army back over the heights. Let us shake off this yoke from our necks. The war must be brought to an end by courage and action and not by timid prayers and cowardly counsels."

¹p. 34, 3. ²p. 109, 2. ³p. 157, c. ⁴p. 45, 4.

EXERCISE XLII.

Turn into indirect narration, after *dixit*, the speech of Ex. XLI.

EXERCISE XLIII.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 16-20).

Next day at dawn, word was brought that the enemy's fleet was stationed off the mouth of the river, but that the seamen and marines were strolling upon the shore, without any expectation¹ either of an enemy or of a battle. Orders were at once given to our fleet to weigh anchor and cruise along the shore towards the river-mouth. No sooner² did the men in the look-outs (169, 3)—these are towers that they are said to use against pirates—see us approaching, than they despatched a horseman with orders that all their men should embark without delay and put to sea. But, when word came that our fleet was close at hand, great confusion arose,³ and the marines could hardly seize their arms, go on board and put to sea, before our ships were drawn up in line off the mouth of the river. At the

first onset, two of the enemy's ships were captured and four were sunk. The rest immediately turned to flight, and were beached by their crews. Of these latter we dragged several out to sea. By this battle we got command of the whole coast and secured much booty.

¹p. 157, c; p. 140, l. ²p. 102, 4. ³p. 38, 2.

EXERCISE XLIV.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 16-20; review exercise, to be done without the book).

And now the road was blocked, and (48, 4 and 7) he saw that he would have to cross the mountains. Before setting out, however, he devised the following ruse. He had in camp a number of oxen, which he had taken from the country people; these he decided to drive ahead of the column, after tying torches to their horns.¹ In the dusk of the evening, he decamped; and when² he reached the foot of the hill, the torches fastened to the horns of the oxen were lighted, and the animals driven up the hills. The whole forest seemed to be in a blaze. When the enemy, who had taken up their position on the top of the hill, saw what seemed to be fire-breathing animals rushing in every direction, at first they were rooted to the spot with astonishment; then, leaving³ their post, they turned and⁴ fled. And so the whole column was led across the ridge.

¹p. 52, 6. ²p. 107, 3. ³p. 49, 10. ⁴p. 48, 4.

EXERCISE XLV.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 21-24).

In the absence of the dictator,¹ a battle had been fought, in which, though the loss had been nearly equal on both sides, the Romans had the credit of victory. Hannibal had sent out two-thirds of his forces to forage, under the idea that² the enemy would not venture to meet him in the field. But the dictator had gone to Rome, and the Roman army was at once marched down by its general from the heights and their camp pitched in the plain. Hannibal threw forward a body of horse to take possession of³ a piece of rising ground that commanded the Roman camp, at the same time

moving⁴ his own camp two miles nearer the enemy. But next day the Romans dislodged the Carthaginian horse, and moved their own camp to the knoll. So Hannibal had to retire⁵ to his former position, and carry on the war, for a time, in accordance with the tactics of Fabius, with more caution than spirit.⁶

¹p. 52, 5. ²p. 157, c. ³p. 109, 2. ⁴make a co-ord. vb.; 48, 5. ⁵p. 45, 4. ⁶p. 78, 7.

EXERCISE XLVI.

(Based on *Livy*, B. 22, cc. 21-24; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Two circumstances seemed to enhance the dictator's unpopularity. The first had its origin (use *orior*; 32, 1) in the cunning of Hannibal and in the following manner. Word was brought to that illustrious general (187, 1, end), when he was spreading devastation in the neighborhood of the city with fire and sword, that the dictator had a farm there. The cunning chief ordered his soldiery to abstain from violence while on this estate. All other dwellings in the vicinity were either burned or levelled to the ground; but the dictator's barns and other buildings were unharmed. It seemed as if some agreement¹ had been arrived at between the two chiefs. The second circumstance was as follows: Money had long been owing by Fabius to Hannibal, for the ransom of some Roman captives. The business had been frequently canvassed in the senate, but the money had not been voted. Fabius had not consulted the House in the matter before the agreement as to the ransom had been made with the enemy; the senate wanted to show him, accordingly, that he ought to wait for their sanction before taking action in so important an affair.

¹p. 157, c.

EXERCISE XLVII.

(Based on *Livy*, B. 22, cc. 25-29).

All this Hannibal saw with delight. He saw that the bill was carried; that the command of the dictator had been divided; and that the command of the master of horse was now equal to that of the dictator's. He knew that, up to this point, reason had ruled in

the enemy's camp ; and he saw that now recklessness had been set free from prison. At first he could hardly put credence in the report ; but when he saw that the rumor was true, and that there was no obstacle¹ now to bar his way,² he decided at once what steps had to be taken to entrap the rash Roman into an ambushade. Nothing escaped him. The information¹ which he did not get from deserters, he got from his own scouts. Between the two hostile camps lay a valley, which, at first sight, seemed useless for laying an ambush ; but it really contained rocks and recesses in which five thousand men could lie hid. This valley he selected to carry out (*exsequor*) the object he had in view.

¹p. 157, c. ²p. 173, 3.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

(Based on *Livy*, B. 22, cc. 25-29 ; review exercise, to be done without the book).

And now the day was drawing near for submitting the bill to the assembly of the people. The proposal was (it seemed) agreeable to the commons ; but it lacked the support of the better classes, none of whom had sufficient courage to come forward and recommend the measure.¹ Of those who had attained to offices of state, one man alone was found who ventured to take such a step. This was a man, Terentius Varro by name, who had been born not merely in a humble station, but positively in a mean one. He had come into notice by declaiming in the forum, and by attacking the reputation of better men than himself. And he fancied that he would now gain favor with the people by advocating such a bold proposal as this. In this he showed no inconsiderable cunning.²

¹p. 187, 1, end. ²use adj.

EXERCISE XLIX.

(Based on *Livy*, B 22, cc. 29-33).

Meanwhile the enemy had wrested a victory from the other consul. The latter had been cruising about the coast of Sardinia and Corsica with a fleet of one hundred and twenty sail, when he

suddenly formed the resolution (use *videor*) of making a descent upon Africa. He accordingly crossed over and, disembarking his troops on that continent, began to burn and plunder, just as if there were no people in the place.¹ No enemy closed with us; but, when we had scattered and were straggling in every direction, we suddenly fell into an ambuscade and were surrounded. Hearing the shouts of panic and seeing confusion reigning² everywhere, the admiral (*consul*) advanced with a few seamen to our relief.³ The enemy at first sounded a retreat; then, facing about,⁴ they drove us back to our ships. The slaughter was considerable, and we lost about a thousand men.

¹p. 117, 3, *b*. ²p. 173, 3; 157, *c*. ³p. 69, 8. ⁴p. 49, 10.

EXERCISE L.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 29-33; review exercise, to be done without the book).

His language¹ on that occasion was to the following effect (*ita*):—
 “We have come here to thank you, comrades, for the help you brought us yesterday; we should like you to know (24, *c*) that, if we have nothing else, we have grateful hearts. You appeared to us in our bewilderment, as if² you had dropped from the sky. Consider us worthy to fight once more (*rursus*) by your side. Let us learn obedience; the man who cannot command, should yield obedience to good advice.³ This is what we must school⁴ our hearts to do. Let us join our camp to yours and fight once more under the auspices of your leader. I see that, though our commands are equal, he is my superior both in courage and good fortune. The whole army wishes to thank him for his care and assistance. We will carry on the war hereafter on his tactics.”

¹p. 157, *c*. ²p. 117, 3, *b*. ³p. 48, 6. ⁴p. 173, 3.

EXERCISE LI.

Turn into indirect narration the speech of Exercise L.

EXERCISE LII.

(Based on *Livy*, B. 22, cc. 34-38).

Then came the elections for the appointing of consuls; but only one was chosen, a man of plebeian origin, named Terentius Varro. He had never held the office before, and it was thought by many that such an important magistracy should not be conferred upon a new man.¹ The commons, however, had carried the day and he was appointed consul, at a crisis when a man of courage and vigor seemed to be called for. The senate induced Aemilius Paulus, after a long and vigorous opposition on his part, to become a candidate for the remaining consulate. All the other candidates retired, and he was elected. Being (use *quum*; 106, 2) antagonistic to the commons, it seemed likely² that he would offer no small opposition³ to Varro.

¹p. 45, 4. ²p. 53, 1; 55, 5, note. ³p. 157, c.

EXERCISE LIII.

(Based on *Livy*, B. 22, cc. 34-38; review exercise, to be done without the book).

It was on this occasion that the king received a vote of thanks from the senate. He had felt bitterly the defeat of his allies, and wished to assist them by any means in his power. Accordingly, he sent his fleet to Ostia to carry wheat and barley to Rome. With it was an envoy who was to say to the senate that the king was still their firm and faithful ally, and to beg that they would accept his gifts. He said that, while his kingdom had anything at all, his allies should never want supplies. He added that he felt more admiration for them in adversity than in prosperity; that, though an armed enemy had his home in the very vitals of the country, Rome had carried on the war with the greatest courage, and had fought, if not always with success, at least with spirit. The answer of the senate was as follows:—"Your conduct has afforded us the greatest pleasure.¹ Your offer of support (use *quod* and *polliceor*), if in the public interest, we will accept; we thank you in the name of both the senate and commons of this country."

¹use adj.

EXERCISE LIV.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 39-42).

When Hannibal saw what had happened,¹ he was filled (use *afficio*) with joy. He saw that one of the consuls was mad. He knew that the plan used by Fabius was the only one for carrying on the war ; that, by sitting still, the Romans would conquer him, because he had no money and no supplies. But now he knew that Fortune would soon give the mad consul into his hands. In the first engagement between them, the Carthaginian loss was greater than that of the Romans. The latter were victorious and would have followed² the Carthaginians to their camp, if Paulus had not offered opposition³ to such a course.⁴ Varro was indignant, exclaiming :—"Why are you letting them slip from your hands? The war can be brought to a close if you do not hang back."

¹p. 30, l. ²p. 123, III., b. ³p. 157, c. ⁴omit, as implied ; words not strictly necessary to the sense are omitted in Latin ; 187, 1, end.

EXERCISE LV.

(Based on Livy, B. 22, cc. 39-42 ; review exercise, to be done without the book).

At break of day, word was brought¹ to the Roman host that the enemy had abandoned his camp, leaving (*co-ord. vb.*) all the tents standing. The soldiery at once ordered an advance.¹ "Let us go in pursuit," they said ; "let us see what plunder there is to be got in this camp." Paulus kept exclaiming that they ought² to exercise caution and foresight ; and he threw forward a squadron of horse to reconnoitre. They saw the tents standing open, and gold and silver thrown carelessly along the streets of the camp. But they were certain that it was the enemy's intention to surprise and attack the Roman army while engaged in plundering the camp. They brought back word to this effect³ to the army.

¹p. 157, c. ²p. 45, 4. ³adv. ; notice the frequent use of such nouns in Eng. : Cf. in spite of (*tamen*), in consequence of (*ob*), in return for (*pro*), in accordance with (*ex, secundum*), &c.

EXERCISES ON CICERO.

EXERCISE I.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, §§ 1-6).

Gentlemen of the jury.² Before I begin the defence¹ of my client,² I will say a few words in my own. The prosecution have found fault with me for undertaking this case. They charge that it is inconsistent with³ strict morality, that it is inconsistent in one who was himself the author of a measure dealing with bribery and corruption at elections (*ambitus*), to undertake the defence of any man charged with that very crime. This criticism—I do not deny it⁴—affects me deeply; and, at the request of my friends, I will try to justify to you the reasonableness⁵ of my course and show that it is quite consistent with the claims of duty. In the first place, who ought most naturally to undertake the defence of the first magistrate of the country but the man who has just been first magistrate himself? In the second place, as to my having passed a law dealing with bribery, why should that prevent me from undertaking this defence? If I defended bribery and corruption,⁶ I should be guilty of wrongdoing; but I deny that any offence has been committed in contravention of the law, and I pray that your judgment, gentlemen, may coincide with mine.

¹p. 157, c. ²p. 88, 4. ³p. 59, 2. ⁴p. 138, 4. ⁵32, 1. ⁶p. 123, III.

EXERCISE II.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, §§ 1-6; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Insight into events transpiring in the present and foresight with regard to the future, are two necessary qualifications¹ of the highest statesmanship.² And I certainly do not think that any man without such qualifications³ should be invested with the highest office in the gift of the people. A statesman ought also to possess practised ability in public speaking, not only that he may defend himself against the attacks of his enemies, but also that he may recommend his policy to the country. Again it is of the utmost consequence to⁴

the peace, tranquillity, and safety of the state that he should guide his course in accordance with the precedents established by our fathers. On the other hand, he would be guilty of misconduct,⁵ if he did not weigh carefully even the smallest claims of duty, and discharge the functions of his office in accordance with the strictest morality and the strongest religious sanctions.

¹p. 59, 2. ²p. 162, 3. ³p. 161, 2. ⁴p. 66, 4. ⁵p. 157, c.

EXERCISE III.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, §§ 7-12).

This is the reason, gentlemen, why I am engaged in the defence of my client (use *idcirco quod*). In the first place, he is my friend; and it would argue¹ the greatest lack of principle to be unfaithful to a friend. But I would defend him, even if he were a perfect stranger to me. I am not a free man in this matter. As a reward for my activity as an advocate, I have received the highest office in the state. I cannot therefore refuse to bestow my labor freely in defending anyone whose life is in peril. To refuse to do so would be the height of ingratitude.¹ The members of the prosecution are also my friends, and I shall not forget it; I will pay in full the debt due to their friendship for me. But I understand they feel annoyance² because I have undertaken this defence and they charge me with having forgotten my relation to them. With regard to that matter, this is the view I hold:³ No one is bound to refuse, at the request of one friend, to defend the life of another. I cannot think that they could be so unjust as to demand it. But if they do, they ought not to obtain their request.⁴

¹p. 59, 2. ²p. 66, 3. ³p. 157, c. ⁴p. 45, 4.

EXERCISE IV.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, §§ 7-12; review exercise, to be done without the book).

It is always a principle with the prosecution, if their case is weak, to abuse the opposite party. And this is what they are doing now. They accuse my client of having visited the East for the purpose of

gratifying a love of luxurious pleasure. If this charge were true,¹ it would be a most serious one ; as it is false, to make it at all (177, note), argues² great heartlessness on the part of the prosecution. No young man with any sense of duty could have avoided visiting the East when my client did. He went there to serve a campaign under the command of his own father. If he had not gone, he would have incurred the suspicion of cowardice and of lack of enterprise. His willingness³ to serve under his father was in keeping with his character for filial affection. His living to share in that father's triumph was consistent with his usual good fortune. May⁴ he be no less fortunate now, gentlemen, in his struggle to maintain his civil rights! Certainly nothing could be more frivolous than this criticism of his private life.

¹p. 123, III. ²p. 59, 2. ³p. 157, c. ⁴p. 25, 2.

EXERCISE V.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, §§ 13-18).

The following are the qualifications in reliance upon which a candidate may sue for the highest office in the gift of the people: Good birth, integrity, and energy. When he has these qualifications, he may consider a firm foundation laid for his canvass. It is well for him if he has all three ; if not,¹ he must not assume that the doors² of office are closed to him, or that he will be left in obscurity. Many a man, who has received from his ancestors no distinction either of birth or name, has broken through the barriers raised by the nobility against him and defeated opponents of the highest merit and the greatest influence. If only he is loyal and honest, if no extravagance can be laid at his door,² no love of pleasure, no riotous living, he will be counted worthy by the people of obtaining the highest honors. In this country, both in ancient and in modern times, there has always been a fair field open to men of true merit, in which they could come to the front and receive recognition.

¹p. 121, 6. ²p. 173, 3.

EXERCISE VI.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, §§ 13-18; review exercise, to be done without the book).

I did not expect, gentlemen, that my client¹ would be reproached with being a political upstart. Such a charge savors² both of vehement accusation and malevolent abuse.³ If you claim that no one but the members of the old nobility is entitled to be regarded as noble, you will bring on another secession. In any comparison of rank, my client's family will not fall behind the noblest families in the country. It is a family known to the student of literature and to the antiquarian; but its praises are constantly sounded by men of our own day. My client's father held a high office of state and, after filling that office, won distinguished military successes in the field, and handed down an illustrious name to his son. But, apart from all this, would not an avenue of distinction have stood open, as our ancestors wished, to merit as well as to nobility? My own father was a member of the middle class; yet I managed by my unaided efforts to be elected to the highest office in the gift of the people, without anyone ever daring to apply the title of political upstart to me.⁴

¹p. 88, 4. ²p. 59, 2. ³p. 162, 3. ⁴p. 139, 1.

EXERCISE VII.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, §§ 19-23).

Of all professions, the military profession is the best calculated for winning popular favor. The soldier's life is a hard one. He watches late, but is wakened by the bugle before daybreak. He marches off at the head of his army to reach the rendezvous (say *the point he is marching for*) in time. He engages the enemy and often fights hand to hand. He repels hostile attacks and prevents (*caveo ne*) the capture¹ of our cities. It is he who extends our frontiers, compels universal obedience to our rule,¹ and wins imperishable glory for the empire. All other arts nestle in safety under the aegis of the art of war; can anyone doubt then that this art will confer dignity and honor upon a commander who is engaged in carrying on an important war? Are you not laboring under a

mistake when you assert that military distinction will harm rather than assist a political candidate? This nation, at all events, has always considered its great soldiers as every way worthy of the highest offices in its gift.

¹p. 157, c.

EXERCISE VIII.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, §§ 19-23; review exercise, to be done without the book).

The lawyer's life, gentlemen, is a hard one. He sits up late; but he is wakened at cock-crow. His whole day is full of incessant labor. He gives advice to those who come to consult him; he gives written opinions to others; he is eternally laying actions, or in some other way serving the interest of his client. In short, he is at the beck and call of everybody, has to put up with their folly and insolence, and pocket their ill-humor. If the professions and pursuits that are calculated to gain popular favor are to be compared, then the law will be found to be superior to many others. A man, who is always ready to serve others, keeps his merits before the public eye. Surely that is a great advantage.¹ If the lawyer were long away from the courts,² you have no idea how it would injure him; he must, therefore, make his home in them; this is the only way that he can become known.

¹p. 157, c. ²p. 123, II.

EXERCISE IX.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, cc. 11-13).

This is the reason, gentlemen, why the orator's faculty takes precedence¹ of that of the lawyer, as regards the attainment of (ad) office. This is the reason why the orator is so much admired. Many in consequence wish to become orators; but, failing in their endeavors, come down to the legal profession. Many, after long practice, make but little proficiency in public speaking; very few have reached eminence in it—so difficult is eloquence of attainment. What dignity and influence it carries with it! It is directed to swaying the minds of juries, to confirming or overturning the decrees of senates and nations, to quelling the incendiarism (furor) of

demagogues, to guiding angry mobs, to stemming the tide² of corruption, and to instituting salutary regulations by law. Is it to be wondered at that so many men of genius should consider the cultivation of oratory a great achievement?

¹p. 157, c. ²p. 173, 3.

EXERCISE X.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, cc. 11-13; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Law is a paltry science chiefly concerned with trifles like single letters and punctuation marks. It was admired in the past on this account, namely, because the days on which actions could be brought were a secret¹ known to very few. When that mystery was divulged, the science sank at once into contempt. It is full of prolix formulas and absurd forms of words, altogether devoid of common sense and put together with this object by the lawyers, namely, that the science might not be accessible to all, but that they themselves might have a finger² in every lawsuit. It has abandoned the spirit of equity and clings to the letter, and it is based on fictions invented by the mind of man.³

¹p. 32, 1. ²p. 173, 3. ³p. 165, 1, b.

EXERCISE XI.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, cc. 14-16).

Is my client to be condemned, gentlemen, because he is a soldier? You and I hold a very different opinion.¹ We maintain that the profession of arms is a most honorable and a most useful one, and not in any respect deserving of ridicule. To it, to say nothing else, this country owes its pre-eminence among the nations (use *on account of which* and a vb.), and our cities their freedom from the dangers of storm and siege. In time of war all other professions and pursuits sink into insignificance in comparison (use *prae*). We send out our greatest men to conduct wars against other nations and the records of ancient history assure us that our generals have often been elected to the first offices in the state—so high is the estimate which the country sets upon its soldiers. But my client is not only a soldier, he is a good soldier;

and on many a hard-fought field his courage, his activity, and his discretion have been a shining mark. He has defeated hostile fleets, crushed armies, defended your provinces and allies, and extended the resources and military strength of the country. Consider the distinction and achievements of your great commanders, and do not forget that it is our present object to defend a man of the same character as they.

¹p. 157, c.

EXERCISE XII.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, cc. 17-20).

But what considerations,¹ gentlemen, do weigh with the people at an election? What qualifications are of advantage to a seeker after office in his candidature? Men of rank and men of ability have often been beaten in the competition when there was no possibility (use *possum*; III, c., note) of discovering the reason for such a result. But, in the first place, a candidate who is to head the poll must have people's good word and good will, and these he must secure by good nature, justice, and honesty. Let him, therefore, be at the service of his friends; let him conciliate kindness, and avoid shocking the feelings of anyone. In the second place, he must have influence. Many men prefer a candidate who has influence to one who has none; and for one who affects (*dico*) to despise this, the enthusiasm of friends is very apt to be impaired. In the next place, generosity is a great aid towards gaining office. The populace take great delight² in the display of munificence, and nothing is more pleasing to them and more influential than credit for this kind of thing.

¹p. 161, 2. ²p. 157, c.

EXERCISE XIII.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, cc. 17-20; review exercise, to be done without the book).

What a difference there is in the destinies of men! One man Fortune permits (*sino*) to live in the midst of pleasure; on another she imposes the severest labors. One man owes to chance ability, wisdom, rank, good fortune; his country gives him an

opportunity of showing his integrity, good nature, and generosity ; and he is raised by the enthusiasm of admiring friends to the highest positions in the country. Another man owes nothing to chance, and Fortune always seems to be opposed to him. He has no luck, no ability, no rank, no influence, nothing, in short, in which people take delight and by which they are specially attracted. Can anyone wonder then that their countrymen should refuse to give such men a place of honor at an election ?

EXERCISE XIV.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, cc. 21-24).

To this is added the fact that my able friend does not know how to run an election ; this I have frequently remarked in his own hearing.¹ It often indeed (*enimvero*) happens that a candidate shows both courage and magnanimity and yet shocks the kindly feelings of friends and supporters and gives an advantage² to his opponent. If men see a candidate down-hearted and dejected, if they see that he has lost hope of his own success, their ardor is damped³ and they vote for some one else. And this was the mistake that my friend here made ;⁴ he simply met dissatisfaction and defeat half-way. Turning aside⁵ from his canvass, he began to collect evidence against his opponent, threatening (*Caes. Ex. 40, 2*) to prosecute him for bribery. He showed in this way that he had lost confidence in himself and in his friends. The consequence was that (*quare*) some of the latter transferred their aid and influence to his opponent, and others reserved themselves for the trial. I know myself by experience the difficulty of contesting an election and⁶ I have learned that to damp the enthusiasm of friends is simply to block the path of success.

¹p. 52, 5. ²p. 157, c. ³p. 173, 3. ⁴p. 161, 1. ⁵p. 49, 10. ⁶p. 48, 4.

EXERCISE XV.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, cc. 21-24 ; review exercise, to be done without the book).

What we ought to ask for is a law against bribery ; and there is no possibility¹ of the House refusing our demand, unless² they wish

to put a weapon against themselves into the hands of their enemies. All loyal men³ should feel indignant to think that this evil is a standing (use *semper*) menace to the country, and should lend us their zealous offices in driving it forth from amongst us. I have shown that no one man is equal to the work of carrying any law ; let all then unite in repelling this common danger, and give us a (*is*) law which⁴ will check arrogance and crime. Let its provisions be of the strictest and the penalty nothing less than banishment. You say that it will cause commotion⁵ among the poor. No matter (use *at*). My conclusion is⁵ that bribery is paving the way to calamity and that, unless we apply the axe to the root of (*omit*) the evil, madness and discord and secret hatred will soon be stalking (*versor*) in our midst.

¹p. 15, 5. ²p. 120, 3. ³*optimus quisque*. ⁴p. 110, 5. ⁵p. 157, c.

EXERCISE XVI.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, cc. 25-27).

Who can ever tell the anxiety, misery, and hardship involved in a life of ambition? (say *how much is*). In their greed of honor and wealth, to what depths¹ will men not descend? Candidates, who have never before been guilty of any delinquency,² have in the bitter struggle for office been led to wrong even a friend, and to engage in political feuds with men possessed of every virtue. We all remember a noble youth, who should have been a tower¹ of protection to all, accusing an honorable friend of corruption in the courts, simply because this man had been a competitor of his own. In lust of office, and to secure his own election, many a man has made himself the standard-bearer of conspirators and political outlaws and thus become a menace to the safety of the country. Is it to be wondered at, then, that anyone should turn aside from personal animosities, hatreds, and ambitious pursuits, and betake himself joyfully to a life of peaceful tranquility?

¹p. 173, 3. ²p. 161, 1.

EXERCISE XVII.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, cc. 25-27; review exercise, to be done without the book).

You remember, gentlemen, that, on hearing these facts, the House on the 21st of March resolved, on my motion, that the election should not be held upon the day they had originally wished to hold it. All the loyal party (*bont*) voted for the motion; they were thoroughly roused and feared that the country had been brought to a dangerous pass. Next day I demanded in a crowded House what action was to be taken in the premises. You recollect that I entered a brief protest and complained that so many honorable members¹ had refused to accept my story.² I declared that these had inspired us all with terror and with despair of the public safety. I said that I had long known there was conspiracy (162,3) in our midst and had often stated that there was not the remotest possibility³ of discovering who the nefarious parties were⁴ unless members believed the evidence laid before them. And yet that many in the House—and those, too, men who had never been opposed in spirit to the loyal party—had, for some reason or other, refused to lend credence to the disclosures I had made.

¹p. 3, 8. ²use vb. ³p. 15, 5. ⁴p. 30, 1 and 3.

EXERCISE XVIII.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, cc. 28-30).

But if Nature herself had given him distinguished virtues, if she had fashioned him a great man in all noble qualities, education had done no less. A man naturally of the highest ability and integrity, he also possessed eloquence and culture; and everyone admits that these high gifts and attainments carried wonderful weight¹ in a court of justice. History indeed tells us² that he delivered a speech in behalf of an innocent man who was accused of crime, and rescued him from his accusers who were bent on his destruction. It is said that he even induced the prosecution to abandon their resolution and yield to entreaty. He said that it was the part³ of good men to pity and pardon; that these were the attributes of God himself; if they destroyed the prisoner at the bar, they would

be filled with remorse⁴; let them, therefore, look forward to the future and not establish such an unjust principle to their own destruction (say *against themselves*).

¹p. 173, 3. ²say *it is handed down to memory*. ³p. 59, 2. ⁴p. 66, 3.

EXERCISE XIX.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, cc. 28-30; review exercise, to be done without the book).

The Stoic system is rather too harsh and severe to have much weight with the unlettered multitude. In fact its principles and precepts are of too¹ exalted a kind to serve as a rule of conduct for any but the greatest minds.² Its able and learned teachers do not attempt to reform and influence men; they wish to *change* them. "Do not be angry," they say; "do not yield to entreaty; do not feel compassion; do not grant pardon or indulgence." A man professes the Stoic philosophy: if he was a fool, he becomes wise; if he was a beggar, he becomes rich; if a slave, he becomes a king. But such doctrines neither nature nor truth will admit. If compassion³ and leniency are crimes, the good and bad cannot be distinguished; if all offences are equal, then to kill unnecessarily a barn-yard fowl is as atrocious an act as to throttle a man.

¹p. 111, c. ²say 'that any but (*nisi*) the greatest should live by them.' ³p. 157, c

EXERCISE XX.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, cc. 31-34).

Within the memory of our fathers, nay within our own remembrance, bribery at elections was not deemed a very reprehensible act. Candidates felt no self-reproach¹ in buying supporters; the poor man felt none in selling his support; the public at large expressed no surprise, indignation, or complaint;² and statutes and acts of parliament, intended to punish the offence, were either opposed by the official class (*nobiles*), or, if passed, had a mild construction put upon them by the courts. It is not, therefore, very wonderful, if the offence was once a common one. But time has changed all that. Bribery is now seen and declared to be not

only unnecessary, unjust, and illegal, but a grave offence, to be punished by fine and incarceration. And there can be little doubt that the new law is a salutary one and likely to prove a blessing³ to the country.

¹p. 66, 3. ²p. 157, c. ³p. 69, 8.

EXERCISE XXI.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, cc. 35-37).

Gentlemen of the jury,—It is of the utmost consequence¹ to the country that public offices should be awarded upon the ground of merit alone. I loudly protest² that it is not right, that it is most immoral, that men's minds should be influenced or cajoled in this matter by money, pleasure, or any other consideration. Why, in short, should a candidate canvass anyone for his support? Should he not rather wait until he receives an invitation from the people to take the helm of state and to place himself in authority over them? It is no slight task that he is undertaking. He is engaging to do work and encounter peril for the public good; his thoughts will have to be on the administration of the government night and day; and he will have to face strong opposition, countermine the plots of the disloyal, and keep the country safe from danger.

¹p. 66, 4. ²p. 166, c.

EXERCISE XXII.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Murena*, cc. 38-41).

Exalted political station¹ is exposed to almost universal envy,¹ though why it should be so I fail to see; it ought rather to excite universal² commiseration.³ Dangers threaten it on every side. It is at the mercy of the cabals of treason, the secret machinations of conspiracy, and the fire and sword of the public enemy. The madness of the demagogue stalks in the senate-house and the market-place, seeking to shake the government to its foundations. Those, therefore, who hold the helm of state, though seemingly⁴ the favorites of Fortune, have no light task to perform. In the interests of peace and domestic tranquility, they must make war upon the public enemy abroad and upon the enemy of order at home; they must defend the country from the evils that are continually breaking

forth, and they must safeguard the lives and property of the citizens. God grant that³ our worthy magistrates may be no less fortunate both in arms and in a civil capacity !

¹p. 162, 3. ²use *all*. ³p. 66, 3. ⁴p. 166, d. ⁵25, 2.

EXERCISE XXIII.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic I*, cc. 1 and 2).

And I am surprised, that his subsequent conduct should have shown such strange¹ inconsistency with so noble a beginning. From that day to this, he has admitted to his councils none but blackguards and traitors. Not a single act of public administration (use *respublica*) has been submitted to this House—and that, too, though he published a notice demanding our attendance.² After giving the country, by the abolition² of despotism, a solemn pledge that he desired its freedom,² he has, by means of the popular assembly, usurped absolute power for himself. He is now offering incentives² to runaway slaves to menace the safety of this city and declaring that he will bring to nothing the authority of this House.

¹omit adj. as implied ; 187, 1, end. ²p. 157, c.

EXERCISE XXIV.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic I*, cc. 1 and 2; review exercise, to be done without the book).

To the other chief of the executive I intend to move a vote of thanks in the most complimentary terms at my command, and I ask the House to support the motion and pass it without discussion. I will explain briefly the secret of my enthusiasm (use *cur* and an adj.). He has always consulted the good of the country and the interests of this House. Like a sentry at his post (173, 5) he has stood with his eye fixed upon the public administration. How noble has been his language, how elevated his sentiments ! (use *voluntas*) Thanks to him (say *through him*) we have been delivered from the dangers that menaced us. The disloyal have been punished ; civil strife has been appeased—an evil which was beginning to creep in among us and was spreading further and further every day ; the foundations of future peace, in short, have been well laid, and the yoke of slavery has been dashed from our necks.

EXERCISE XXV.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic 1*, cc. 3 and 4).

Those gentlemen, sir,¹ added certain inventions² of their own to lend an agreeable flavor³ to their news; but it was from them that I first learned the tenor of the magistrate's public address, the reading of which⁴ gave me great satisfaction, as it showed every indication of moderation. There were many dangers threatening, he explained (*dico*; 13⁸, 4); but he was not much alarmed. An understanding would be arrived at; he would guarantee that. He was buoyed up by a consciousness of his own devotion to the country and hoped to gain credit for himself and to recommend his course of action⁵ to all. With regard to the political situation, he said little. There would be a meeting of the House on the 1st and he hoped that there would be a full attendance. His intention was to repudiate all his evil counsellors and submit himself once more to your authority. He hoped to receive a general⁶ support.

¹use *patres conscripti*. ²p. 161, 1. ³p. 173, 3. ⁴p. 50, 14. ⁵use *rel.* ⁶use *all*.

EXERCISE XXVI.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic 1*, cc. 3 and 4; review exercise, to be done without the book).

On the 1st of August he arrived at Brundisium and from there crossed over to Syracuse in Sicily, to which city he made a very rapid passage.¹ Will it be matter for surprise if his stay there lasted longer than one night? What possible motive² could he have had for immediate (use *statim*) departure? The city was bound to him by the closest possible ties, and the townsmen would have protested had he dreamt² of leaving; he was staying at the house of an intimate friend who esteemed him highly on public grounds; he was waiting for a fair wind and, in any case, had he set out, he would have been driven back to the point of embarkation.¹ Was he afraid that his remaining there might have given rise to suspicion? Or that he would not be able to return to Rome in time to offer his congratulations¹ to the country?

¹p. 157, c. ²p. 173, 3.

EXERCISE XXVII.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic I*, cc. 5 and 6).

If I had been in this House when the question of peace was under consideration, I should have endeavored (*conor*) to maintain the dignity of the country and to show myself worthy of the many honorable distinctions I have received at the hands of the people. "Do you wish, gentlemen" (I should have said),² "to be suspected of cowardice and to be untrue to your high position? What possible motive can the magistrate have for bringing this matter before so thin a House? This peace is not necessary; it simply means voluntary servitude. Would to Heaven¹ we had men here like the famous Appius who—history tells us³—in spite of³ blindness and old age was carried down to the debate on the peace with Pyrrhus (use *quum*; 108, 6). He could not have been induced to support a motion which would have brought upon the country not only war but pestilence and famine as well. Such a motion I, for my part (use *ego*), will never support, not even if it were introduced by the man who first delivered this country from the despotism of kings."

¹p. 25, 2. ²p. 138, 4. ³p. 115, 11.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic I*, cc. 5 and 6; review exercise, to be done without the book).

I knew, sir, that the question of appointing a solemn thanksgiving would be brought before you; but, as I was tired after my journey and in ill-humor besides, I did not attend the meeting of senate. Attendance, indeed, on such occasions is almost optional, as the House is usually full. Further, I had no intention of speaking on the subject; I would, not unwillingly, have supported the mover of so excellent a motion. In any case (*certe*), I was not the only member absent. Why, then, was I summoned in such intemperate language by the first magistrate to attend yesterday's meeting? Why had he the audacity¹ to say in your hearing² that he would send public employees to tear down my residence, a residence erected at the expense of the state? No misdemeanor

can possibly merit treatment like this, and I regret very much that such severity could have received the sanction of your approval (use *probo*). It was not to enable him to trample upon³ the constitution that the people raised this man to the summit of greatness. May Heaven forgive him !

¹p. 157, c. ²p. 52, 4. ³p. 173, 3.

EXERCISE XXIX.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic I*, cc. 7 and 8).

At a mistake, sir, of this kind I can connive ; but I will not submit to the abrogation of the most salutary law of the ablest statesman we ever had. The law limiting our colonial governorships to two years, was an excellent one ; his judicature act is even more useful and necessary, and must not be interfered with or changed. It was submitted to the people in the popular assembly and—as the expression of the people's will—was engraved on brass. A property qualification was required, you say (use *at enim*). No doubt (*at* ; 203, f). But it met with universal¹ approbation,² notwithstanding. And, surely, in such an important matter, account should be taken not only of a man's position, but also of his property. To whom by the new law is the bench thrown open ? To common soldiers. And why ? I wish the first magistrate were here himself to inform us. Is he not calling such persons to the bench in the hope that they will not dare to give an impartial verdict ?² What an insulting distinction ! But I think he will find that he has made a mistake, and that, in proportion to a man's apparent meanness, will be his strict impartiality in pronouncing judgment.³

¹use *all*. ²157, c. ³118, 5.

EXERCISE XXX.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic I*, cc. 7 and 8 ; review exercise, to be done without the book).

He made many promises¹ in his life-time and conferred even more favors than he made promises. However² unjust or useless a promise seemed, he always kept it, entering it in his note-book in order to remember it (Caes., ex. 40, 2).

The more importunate a suppliant was, the more kindly and gladly he listened to him. Money he never made account of; and would to Heaven all he spent were still in the treasury! It was no doubt³ the price of blood; but, now that he is dead, it might be restored to its rightful owners,⁴ or, in a crisis like this, it would have been useful to the country. In a civil capacity, he enacted many useful measures, and proposed many salutary laws, the abrogation⁵ of which now would endanger the constitution. The express wishes of the people, he never treated with contempt, and he always endeavored to obtain for his measures the general⁶ sanction. For my own part, I think, and am free to affirm, that even in the palmy days of the country's history, none of our statesmen ever earned greater distinction (use adj.)

¹p. 161, 1. ²p. 115, 11. ³p. 89, 7. ⁴rel. ⁵p. 50, 14. ⁶use *all*.

EXERCISE XXXI.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic I*, cc. 9 and 10).

It is the duty,¹ sir, of every true friend of his country to point out rocks ahead² that may be avoided. We are not as yet committed in the matter; but the passing of this law will be tantamount to the rescinding of all laws, for it abrogates the laws on which the very constitution is built²—laws which are the glory of this country. In whose interest,³ therefore, is it that such a law should remain upon the statute-book? The interest of the factionist and the disloyal. Under it, prosecution for high treason will be simply an impossibility.⁴ Allowing, as it does,⁵ an appeal to the people, it renders nugatory the statute which makes banishment the penalty of conviction for treason. Allowing an appeal to the people, it holds out to persons already convicted in a court of law of using violence, an inducement to have recourse to the same violence which they have already been found guilty of using. No jury will ever venture, by finding a verdict of guilty, to expose itself to fury of a hired mob. This law then is intended as a machine for making⁶ our young men bad and factious citizens.

¹p. 59, 2. ²p. 173, 3. ³p. 66, 4. ⁴p. 15, 5. ⁵p. 177, 4, note. ⁶173, 3; use *id agitur ut*.

EXERCISE XXXII.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic I*, cc. 9 and 10; review exercise, to be done without the book).

There is perfect unanimity¹ in the public mind as to what the public safety requires. No one approves of these measures; still, the opinion¹ is universal that in the interest of peace and concord they ought to be maintained. We have, however, at least the right to remonstrate, and I do seriously deprecate such abuses. Good laws have been abrogated or invalidated; the privilege of citizenship has been conferred without the authority of the senate; state revenue has been lost by the granting of endless exemptions; the veto has been disregarded; the religious safeguards of the constitution set aside. You will say that these institutions are the follies of a by-gone age. Not so (*at*). The very existence of the country is bound up with them. If our magistrates are honest; if they will shield the country by the veto and the religious safeguards that we have received from our ancestors, we may rest in tranquility.

¹p. 157, c.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic I*, cc. 11-13.)

Would to Heaven¹ that you had taken for your model² in this matter your worthy grandfather! Do you think that he would have used arms within the city limits, even in self-defence? A man of the loftiest aims,³ his chief desire was—not unlawful authority, not lucre, not influence achieved by violent means—it was the respect and affection of his countrymen. No day dawned that did not find him conferring some gift upon his country; and he reaped the reward of right action when all classes—high and low, rich and poor—crowded to congratulate and thank him for his distinguished public services. Do you think that he would have resigned such an honorable position for money or unlawful authority? Therefore I can not pass unnoticed the mistake you are making. You know by experience what the love and respect of your fellow-citizens means, but you seem to be tired of⁴ this distinction. No one can say, however, that he has ever seen any meanness or baseness⁵ in your

character, and the country declares itself ready to forget the acts which have given offence and to lay aside all feeling of indignation (*dolor*.) She asks you to cease from hostilities against her; and, using such language,² ought she not to obtain her request?

¹ p. 25, 2. ² p. 157, c. ³ p. 161, 1. ⁴ p. 66, 3. ⁵ p. 160, 1.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic I*, cc. 11-13; review exercise, to be done without the book).

You know by experience¹ how great the satisfaction of right action is. You have received the thanks of parliament for distinguished public service. Are you already tired of such distinction? Can you lay it down with equanimity? Would to Heaven you would recall that day on which, by giving your son as a hostage for peace, you cleared your country from an overwhelming dread (use *great*)! Can you have forgotten it? Can you prefer all these latter months to that one day? If anyone were to fancy that you were now happy, his opinion would differ very much from mine. No one can be happy without the affection of his countrymen. Some say that you have an eye for money, which great men have always despised in proportion to their greatness. But I know that this is an error. Show, then, that, though you have not been able to avoid the suspicion of this crime, you can at all events keep clear of the guilt of it.

¹ 157, c.

EXERCISE XXXV.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic I*, cc. 14 and 15).

What I am afraid of, is this. I am afraid that you may fancy absolute power to be a great and glorious thing, even if combined¹ with universal detestation (use *ita...ut*; 142, 7, a). But what an odious thing to be the object of universal hatred! Would to Heaven, then, you would change your course and administer the government in such a way as to commend yourself to your countrymen! They would not, then, grieve to think that you had ever been born. You can not be happy. No one can be happy who does not advance his country's interests. You have had a unanimous verdict from the

people. Can you not divine its meaning? But if you believe that this is of small weight—though it is of the greatest,—lend an attentive ear to my testimony: I would not accept immortality itself on condition of being an object of apprehension² to my country. If you think that the solicitude of the loyal with regard to your course of life has some significance, listen to my words. If not, then no words can accomplish anything or weigh with you one jot.

¹ say on this condition to be hated by all, that you alone may have power. ²p. 157, c.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic I*, cc. 14 and 15; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Though he despised the applause so often bestowed upon demagogues, he was not ignorant of the path that leads to true distinction. True glory and happiness, in his opinion, while implying precedence in point of honour, implied also equality in point of liberty. His life consisted of disinterested public service, and he reaped his reward in the respect and affection of his country. On this point the testimony of his countrymen is unanimous. Other statesmen have been esteemed, other statesmen have been honored, but *he* is enshrined in the nation's heart. Statues and popular ballads will long keep his memory green,¹ but we shall not easily find consolation² for our grief at the death of our great liberator.

¹ 173, 3; use *memini* ² 157, c.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 1-3).

With public issues¹ to discuss, sir, it required no great self-control on that occasion to refrain from personality and abuse. Had I indeed chosen to take the opposite course,² what theme could have been more fruitful? My controversy was with a traitor who had won credit among (*apud*) men of his own rank for overturning the constitution; who had passed laws for his own advantage; who in his private life had declared war upon modesty and good name;

who, in short (*denique*), had treated with contempt² the exalted station in which he had been placed by his country and this honorable House. I preferred, however, to take a different course. I preferred to recollect and acknowledge that he had once been under my instruction; that he had once called himself my friend, and that I had once accepted kindness at his hands.

¹ use *respublica*. ² p. 157, c.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 1-4; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Has distinguished public service¹ ever received anything but abuse from treason and disloyalty (*use ecquis*). What is the end and object (*idcirco*) of all these attacks of our enemies but to make interest with men of their own stamp and obtain a passport² to the hearts of the mob? Nothing else, certainly. During the last score of years it has been my fortune to encounter many of the enemies of the country. Such a result³—in view of the high position in which I have been placed by this House—was inevitable. Could I refrain from attacking those whom I saw attempting the subversion⁴ of the constitution? If I had, I should never have reaped such an abundant harvest of glory as I have. Whenever⁵ I saw a traitor, I attacked him without hesitation (*ultro*).

¹ p. 162, 3. ² p. 173, 3. ³ p. 161, 1. ⁴ p. 157, c; use pres. to express an attempt. ⁵ p. 107, 5.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 4-6).

As first magistrate of this country, sir, he commended himself by moral earnestness (*gravitas*) and consistency, not only to the House, but to the nation at large. And why? Clearly because every measure of his public administration was taken in accordance with the wishes of the people on the one hand (*cum*; 108, 9) and the suggestions of the senate on the other; because he never even formed a resolution on a public matter till he had referred it to the many men of ability and insight who at that time constituted this House (105, 8, note). He received, in consequence of his loyalty, the thanks of parlia-

ment, which credited him with the preservation of the country. Such a distinction, from time immemorial, had never been conferred upon any member of the House, acting in a civil capacity.

EXERCISE XL.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 4-6; review exercise, to be done without the book).

This country, sir, has lately been deprived of many men of genius. Of those who have most recently passed away, these two in particular were men of high culture and moral worth. Gifted (use *praeditus*) with eloquence and insight, no statesmen ever exercised greater influence in this House; from it, indeed, they both received the title of (*appello*) "father," an honor conferred upon no one before them since the beginning of our history. Of great amiability, no statesman ever referred any matter of state to them without receiving advice; and many credited them with the salvation of the country and, indeed, of their lives and fortunes. Their influence will not soon die, and our countrymen will never allow us to forget them. I must now refer briefly to the rest, and I beg that you will listen to me with attention and indulgence (*adv.*).

EXERCISE XLI.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 7-9).

A man would show very little sense, sir, who would attempt to intimidate this House. It is not indeed what it once was, when, in its palmy days, it governed the whole world; but it has not so completely lost all self-respect as to yield to the intimidation¹ of the disloyal. Could there be greater folly than to recommend such a course? We still know what is for the advantage of the country; we still know what is likely to bring credit to the nation's name; we still know what a wide gulf there is (use *intersum*) between treasonable decrees and those that make for common liberty and safety. Does it not, therefore, argue consummate audacity² to assert that we have entered into a conspiracy¹ to subvert the constitution? What punishment does such a shameless attack (*vob.*) upon honorable (*talibus*) men merit at our hands?

¹ p. 157, 6. ² p. 59, 2.

EXERCISE XLII.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 10-12).

Sir,—The daily view of his ancestral portrait-gallery should have stirred him up to great achievements. Among his ancestors, some famous, some no doubt (~~sane~~) obscure, there was not one who was not distinguished for his devotion to his country's interests. Born in such a glorious fellowship, it was to be expected that he would emulate their noble acts; that he would understand what a wide gulf there is between fomenting war and fostering peace; that he should leave no stone unturned (as far as any act or endeavor on his part could go) to effect a compromise. The honorable gentleman has preferred to take a different course. He has preferred to sever his connection with the loyal party, and hand himself over to men who are waging an impious war upon the constitution. I pray that he may yet see that it is the part of common sense¹ to prefer liberty to tyranny; that he may yet incite the country to the recovery² of its freedom.

¹p. 59, 2. ²p. 43, 7.

EXERCISE XLIII.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 10-12; review exercise, to be done without the book).

This, sir, is a probable story,¹ but it is not new to this House. Nor are we under any obligation to those gentlemen for starting it now. With the exception of those two men who feel pleasure to think that the country should have fallen into such a miserable condition as it has, was there any one of us who was not opposed to this proceeding in the first instance, and who has not followed it indeed with his reprobation ever since? It is likely, therefore—both being disaffected²—that where the one rejoiced, the other also rejoiced. That is the necessary inference; and there is no difference between recommending an act and approving of it. All that was wanting to its performance, was courage and opportunity.

¹p. 161, 1. ²p. 106, 2; use ~~man~~, *disloyal*.

EXERCISE XLIV.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 13-15).

My opinion, sir, of that distinguished patriot is well known to this House. I confess that I was his friend and that he often took counsel with me—a fact which¹ is now made a matter of reproach against me by his enemies. I rejoice to think that there was no one in this city who more fully enjoyed his esteem.² He had only one object in view³ during his lifetime—namely, to relieve the destitution of his countrymen and free his country from debt. Of that country he entertained the highest hopes,³ and believed that it would one day be great. If he had only lived to see this, he would have felt that he had reaped the noblest enjoyment which life can give. Death took him while the country was still in poverty and gloom, but the loss of life only freed him from anxiety and trouble.

¹ p. 9, 9. ² p. 157, c. ³ p. 161, 1.

EXERCISE XLV.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 13-15; review exercise, to be done without the book).

I assert, sir, that the joy felt at his death was general. It extended, certainly, to all who objected to servitude.¹ For he was really king; and those, who took upon themselves the responsibility of his death, are regarded as the liberators of their country. To have been included in that glorious fellowship can never be made a reproach to anyone: unless indeed (*nisi forte*) a man could be reproached with having been among the Greek leaders in the Trojan horse. No more glorious act was ever performed either in this country or in the whole world. Posterity will never forget it; it will be honored (*prosequor*) with undying remembrance in the pages of literature.

¹ *vb.*

EXERCISE XLVI.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 16-19).

All men require relaxation,¹ and, even in sorrow and trouble, they will jest. If then I jested, even in the midst of our grief and misery, it is not a very serious charge. I could not have annoyed

anyone. Certainly material for the exercise of wit was ready to hand. But the fact that, instead² of criticising, I preferred to jest, is a convincing proof of my moderation. Would to Heaven I could jest now! Sad as the time then was, it is worse now. Men now feel justified in committing against their country sacrilegious crimes which then they would never have attempted—crimes which can not even be referred to by one with any sense of decency. Ten thousand acres of land and sixty millions of sesterces³ have been wrested from the state and given to the vilest of the vile. Can any man wonder, then, that our hearts are full of anxiety when recklessness⁴ itself is at the helm of state? (use *guberno*.)

¹p. 170, 6; p. 157, c. ²p. 108, 6. ³p. 151, c. ⁴162, 3.

EXERCISE XLVII.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, c. 20-23).

It is a matter of history, sir, that, with a view to effecting the ruin and subversion of the constitution, he immediately sold himself to the enemy. Posterity can never forget that by disregard¹ of the veto, by gagging members of parliament by abrogating the people's rights, he gave the disloyal an excuse for taking up arms against us. No entreaty of ours,² no warning, no effort at compromise could affect him. We mourn the loss of many men of distinction; their destruction lies at his door.³ We mourn the loss of armies of brave men; he is responsible. In accordance, therefore, with ancient use and wont, this House has put into the hands of the first magistrate a weapon to use against him; and I pray Heaven that he may not be able to escape it (25, 5).

¹p. 43, 7. ²say *we*, by *entreaty*, etc. ³p. 173, 3.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 23-26).

The conqueror returned with his army from Thessaly and all waited to see what course he would pursue. Many did not hesitate to believe that all his enemies would be put to the sword¹ and that the country would be handed over to the soldiery to be trampled under

foot. The terror was universal ;² many even now are of the opinion that he would not have shrunk, had he dared, from committing any enormity.³ But the country was sacred even in the eyes of the mad soldiery ; and had he killed the great men who had proved her salvation,⁴ he would have incurred unpopularity with the veterans, whose interests he was so anxious to consult. Some unfortunates he even restored from exile, though he seized and sold by auction the property of others,—and these, too, men whose valor had made the name of this country a name of terror among foreign nations.

¹ p. 173, 3. ² say *all things were held by fear*. ³ 161, 1. ⁴ *vb*.

EXERCISE XLIX.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 27-29).

He claims, sir, that he has now become a virtuous and respectable citizen. He pretends (*dictito*) that this is a just claim : that¹ he has ceased owing money, that he has given up revelling and heaping up losses at the gambling-table. What assurance ! How men will laugh ! Is it consistent with strict morality to make presents of money to actors ? to pass pernicious laws ? to take up arms against one's country ? What position in the party or in the country can he expect to have for achievements like these ? As I live, I pity the party, I pity the country to which he belongs. As (*quod*) to his having ceased to owe money, you know that by the destruction² of many nobles of distinction, he has become suddenly rich. But you also know that "ill got is ill spent," and that Charybdis itself could not engulf the sea with as much speed (*adv.*) as he will run through and devour this ill-acquired property.

¹ p. 129, 8. ² p. 157, c.

EXERCISE L.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 30-32).

This policy, sir—desirous as I was (177, 4, note) of being of service to the country—I criticised at length. I said that no state official with any sense of honor would ever have surrendered one of our colonies to the public enemy. If¹ our first magistrate

had endorsed such a proposal, he had no knowledge of the duty of a first magistrate; if he had made any such surrender, he had gone much further than he was justified in going. As to his solemn assertion² that the people were prepared to make the surrender, we should at any rate have been consulted before³ any action had been taken by the government in the matter. In claiming the ability to forecast our policy,⁴ they have usurped one of our most sacred prerogatives. The country no doubt (*at enim*; 203, *f*) was poor and loaded with debt. Does that justify her in surrendering her colonies and selling her honor (*honor*)? No nation would show so base a spirit. "Seek, then," I said, "reconciliation with us; order the colony to be recovered; and do not let our children's children weep to hear that our country has received such a wound at the hands of one of her citizens."

¹p. 135, 3, *b*. ²p. 99, 6. ³p. 105, note. ⁴say *what we would have done*; p. 140, 3.

EXERCISE LI.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 33-35.)

Mark now, sir, the extent¹ of his presumption. He approached the platform with a crown, which he had brought from home, in his hand; and, holding it out to the people, he began a harangue. He said that that was a golden² day for our country which would see a diadem placed upon the brows of her most distinguished and loyal citizen. He hoped that his enemies would not attempt to disturb the peace; but if they did, he would know what course to take. He was not planning a crime or an impiety; he knew what the people would submit to and what they would not. What he was proposing was a monarchy, not an absolute despotism; this was the mandate he had received from his countrymen. Let them not fancy that he wished to do away with the law; he wished rather to strengthen it. If kings had been banished because they had aimed at the enslavement³ of the country, kings might be reinstated in order to prove its deliverance.³

¹p. 32, 1. ²p. 173, 3. ³*vb*.

EXERCISE LII.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 36-38).

Sir—Provided that the House does not require a defence of the member's acts at our hands, I feel that this matter is no particular concern of mine. We have been asked lately to defend a good many things which a scrupulous man would perhaps decline to defend; but no one can successfully urge such a request as this which is now made, without¹ the destruction² of government. Laws have been passed without our consent; taxes, direct and indirect, have been remitted both to individuals and to whole nations; citizenship has been sold for money; exemptions have been granted to disloyal provinces, and exiles have been restored by force of arms. I do not wish to bear hardly upon any man's misfortune; but, if such acts are to stand, nothing can save the country from shipwreck. Again. Where is the million of money³ that was lying in the treasury? Has it been restored to its rightful owners?⁴ By no means. It has been given to abandoned and disloyal men. This House, sir, in my opinion, must soon (*brevi*) consider what it is going to do in the premises (*say as to the matter*). With wisdom⁵ at the helm of state, unjust favors may be withdrawn, our losses may be recouped, and our empire once more firmly established.

¹use *quin* (p. 22, 4.) ²*vob.* ³p. 151, c. ⁴rel. cl.; p. 159, k. ⁵p. 162, 3.

EXERCISE LIII.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 39-41).

In the interest of peace, an investigation¹ into the whole matter was ordered to be made by the magistrate with the help of a parliamentary committee. Many members were cited to appear before them, and many others were consulted by letter. No language can adequately describe the vehemence (use *vehementer*) with which all attacked the dead senator. Not one of his measures, they said,² ought to be ratified by parliament. He had sullied the glory of his high office. On his authority, lands producing a revenue to the state had been sold; he had settled in our colonies his own infamous boon companions; he had seized the estates and holdings of his neighbors. Was it not within the knowledge of all, that he

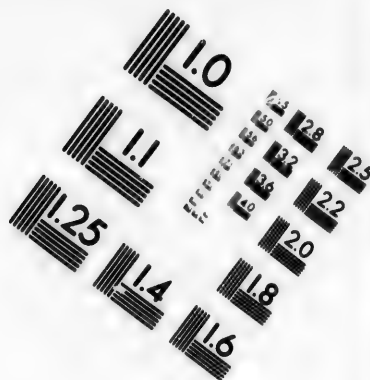
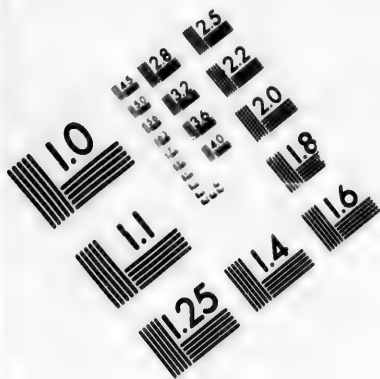
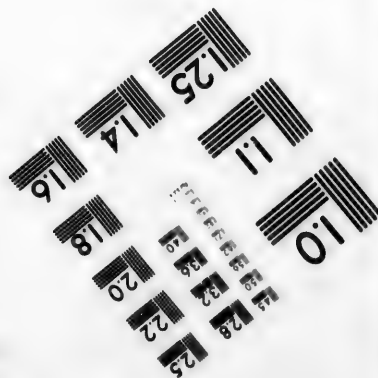
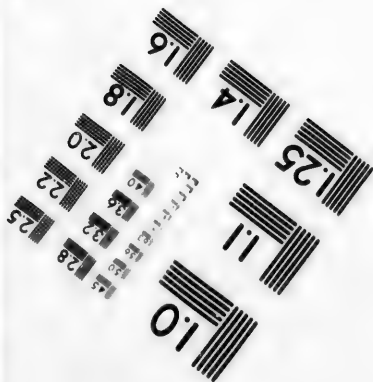
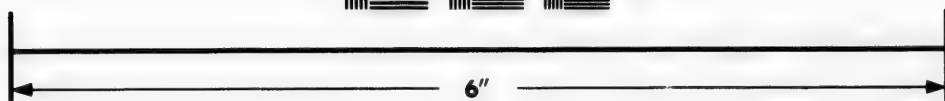
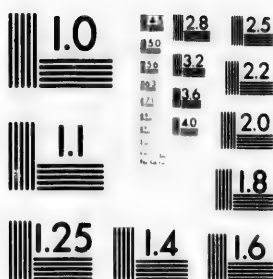


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

24 28 25
16 32 22
20
18

01

had harassed the free towns, profaned our holy religion, and inflicted the deepest wounds upon the country? If they declared that the acts of such a man were valid, no one would be safe. Let them (they begged) restore the country its rights (*indirect*; 127).

¹p. 157, c. ²p. 138, 4.

EXERCISE LIV.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*, cc. 42-44).

It is within the knowledge of all, sir, that during the absence of his colleague¹—an absence which he did not feel in the least—he rescinded some of that colleague's most important acts, and that too with the intention either of putting money in his own pocket, or else of violently disturbing the public peace. He passed laws; he rendered laws null and void. Statues and paintings, left as a legacy to the nation, he carried off before our very eyes to his own house. He is convinced that, through force of habit, we have grown callous to such enormities, and that the fear of violence is universally felt. Would to Heaven that the country would at last avenge her own cause! Let her recall her defenders who, in the interest of peace, have thought it their duty to withdraw from among us; and let her remember that there is a wide gulf² fixed between peace and slavery.

¹p. 52, 4. ²p. 173, 3.

EXERCISE LV.

(Based on Cicero, *Philippic II*; review exercise, to be done without the book).

He imagined, sir, that in this way he would best recommend himself to men of his own stamp.¹ He thought that, by declaring war upon me, he would show himself not only my enemy but his country's; that by attacking me, he would secure a passport¹ for himself to the hearts of the disloyal. But what charge did he bring against me? In the first place, that I was guilty of ingratitude.² This, I consider a most grave accusation and I will answer it first. In what was I ungrateful? After accepting kindness at his hands, I opposed his candidature. What was the kindness? His giving me my life when he might have taken it away. But if that

had been a kindness, our glorious liberators would not have earned the distinction they have earned. For did they not take away his life from a tyrant who had given them their own?

¹p. 173, 3. ²adj.

EXERCISE LVI.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Milone*, cc. 1 and 2).

Therefore, gentlemen, I solemnly beseech you,¹ lay aside your fears. You have often declared by word and look that you are devoted to the public interest, that you sympathize with the loyal party; to-day, by your acts and ballots, make your sentiments clearer than the light. From the day that the prisoner at the bar was first induced to enter the political arena, he has always been distinguished for noble public service. In comparison with your safety, he regards the loudest clamors of your enemies as dust in the balance;² he has therefore earned consideration at your hands. Decide, then, whether he shall still suffer under the oppression³ of villainy,⁴ or whether he shall to-day, through your instrumentality,⁵ awaken to a new life.² Do not be disturbed, I pray you, by the unwonted appearance of the forum; the troops stationed there are not intended to intimidate, they are intended simply to protect.

¹p. 166, c; p. 138, 4. ²p. 173, 3. ³vb. ⁴p. 162, 3. ⁵p. 75, note 1.

EXERCISE LVII.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Milone*, cc. 1 and 2; review exercise, to be done without the book).

You have been selected, gentlemen, from the three honorable orders of the state, to sit in judgment upon a worthy and loyal citizen, and there are some who wish to terrorize you, and to dictate to you what your finding shall be.¹ But I want to give you this warning:² Of all those who sympathize with the party of order³ there is not one but feels that the question at issue⁴ to-day in this court concerns, not himself and his children alone, but the safety of the country as well. Do not think that it is consistent with⁵ wisdom or justice to arm an angry mob officially with power to decide with regard to the disfranchisement (*salus*) of anyone—not to say, of one who has

already been distinguished for patriotism and devotion to the loyal cause. I urge you, then, to sit in judgment upon the case yourselves, and to bring in a verdict (vb.) that will be a credit to you and not a disgrace.

¹use *iudico*. ²vb.; 161, 1. ³*boni*. ⁴vb.; 161, 2. ⁵59, 2.

EXERCISE LVIII.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Milone*, cc. 3-5).

The employment¹ of force, gentlemen, by citizens of the same country against each other is impossible² without serious consequences resulting to the state; and the endorsement³ of such a proceeding by any of you will be a most perilous step. Everybody knows that—simply⁴ in order to prevent people from avenging their own wrongs instead⁵ of seeking legal redress—our laws refuse to sanction the carrying of concealed weapons. But further: any one who takes the life of a fellow-citizen, even in self-defence, is, with us at least, almost universally⁶ regarded as guilty of crime. I do not doubt there are some countries—call them free, if you will (*sane*)—which hold out the sword to their citizens to use against each other. But such states, if there are such, pay no light penalty, and are never wholly exempt from danger. Do not forget⁷ that the voice of the law is not heard amid the din of arms; that if men are accorded permission to repel force with force, force will often be employed; and, lastly, that your own lives will be exposed to treachery and violence which you will be powerless to suppress.

¹p. 50, 14. ²p. 22, 4. ³use *probo*. ⁴p. 177, 4, note. ⁵p. 108, 6, note. ⁶use *all*. ⁷p. 26, 3.

EXERCISE LIX.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Milone*, cc. 3-5; review exercise, to be done without the book).

Remember, too, gentlemen, how often your enemies have found fault with me. Owing to my services to the country, I have some slight personal influence, I believe,¹ in the House and in the courts of law; and I have always employed it—and always shall employ it—in the defence of members of the loyal party. This the dis-

loyal can never forget, and they would have crushed me long ago by force of arms (165, *b*), if they could have put me out of the way² with impunity. They assert that no one should be allowed to live who has such a preponderating influence in the country that the government in its decrees simply registers his views.³ Such are the treasonable and invidious utterances⁴ made by these men every day.

¹p. 138, 4. ²p. 173, 3. ³p. 32, 1. ⁴p. 161, 1.

EXERCISE LX.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Milone*, cc. 6-8).

He was always one who afforded convincing proofs of patriotism, honor, and a sense of justice. As a juror in the courts of law, he showed great moral courage; and, when moving motions before the people, he showed utter fearlessness in the expression of his sentiments.¹ He held strongly to the conviction² that it was the duty of the leading men of the country to set themselves in opposition³ to the rashness and fickleness of the mob; and, therefore, his political career associated him closely⁴ with the loyal party, with which he always possessed the greatest influence. It was his belief that, unless the mad extravagances of radical politicians (use *tribunus*) could be checked, the country would be ruined; and certainly no words can express the measure of his contempt (use *quam* and *vb.*)¹ for a demagogue. Still he was never known to take any step³ in the interest of his supporters,⁵ as against the general advantage.

¹p. 32, 1. ²say *illud enim sibi persuasum habuit*; p. 89, 8. ³p. 157, *c*. ⁴p. 166, *c*. ⁵*sui*.

EXERCISE LXI.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Milone*, cc. 6-8; review exercise, to be done without the book).

High and low, parliament and people, deplore his death, and amid the general regret, all are incensed with indignation to think that he should have perished by treachery and violence without reaching the natural limit of his life. His name will often be upon men's lips. Posterity will mention him as a man of profound, nay

almost prophetic insight, of striking (say *high*; p. 173, 3) moral earnestness and the finest culture. In these respects, indeed, he will challenge¹ comparison² with our greatest men. They will recall the roads and other public monuments he built for the service (use *utor*) of the people and they will wish—if it were only possible—that he had been immortal. The distinguished and the obscure are alike liable to death;³ but what a difference there is in the worthiness of their lives!

¹p. 173, 3; use *dignus qui*; p. 111, b. ²verb. ³p. 45, 4.

EXERCISE LXII.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Milone*, cc. 9-12).

Human nature is so constituted¹ that mankind are never drawn to the commission of crime without some expectation of gain (139, 1). Lend me your attention, therefore, gentlemen, and I will indicate briefly the advantages² which this unprincipled villain would have derived from my client's death. If you have a clear conception (use *plane*)³ of these, you will acquit the defendant of the criminal charge and not bring in a different verdict⁴ from what all loyal men would wish. There is really no other question than this before the court, no other matter demanding from you (p. 45, 4) investigation and settlement.⁵ The thought occurred to him, then, that he would have—if my client were put out of the way—the power to hold office for a full year, that he would have a free hand to develop the mad schemes⁶ which he had already in his mind, and that he would be able to submit to the people and impose upon the country, with your connivance if not with your support,⁴ those wonderful laws of his, every one of which, he boasted, was of his own invention.⁵

¹p. 170, 8. ²161, 1. ³p. 157, c. ⁴p. 52, 5. ⁵use vb.

EXERCISE LXIII.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Milone*, cc. 13-16).

You will ask, gentlemen of the jury, the reasons¹ for his banishment. In the first place, his enemies were exasperated against him, and, wishing to punish him, they wreaked their cruelty² upon him in that

way. It would have been in the interest³ of the country, if our intercession had prevailed and if they had allowed him to remain ; but, wholly unmoved by our prayers and his own distinguished public service, they thrust him forth from his home and country. In the second place, the day of the election was at hand, the day of competition for the highest office in the gift of the people. And there were those who had the audacity² to assert that, if my friend here were elected, a revolution was impending ; and that he would be elected, in spite of this opposition, unless he was expelled from the country. "Free your country from danger" (they said to the mob) ; "avenge your wrongs ; as long as this wretch lives in the place, you will be crushed to the earth by his mad schemes." (*indir.*)

¹p. 32, 1. ²p. 157, c. ³p. 66, 4.

EXERCISE LXIV.

(Based on Cicero, *Pro Milone*, cc. 17-20).

You must now consider, gentlemen, if the story hangs together which you have heard from the witnesses who have given evidence upon this point. After doing this, you will be able the better to determine which of the two parties really was the aggressor (use *prius*). The facts always speak for themselves and usually carry more weight than anything else. But, first, what was this statement?¹ My client (they said) had originally no intention of returning² to the city within a week. In spite of this, he suddenly changed his plans and returned immediately. Why (they asked) did he take this step? Why did he set out for the city by night and in so much haste? Why? Because he had ascertained, in the interval, that his enemy was coming back ; because he wished to skulk in the neighborhood of the city until the unfortunate man approached and then cut him down. In short, the accused, if he had not had malicious thoughts in his heart,³ would never have returned that night to the city at all.³ Such was their statement ; let us now examine its consistency.⁴

¹p. 157, c. ²p. 54, 2. ³p. 177, 4, note. ⁴use *consto*,